



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



PRESENTED BY THE PUBLISHERS  
—TO THE—  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

—OF THE—  
Department of Education  
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK COLLECTION  
GIFT OF  
THE PUBLISHERS



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES











A HISTORY OF  
THE UNITED STATES





G. Washington

A HISTORY OF  
THE UNITED STATES  
FOR SCHOOLS

BY

WILBUR F. GORDY

PRINCIPAL OF THE NORTH SCHOOL, BAKERSFIELD

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION  
**LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY**

*WITH MANY ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS*

*NEW EDITION*

NEW YORK  
CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

— 1899 .

Q~



**610041**

**C**

**COPYRIGHT, 1898, 1899, BY  
CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS**

**TROW DIRECTORY  
PRINTING AND BOOKBINDING COMPANY  
NEW YORK**

93

To  
L. H. G.



## PREFACE

THE function of the writer and of the teacher of history is to explain the meaning of human life as revealed in the records of the past. For such explanation much depends upon the selection of facts. The writer of history, when addressing himself to adult readers, must exercise the nicest discrimination in choosing facts that are typical. With immeasurably greater care should such choice be made by the writer of a text-book whose task it is to aid immature minds to get an impression of the truth.

In the school-room, then, the guiding principle should be the *nature* of the facts rather than their *number*. As already intimated, this principle should find application, even when the purpose is to develop thorough scholarship. But this is not the purpose of history teaching in grammar grades. In these grades, only a short time, during which many other studies are pursued, is devoted to the study of history. Under such conditions, the acquisition of a considerable body of facts cannot wisely be a dominant motive. Higher aims should demand attention. One of these is to develop in the pupil an interest in history—a fondness for historical reading. Another is to teach him how to read history. He should be led to see that a little judicious and thorough reading, with a definite plan, will yield better results than much aimless and desultory reading of even the best authorities.

The author, feeling intensely the value of these aims, believes that too many indiscriminate facts are presented

in text-books. He has therefore, as an outcome of a life-long interest in the study and of many years' experience in teaching it, prepared a book which he hopes will serve as an aid to an intelligent teaching of history. He has been careful not only in selecting, but in grouping typical events, which can have their full value only when they are known as causes or as results.

The reader is invited to examine briefly the plan of the book. After a short chapter on early discoveries, follows an account of the struggle, on the part of the Spanish, the English, the Dutch, and the French, for control in the New World. In this account painstaking care has been exercised in selecting significant events. For example, the adventures of Balboa, Cortez, and Pizarro—romantic and interesting as they are—have been omitted from the body of the text, in order to give more space to topics of greater importance. But enough has been told to explain the nature of Spanish exploration, the objects and methods of the Spaniards, and the reasons for their failure to plant successful colonies north of Mexico.

Following this chapter is a similar one on the "English in the New World," leading up to an account of life in typical English colonies. These colonies are divided into three groups. Virginia and Maryland represent the Southern group; Massachusetts and Connecticut, the New England group; and New York and Pennsylvania, the Middle group.

Two or three things should be noted in connection with the treatment of these typical colonies. In the first place, the history of each group is brought down to 1689—a turning-point in American history. The pupil can thus study separately the three parallel streams of colonial history, without the inevitable and almost inextricable confusion which must attend a strictly chronological treatment of the

thirteen colonies, whether taken up singly or altogether. In the second place, emphasis is laid upon what is important. The selection of typical colonies and of typical events in the life of these colonies must, of course, give more space for intelligent and interesting treatment of illustrative facts. In the third place, certain definite characteristics of the people in any one of the groups can, by comparison and contrast, be distinctly brought out by this method of study.

Of course there is an elimination of some matter generally used in text-books. At the ends of chapters, however, may be found, in the "Notes," reference to the colonies not treated fully in the body of the text. The subject-matter of these "Notes" has been carefully selected and will supply nearly all that is needed in schools where the conditions require a special handling of the colony in question. The author observes with keen satisfaction the movement in favor of teaching local history, and earnestly recommends that such teaching find a place in all American schools.

Up to 1689 there was little of the spirit of union among the colonies. To a great extent, each went its own way. But after 1689, three sets of influences—Indian wars, troubles with the French, and difficulties with the royal and the proprietary governors—gradually brought the colonies into closer sympathy and prepared them for union. To make clear the working of these three sets of historic forces, the following topics are introduced in the order named: "Life among the Indians" and "Indian Wars;" "French Explorations" and the "Last French War;" and "Life among the Colonies" and "Growth toward Union."

Special attention is called to the facts selected to explain the real meaning of the intercolonial struggle between the English and the French. Of the four Intercolonial Wars, the only one worthy of study in grammar schools is the Last French War. By omitting the other three, space is gained

for a more interesting discussion of the one that had the most important bearing upon American history. If the pupil rightly understands this war he will know the meaning of the struggle between England and France for control in America.

In the Revolution, as in all other wars, much attention is given to causes and results and to the way in which the war began. Campaigns and battles are of use only in so far as they enable the pupil to understand the character of the fighting. For such understanding, a few significant battles are far better than many minor engagements and military details. The pertinent question here as elsewhere is, what useful purpose does the fact serve in giving the pupil clear ideas of the meaning of the past? In applying this test in the study of history, we soon find ourselves passing lightly over or omitting altogether much that has found a conspicuous place in class-room work. In the Constitutional period, the traditional system of grouping topics according to Presidential administrations, although convenient for some purposes, is often mechanical and meaningless. The author believes that the development of history can be much more clearly shown by a logical grouping of facts. But those who prefer to use topics grouped according to Presidential administrations, can easily adapt that grouping to this book. Numerous references are made, in the notes "To the Pupil," to the Presidents and their terms of office, and a carefully prepared table containing a list of the Presidents and important facts about them, may be found in the Appendix. Moreover, portraits of all the Presidents, and sketches of their lives have been given an appropriate place.

It has been well said that up to 1890 American history was largely the colonization of the West. Believing this to be true, the author has emphasized the influence of Wes-

tern development upon American life and institutions. He has, therefore, no apology to make for the prominence given to Western settlement, Western life, the difficult problems of connecting the East and the West, the bearing of Western expansion upon the slavery controversy and immigration, the influence of the prairies and the Pacific railroads, and so on.

The importance of the West cannot be discussed without showing the intimate relation existing between man and the physical conditions that surround him. Indeed, throughout the book the emphatic influence of geography upon history has been distinctly recognized.

But, after all, history concerns itself more largely with moral than with physical life. Accordingly, the personal element has been made prominent. In portraits, autographs, biographical sketches, and in the conspicuous mention made of representative men, the moral element has been kept uppermost.

In this new edition the history of our country has been brought down to date, including a careful and painstaking account of the late war with Spain. Although many changes in the text have not been found necessary, yet, whenever in the interests of a more useful and serviceable book such changes have been suggested they have been unhesitatingly made. The excellence of the maps and pictures in the three editions already published has won hearty commendation. Improvements, however, have been possible in a few instances, rendering these features of the book even more noticeable than before for their helpfulness in illuminating and supplementing the text.

In closing, the author wishes to express his deep obligation to Superintendent Thomas M. Balliet, of Springfield, Mass., and to Professor William E. Mead, of Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn., both of whom have offered



many invaluable suggestions; also to Miss Elizabeth M. Worthington, of Hartford, Conn., who has read the proof with great care.

WILBUR F. GORDY.

HARTFORD, CONN., September 20, 1899.

## TO THE TEACHER

### **The teacher's limitations.**

There is no hard and fast method of teaching history which can be successfully applied without modification. Certain limitations and conditions surround every teacher. Among these are the age and capacity of the class, the time devoted to the study, the number of other studies pursued at the same time, the books of reference accessible, and, most of all, the teacher's equipment for the work. Whatever the conditions may be, however, experienced teachers will have their own ways and means; but for the benefit of beginners it may not be amiss to offer a few suggestions, this text-book serving as a basis.

### **A "bird's-eye" view necessary.**

Before taking up any chapter or period the teacher should get a "bird's-eye" view of the whole. An intelligent conception will thus be secured of the relation of cause and effect, to which special thought has been given by the author in the grouping. In making this preparation the "References" will be helpful. The books therein mentioned are not numerous, but they include those which have been thoroughly tested. A short but well-selected list is of greater service than a long and indiscriminate one. The "References" are made to books which the pupil may be expected to consult in preparing the lesson. As a rule, each pupil should read one "Reference" book in addition to his text-book.

### **The nature and use of the "References."**

### **"Outside Readings" for bright pupils.**

The "Outside Readings" will prove a great help to the teacher in cultivating a taste for history. In every class may be found some bright pupils who can do much more work than is demanded of the others. To such pupils the "Outside Readings" will make a special appeal. The "References" and "Outside Readings" furnish teacher and pupil alike with additional subject-matter which, used with freedom and intelligence, must result in vitalizing history and in stimulating and invigorating thought.

### **Useful books for teachers.**

The teacher should have at hand for constant use at least one of the books containing extended bibliographies for class-room work. Hinsdale's "How to Teach History," Adams's "Manual of Historic Literature," Hall's "Methods of Teaching History," Channing and Hart's "Guide to American History," and Gordy and Twitchell's

## TO THE TEACHER

"Pathfinder in American History," have such bibliographies. The last of the books named contains numerous page references. When nothing but a single book—and that a text-book—is read, the recitation will generally prove to be mechanical and lifeless.

Poetry and fiction aid in making history a thing of life.

To make history attractive collateral reading must be called into requisition. Poetry and fiction, therefore, find a fitting place in this list because they appeal to the feelings and the imagination, and do much to recall the movement, the color, and the life of the past. As the historical fiction is selected with especial reference to grammar grades, the number of books is small. Here, as in the other bibliographical suggestions, the quality rather than the quantity has been considered. In the notes "To the Pupil" will be found, in almost every chapter, a special reference to some book or selection of high literary or historic merit, a feature which may be made of great value to pupils.

The teacher an interpreter of life.

Important as the teacher's preparation is, however, the recitation is his opportunity. It is the measure of his success in reaching the lives of his pupils, for the teacher's personality is much more than text-book, references, outside readings, methods, devices, and countless appliances. History is an expression of life; the teacher is the interpreter of that life. The pupil is fortunate whose life-interpreter is wise and true.

The importance of training pupils to form right habits of study.

The assignment of the lesson is one of the most important parts of the recitation. Here the judicious teacher will do some of his best work by aiding the pupils to discriminate between what is of less and what is of greater value. Time thus given in training the pupils how to study will be well spent. Not so much depends upon the number of facts the pupil may learn as upon the proper appreciation he may have of their relative importance and upon the habits he may form in learning them. Nearly all the facts will soon be forgotten, but the habits will remain as a permanent factor in the mental and moral equipment for the work of life.

Discretion in the use of a text-book.

The length of the lesson, which it is assumed will be assigned by topics rather than pages, should be duly considered. The young teacher sometimes falls into the pernicious habit of assigning lessons of uniform length. The pages of this book are of unequal value. Some of them should be merely read; some should be thoroughly studied; and some, under certain conditions which depend partly upon the age and capacity of the class and the time devoted to history, may well be altogether omitted. In a word, the book should be adapted to the class and the school in which it may be used.

The notes "To the Pupil."

The notes "To the Pupil" may be used in lessons on advance work, or in reviews. The questions do not cover all the facts found in the text, but rather call attention to the more important ones and

## TO THE TEACHER

suggest other questions ; for, after all, the most stimulating questions are often those called forth by the pupils themselves in the recitation period.

**The  
recitation.**

The purposes of the recitation should include more than a test of memory ; they should include a *comparison* and *discussion* of facts acquired in the preparation of the lesson. At the beginning of the recitation a topic should be named and the pupil required to recite upon it without question or comment from the teacher. Such a method, *if persisted in*, will inevitably develop fluency and readiness of expression. Teachers ask too many questions—questions that seriously interfere with the flow of thought and with its free expression. Such interference is without doubt the most serious defect of the average recitation. The best work lies in helping the pupil to get definite ideas and then to give these ideas clear expression in well-connected sentences. He will thus acquire more available knowledge and better mental training through the acquisition of this knowledge. In other words, the language faculty and the logical faculty will each receive good training.

**The pupil  
to prepare  
a question  
for every  
recitation.**

History, when well taught, appeals not merely to memory ; it appeals to the understanding and the reason. Hence the pupils should be required to prepare a written question on every lesson. The value of this simple device in leading them to note the working of cause and effect cannot easily be measured. If pupils have not been trained to ask such questions they may at first be diffident about it. They will also ask questions that call for yes or no or for single-word answers. With a little judicious help, however, they will soon begin to ask searching questions that will stimulate the interest of the entire class.

**Test ques-  
tions made  
out by the  
pupil.**

Furthermore, it is a good plan to require pupils, on finishing the review of a chapter or period, to make out a set of test questions for the class to answer. These questions will themselves prove to be a pretty good measure of the kind of thought-work done by the pupils. After trying this plan for years the author heartily recommends it.

**Freedom of  
discussion  
to be en-  
couraged.**

The pupils' questions used in recitations—and sometimes, especially on review, the entire recitation period may be devoted to their discussion—will call forth many differences of opinion. At such times the teacher will do well to encourage freedom in the expression of these differences and will by all means refrain from making known his own views until he has given the members of the class an opportunity to reach a conclusion. There need be no haste about settling the question. It can well afford to wait—sometimes for weeks. Of course this work is with children whose minds are immature. They will often reach crude and even erroneous conclusions ; but in so doing they receive wholesome discipline

## TO THE TEACHER

and make some growth in the habit of weighing and comparing facts.

**Debates  
and their  
value.**

The questions and discussions during the recitation period will furnish good preparation for the debates suggested here and there in the notes "To the Pupil." A comparatively small number are mentioned, but many others are suggested, not only in the notes, but in the facts of the text. A comparison of men and measures should always call forth, in a well-trained class, different points of view and, therefore, differences of opinion. Formal debates, with chosen leaders, test the extent and accuracy of the pupil's knowledge, train him to look at all sides of a question before making up his mind, and help him to give clear expression to his views.

**Five-  
minute  
written  
exercises.**

For accuracy and definiteness of thought, frequent five-minute written exercises on some topic of the lesson should be given. Such exercises will test the teacher's work quite as much as the pupil's.

**Sugges-  
tions on  
formal  
written  
work.**

Out of the abundance of material for language-work only a little can here be mentioned. The notes "To the Pupil" suggest much more. Biographical sketches of eminent men, in which the personal characteristics receive emphasis, will promote a better insight into the working of moral forces. The sketches may often take the form of impersonations and thus be made a decided stimulus to the imagination. A more formal kind of written work may consist of compositions written on subjects for special investigation. Such work will best be done, of course, in connection with a period or chapter that has been carefully studied.

**Close  
connection  
between  
geography  
and  
history.**

In the Preface mention has been made of the attempt to connect closely geography and history. In all probability too much emphasis will not be laid upon such connection. To aid the pupil in seeing this connection, every event should be located on the map, not only in preparing the lesson, but also in reciting it. Wall maps or blackboard maps are, of course, necessary; but, in addition to these, pupils should have progressive outline maps, such as are now prepared by many publishers. If for any reason these outline maps cannot be secured, the pupils can draw their own and fill in the places and events referred to in the text. *No lesson should be prepared without a constant reference to maps.* The maps in this book contain no useless matter. The aim has been to put into them only that which will help the pupil to understand the text.

**Every  
event to be  
located on  
the map.**

**The value  
of the  
pictures.**

The liberal use of beautiful illustrations throughout the book has the same purpose in view. It would be well to aid the pupils to examine these illustrations with care.

In the notes "To the Pupil" special reference is made again and again to dates indicating great landmarks. These dates should be learned with strict accuracy and should be repeatedly reviewed as a sort of "multiplication table of history." Around these sig-

## TO THE TEACHER

**Dates indicating great landmarks to be accurately learned.**

nificant dates should be grouped the less important ones. Believing this to be a matter of serious import, the author has made in the notes "To the Pupil" many suggestions about dates. Rightly used, they are of the first importance, because they lead to a knowledge of the meaning of history. From one point of view events are causes; from another, effects. But, however regarded, they occur in time, and a clear understanding of their logical relations demands an acquaintance with their chronological relations. *But only the great landmarks need be known with absolute accuracy.*

**Preparatory work for the study of a period.**

Perhaps the best way to use dates in the class-room is to make them serve in giving perspective in review work. Before taking up the serious study of a chapter or period it is a good plan either to read it over with the class or at any rate to pass over it rapidly, with the purpose of getting a general view of it. The pupils are then prepared to study with intelligence, because they can better see causal connections. As the following paragraphs indicate, the author believes in a variety of review work; but, whatever may be the character of the review, the preparatory work for it is extremely valuable.

**The pupil to make out his own review outlines.**

In the notes "To the Pupil" are found suggestions on making topical analyses, and charts which are useful in reviews. Topical analyses, judiciously used, are excellent, *but they are of most value when made out by the pupil himself.* He can easily prepare a topical analysis for any chapter—by arranging in order the headings and sub-topics of paragraphs. By making the review-outline for himself, he will derive much more benefit than he would from a printed outline arranged for him. For a similar reason *the pupil should make out his own charts.* In the notes may be found suggestions on chart-making also.

**Importance of freshness and variety in review work.**

To give the review freshness and variety, however, something more than charts and topical analyses is required. If the purpose is to fix in mind important dates, the review may be *chronological*. Certain dates may be assigned and the class required to connect with each an important event. The review may be *biographical*. In this case noteworthy events may be associated with the names of men. It may be *geographical*, when the association of events is to be with places.

**The best review leads to a clearer knowledge of historic development.**

But these kinds of reviews are, as a rule, somewhat fragmentary. The best review should lead to a clearer knowledge of historic development. With this purpose in mind such large subjects as slavery, growth toward Union, the Indian question, and progress in means of transportation, may be selected. By studying each one of these larger subjects by itself, the learner can give his entire attention to a single group of topics without the distraction and confusion which result from studying parts of several groups at the same

## TO THE TEACHER

time, as must be done when the events of a period are taken up in strictly chronological order. Such reviews are repeatedly suggested in the notes "To the Pupil." It is hardly necessary to remind the teacher that, in reviewing, the index can be made very serviceable. Children should be trained to use the index, even in their everyday work; but if in addition they are trained to use it in reviewing they will get valuable suggestions on the intelligent handling of books.

**A geographical grouping sometimes better in reviews.**

Sometimes it is difficult for the teacher to decide on what basis to group topics in a period or chapter. For instance, in teaching the Civil War shall the grouping be chronological or geographical? In either case there are advantages and disadvantages. For the advance the grouping may be made on the basis of chronology, but for the review a geographical grouping is much clearer. For example, after the Union plan is matured (1862) all the battles for the opening of the Mississippi should be taught in a single group. The same should be done for the capture of Richmond, and so on.

**The ethical value of studying representative men.**

As suggested in the preface, the moral element is of surpassing importance in history. Therefore emphasis should be given to personal force. Certain men are leaders because they represent in themselves the best characteristics of the people they lead. The boy has no special interest in these characteristics as they find expression in a whole people, but he has deep interest in them as they find expression in a distinguished man. By studying these distinguished men, by finding out what they felt and thought and believed, the pupil will get at the true meaning of history, for the motives and ideals of great leaders reveal the motives and ideals that inspired the people.

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	DISCOVERY OF AMERICA	PAGE
I.	DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, . . . . .	I
EXPLORATION AND COLONIZATION		
II.	SPAIN IN THE NEW WORLD, . . . . .	12
III.	ENGLAND IN THE NEW WORLD, . . . . .	19
IV.	THE ENGLISH IN VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND (1607-1689),	26
V.	THE PILGRIMS AND PURITANS IN MASSACHUSETTS AND CONNECTICUT (1620-1689), . . . . .	41
VI.	THE DUTCH IN NEW YORK AND THE QUAKERS IN PENNSYLVANIA (1609-1689), . . . . .	64
VII.	LIFE AMONG THE INDIANS, . . . . .	76
VIII.	EARLY INDIAN WARS, . . . . .	86
IX.	FRENCH EXPLORATIONS, . . . . .	89
X.	THE LAST FRENCH WAR, . . . . .	95
XI.	LIFE IN THE COLONIES AT THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS, . . . . .	109
XII.	GROWTH TOWARD UNION IN THE COLONIES, . . . . .	123
THE REVOLUTION, THE CONFEDERATION, AND THE FEDERAL UNION		
XIII.	THE REVOLUTION, . . . . .	130
XIV.	THE BREAKDOWN OF THE CONFEDERATION AND THE FORMATION OF THE CONSTITUTION (1781-1789), . . . . .	194
XV.	THE NEW STRUGGLE FOR POLITICAL INDEPENDENCE AND THE GROWTH OF NATIONAL FEELING (1789- 1829), . . . . .	203



CHAPTER	PAGE
XVI. JACKSONIAN DEMOCRACY AND THE WEST (1829-1841), . . . .	265
XVII. THE SLAVERY QUESTION (1841-1859), . . . .	282
XVIII. SECESSION AND THE CIVIL WAR (1860-1865), . . . .	315

### RECONSTRUCTION AND THE NEW UNION

XIX. RECONSTRUCTION DAYS (1865-1871), . . . .	374
XX. THE NEW SOUTH (1877-1897), . . . .	385
XXI. THE NEW WEST (1865-1897), . . . .	393
XXII. THE NEW UNION (1865-1897), . . . .	403
XXIII. THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR, . . . .	430
XXIV. SOME SOCIAL, ECONOMIC, AND POLITICAL CONDITIONS AND PROBLEMS OF THE PRESENT, . . . .	439

### APPENDICES

A. THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, . . . .	449
B. A CHART ON THE CONSTITUTION, . . . .	453
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES, . . . .	454
C. TABLE OF STATES AND TERRITORIES, . . . .	468
D. PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES, . . . .	470
INDEX, . . . .	471

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

George Washington,	<i>Frontispiece</i>
<i>From a painting by Gilbert Stuart.</i>	
Christopher Columbus,	<i>facing page</i> 2
Columbus's Fleet: the <i>Santa Maria</i> , <i>Nina</i> , and <i>Pinta</i> ,	3
Casket Containing the Ashes of Columbus,	6
Columbus Taking Possession of San Salvador,	<i>facing page</i> 6
Americus Vesputius,	8
De Soto,	13
The Burial of De Soto,	14
Old Gate-way at St. Augustine,	16
Balboa Discovering the Pacific,	17
Sir Walter Raleigh,	21
An Indian Village at Roanoke,	22
Signature of Sir Walter Raleigh,	23
Queen Elizabeth's Signature,	25
Signature of James I.,	26
Ruins of Old Church at Jamestown,	28
Captain John Smith,	29
Pocahontas Saving Captain Smith's Life,	30
<i>From Smith's "General History."</i>	
Pocahontas,	31
The Idle Colonists,	32
Tobacco-plant,	34
George Calvert, Lord Baltimore,	37
A Maryland Shilling,	38
The <i>Mayflower</i> ,	44
Relics from the <i>Mayflower</i> : John Alden's Bible, William Clark's Mug and Wallet, etc.,	44
A Chest which came over in the <i>Mayflower</i> ,	45
Governor Carver's Chair,	45
Myles Standish,	46
Standish's Pot and Platter,	46
Standish's Sword,	47
Myles Standish's Bill of Expenses after his Visit to the Indians,	48
Governor John Winthrop,	49
Hooker's Emigration to Connecticut,	51

	PAGE
First Church at Salem, . . . . .	54
A Settler Building Himself a House at Providence, . . . . .	55
Fac-simile of Opening Lines of the Massachusetts Charter, . . . . .	56-57
Sir Edmund Andros, . . . . .	58
The Charter Oak, . . . . .	60
Cod-fishing, . . . . .	62
The Limit of Hudson's Voyage, . . . . .	65
The Earliest Picture of New Amsterdam, . . . . .	66
Selling Arms to the Indians, . . . . .	67
Leisler's House, . . . . .	70
William Penn, . . . . .	71
Penn's Treaty with the Indians, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 72
An Indian Chief: "Rain-in-the-face," <i>Copyrighted by D. F. Barry.</i>	77
A Southern Indian Shooting an Arrow, . . . . .	77
Indian Whip (Quirt), War-club, and Hunting-arrow, . . . . .	78
Indians Carrying Canoes over a Portage, . . . . .	79
Indian Snow-shoes and Pappoose-case, . . . . .	80
Wamptum Received by Penn from the Indians, . . . . .	81
Totem of the Illinois, . . . . .	82
Totem of the Hurons, . . . . .	82
Totem of the Sioux, . . . . .	82
Totem of the Five Nations, . . . . .	82
Indian Male and Female Costume, . . . . .	83
Carved Pipes from an Indian Mound, . . . . .	84
Big Elephant Mound, . . . . .	85
Attack on the Pequot Fort, . . . . .	87
Samuel de Champlain, . . . . .	90
La Salle, . . . . .	92
Quebec in 1730, . . . . .	97
Washington's Journey to the French Forts, . . . . .	99
William Pitt, . . . . .	102
General Wolfe, . . . . .	104
View of the Siege of Quebec, . . . . .	105
Montcalm, . . . . .	106
Puritans going to Church, . . . . .	112
The Pillory, . . . . .	113
A Wanton Gospeller, . . . . .	114
Colonial Relics, . . . . .	117
Old Spinning-wheel, . . . . .	117
Old Dutch Costumes, . . . . .	119
A New York House Built in 1668, . . . . .	120
The Stage from New York to Philadelphia, . . . . .	122
Birthplace of Benjamin Franklin, . . . . .	125

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xxiii

	PAGE
James Otis, . . . . .	132
A Royal Stamp, . . . . .	134
Faneuil Hall, "The Cradle of Liberty," . . . . .	135
A Relic of Faneuil Hall, . . . . .	136
Patrick Henry, . . . . .	137
King George III., . . . .	140
The "Boston Massacre," . . . . .	143
<i>From an engraving by Paul Revere.</i>	
Old South Church, . . . . .	144
The Retreat from Concord, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 150
The Washington Elm at Cambridge, . . . . .	151
The Craigie House, Washington's Headquarters at Cambridge (afterward the residence of Longfellow), . . . . .	152
Samuel Adams, . . . . .	154
Independence Hall in 1776, . . . . .	155
Declaration of Independence, . . . . .	156-157
Washington Crossing the Delaware, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 162
General John Burgoyne, . . . . .	165
General Howe, . . . . .	167
La Fayette, . . . . .	170
Benjamin Franklin, . . . . .	172
The Camp at Valley Forge, . . . . .	173
The <i>Bonhomme Richard</i> and the <i>Serapis</i> , . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 180
John Paul Jones, . . . . .	180
Marion and his Men in Camp, . . . . .	185
Arnold's Escape, . . . . .	187
General Nathaniel Greene, . . . . .	188
Cornwallis's Surrender at Yorktown, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 190
Three Shilling Massachusetts Bill of 1741, . . . . .	195
New Hampshire Bill of Forty Shillings, 1742, . . . . .	196
The President's Chair in the Constitutional Convention, . . . . .	198
Celebrating in New York the Adoption of the Constitution, . . . . .	199
The Site of Washington's Birthplace, . . . . .	204
Mount Vernon, Washington's Home, from the front, . . . . .	205
Washington's Reception on the Bridge at Trenton, N. J., on his way to be Inaugurated, . . . . .	206
Postal Progress in the United States, 1776-1876, . . . . .	208
How Washington Signed his Name at Various Ages, . . . . .	209
John Jay, . . . . .	210
Alexander Hamilton; . . . . .	212
A Mountain Still, . . . . .	213
Eli Whitney, . . . . .	214
Whitney's First Cotton-gin, . . . . .	215
John Adams, . . . . .	220

	PAGE
John Marshall, . . . . .	222
Monticello, the Home of Jefferson, . . . . .	225
Thomas Jefferson, . . . . .	226
A Pack-horse, . . . . .	227
Kentucky Pioneers Descending the River in a Canoe, . . . . .	228
An Ohio River Flat-boat, . . . . .	230
Lewis and Clarke at the Columbia River, . . . . .	233
<i>From a contemporary engraving.</i>	
The <i>Clermont</i> Steaming up the Hudson River past the Catskills, . . . . .	234
Western Emigrants Attacked by Indians, . . . . .	235
Taking Deserters from the <i>Chesapeake</i> , . . . . .	238
James Madison, . . . . .	240
Tecumseh, . . . . .	241
Death of Tecumseh, . . . . .	242
<i>From a contemporary engraving.</i>	
Capture of the <i>Guerrière</i> by the <i>Constitution</i> , . . . . .	245
Perry Transferring his Colors at Lake Erie, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 246
Battle of New Orleans, . . . . .	250
<i>From a contemporary engraving.</i>	
Old State House where the Hartford Convention Met, . . . . .	252
James Monroe, . . . . .	255
Henry Clay, "The Great Peace-maker," . . . . .	259
John Quincy Adams, the Anti-slavery Statesman, . . . . .	260
Andrew Jackson, . . . . .	266
John C. Calhoun, the Defender of Slavery and State Rights, . . . . .	269
Daniel Webster, . . . . .	270
The Baltimore & Ohio Railroad, 1830-35, . . . . .	272
A Mohawk & Hudson Car of 1831, . . . . .	272
The Boston & Worcester Railroad in 1835, . . . . .	273
A Railway Coach of 1830, . . . . .	273
Martin Van Buren, . . . . .	277
William Henry Harrison, . . . . .	283
John Tyler, . . . . .	283
S. F. B. Morse, . . . . .	284
William Lloyd Garrison, the Anti-slavery Editor, . . . . .	287
Fac-simile of the Heading of Garrison's Paper, . . . . .	288
James K. Polk, . . . . .	291
Zachary Taylor, . . . . .	292
Sutter's Mill, where Gold was first found in California, . . . . .	295
The Harbor of San Francisco in 1849, . . . . .	296
Millard Fillmore, . . . . .	297
Fugitive Slave Advertisements, . . . . .	299
Harriet Beecher Stowe, the Author of "Uncle Tom's Cabin," . . . . .	300
Franklin Pierce, . . . . .	301
Charles Sumner, . . . . .	305

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

XXV

	PAGE
A Southern Sugar Plantation, . . . . .	308
James Buchanan, . . . . .	311
John Brown, . . . . .	312
John Brown on his Way to Execution, . . . . .	313
Lincoln's Early Home, . . . . .	317
Abraham Lincoln, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 318
Jefferson Davis, . . . . .	319
Alexander H. Stephens, . . . . .	320
Interior of Fort Sumter after the Bombardment, . . . . .	323
G. P. T. Beauregard, . . . . .	325
George B. McClellan, . . . . .	326
John Ericsson, . . . . .	330
Battle between the <i>Monitor</i> and the <i>Merrimac</i> , . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 330
Grant's "Unconditional Surrender" Letter, . . . . .	332
Breaking the Chain across the Mississippi, . . . . .	335
Exploded Gun in Confederate Battery at Yorktown, . . . . .	339
Wet Weather on the Chickahominy, . . . . .	341
Robert E. Lee, . . . . .	342
Thomas J. ("Stonewall") Jackson, . . . . .	344
George G. Meade, . . . . .	346
"A Little the Worse for Wear." (Confederate Guns Captured at Vicksburg). . . . .	349
Bloody Pond, Chickamauga Battle-field, . . . . .	350
Chattanooga, . . . . .	351
George H. Thomas, "The Rock of Chickamauga," . . . . .	352
Ulysses S. Grant, . . . . .	355
Philip H. Sheridan, . . . . .	356
W. T. Sherman, . . . . .	358
Joseph E. Johnston, . . . . .	359
Farragut in the Main Rigging, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 360
Soldiers Destroying a Railroad, . . . . .	361
The Execution of Maximilian and his Companions, . . . . .	363
General Lee Signing the Terms of Surrender at Appomattox, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 366
A Sanitary Commission Lodge near Alexandria, Va., . . . . .	369
Andrew Johnson, . . . . .	375
Ticket of Admittance to President Johnson's Impeachment Trial, . . . . .	379
A Ku-Klux "Warning" in Mississippi, . . . . .	381
The St. Louis Bridge in Course of Construction, . . . . .	384
Rutherford B. Hayes, . . . . .	386
A South Carolina Cotton-field, . . . . .	387
Some Florida Products: Bananas and Cocoanuts, . . . . .	389
A Night View of the Atlanta Exposition, . . . . .	391
Salt Lake City, . . . . .	397
An Irrigated Orange Grove in the West, . . . . .	401
The <i>Great Eastern</i> Laying the Atlantic Cable, . . . . .	404

	PAGE
Modern Indian Tents, . . . . .	406
Opening Day at the Philadelphia Centennial, . . . . .	408
Professor Bell Sending the First Message by Telephone, . . . . .	409
Edison Dictating to his Phonograph, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 410
Samuel J. Tilden, . . . . .	411
James A. Garfield, . . . . .	413
Chester A. Arthur, . . . . .	414
Grover Cleveland, . . . . .	415
The Brooklyn Bridge, . . . . .	416
The Statue of Liberty in New York Harbor, . . . . .	419
James G. Blaine, . . . . .	422
At the World's Fair, . . . . .	<i>facing page</i> 424
Benjamin Harrison, . . . . .	423
Richard Olney, . . . . .	427
William McKinley, . . . . .	428
George Dewey, . . . . .	431
William T. Sampson, . . . . .	433
William D. Shafter, . . . . .	434
Nelson A. Miles, . . . . .	435
Winfield S. Schley, . . . . .	435
Raising the Flag over Santiago, . . . . .	438
Proposed Form of Electric Railway, . . . . .	441
Washington Irving, . . . . .	442
James Fenimore Cooper, . . . . .	442
William Cullen Bryant, . . . . .	443
Nathaniel Hawthorne, . . . . .	443
Ralph Waldo Emerson, . . . . .	444
John Greenleaf Whittier, . . . . .	444
George Bancroft, . . . . .	445

## LIST OF MAPS

	PAGE
The United States as it was in 1650, . . . . .	<i>between pages 26-27</i>
The World as Known in the Time of Columbus, . . . . .	4
English and Spanish Explorers in America, . . . . .	10
Routes of Narvaez, De Soto, and Ponce de Leon, . . . . .	15
Plymouth and London Grants, 1606, . . . . .	27
England and Holland, . . . . .	43
New England, . . . . .	53
Province Ruled over by Sir Edmund Andros, 1688, . . . . .	59
Colonies between Potomac and Hudson Rivers, . . . . .	72
Routes of Champlain, Marquette, and La Salle—also English Possessions, French and Spanish Claims, . . . . .	<i>between pages 92-93</i>
Quebec and Vicinity, . . . . .	107
Results of the French and Indian War, . . . . .	111
Boston and Vicinity, . . . . .	149
New York and Vicinity, . . . . .	158
Washington's Retreat across New Jersey, . . . . .	160
Burgoyne's Invasion and Howe's Capture of Philadelphia, . . . . .	169
War in the South and the Northwest Territory, . . . . .	183
Scene of Arnold's Treason, . . . . .	186
North America at the Close of the Revolution, . . . . .	<i>between pages 196-197</i>
Louisiana Purchase, and Lewis and Clarke Route, . . . . .	231
War of 1812, . . . . .	<i>between pages 248-9</i>
The Erie Canal, . . . . .	261
Oregon Country, . . . . .	285
Area in Dispute at Time of Mexican War, . . . . .	<i>facing page 290</i>
The Mexican Cession, Gadsden Purchase, etc., . . . . .	<i>facing page 294</i>
Acquisition of Territory, . . . . .	<i>facing page 310</i>
The First and Second Secession Areas, . . . . .	<i>between pages 320-321</i>
Campaigns in the West, 1862-63, . . . . .	334
Virginia Campaigns and McClellan's Route, . . . . .	337
The Battle of Gettysburg, . . . . .	345
Vicksburg and Vicinity, . . . . .	348
Chattanooga and Vicinity, . . . . .	353
Sherman's March to the Sea, . . . . .	360
Colored Population, . . . . .	377
Railroads of the United States in 1870, . . . . .	394
Railroads of the United States in 1894, . . . . .	395
The United States in 1890, . . . . .	<i>between pages 438-439</i>





# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

## Discovery of America

### CHAPTER I

#### DISCOVERY OF AMERICA

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, I.; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Coffin's** Old Times in the Colonies; **Eggleston's** Household History; **Bancroft's** United States, I.; **Andrews's** United States, I.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Irving's** Columbus; **Prescott's** Ferdinand and Isabella; **Winsor's** Columbus; **Fiske's** Discovery of America; **Towle's** Heroes of History (Marco Polo; also Vasco Da Gama).

**1. European Trade with Asia in the Fifteenth Century.**—For many hundred years there had been more or less trade between the people of Europe and Asia. Silks, spices, and precious stones had been brought by ships and caravans from India, China, and Japan, enriching the cities of southern Europe. Genoa and Venice, especially, had been made rich by this eastern trade, which continued to grow until 1453, when the Turks conquered Constantinople. This was thirty-nine years before Columbus discovered America. At this time European vessels on the Mediterranean Sea were no longer safe from the attack of these fierce and warlike people. Therefore Europe began to look for another and safer route to the Indies.

**2. Aids to Discovery.**—Three inventions which had recently come into practical use had made discovery less difficult than it had ever been before. (1) Gunpowder

made easier the conquest of uncivilized peoples; (2) the mariner's compass encouraged the sailor to venture far out into the sea; (3) and the printing-press spread abroad the knowledge of new-found lands. Men were full of curiosity, and the more they learned, the more they wished to know. With this burning desire for knowledge went hand in hand the spirit of adventure. There was a longing to go into distant lands, to perform great deeds, and to bring home gold and jewels. In these far-away lands men thought they should find honor, wealth, and fame.

**3. Portugal Leads in Discovering an Eastern Route.**—Portugal is to-day a very unimportant country. At the time when men were trying to find a safe water route to the Indies, she was one of the great powers of the world. She was the leader in many adventures and discoveries reaching through a period of two centuries. Early in the fifteenth century, Portuguese vessels and seamen were slowly and cautiously skirting the coast of Africa, and after seventy years of brave struggle they found the Cape of Good Hope.<sup>1</sup> Portugal had at this time many vessels and seamen, and was the first country to find a new route to the Indies.

**4. Plans of Columbus.**—In the meantime Christopher Columbus, in common with some learned men of his time, had decided that the eastern coast of Asia could be reached by sailing westward across the Atlantic. Columbus thought, also, that Asia was no farther from Europe on the west than we now know America to be. He thought the East Indies were directly west from the Canary Islands. This being so, the easiest way of reaching China, India, and Japan would be to sail down to the Canaries, and from them straight across the Atlantic in a westerly direction. To us, with our knowledge, all this seems simple and natural enough, but it was not so then. Men knew little of the world outside of their own country. Sailors were afraid to venture upon the trackless ocean, or Sea of Darkness, as

<sup>1</sup> Diaz reached the southern point of Africa in 1487, and called it the Cape of Storms. It was afterward significantly named the Cape of Good Hope.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.  
*Copyright by Charles F. Gunther.*

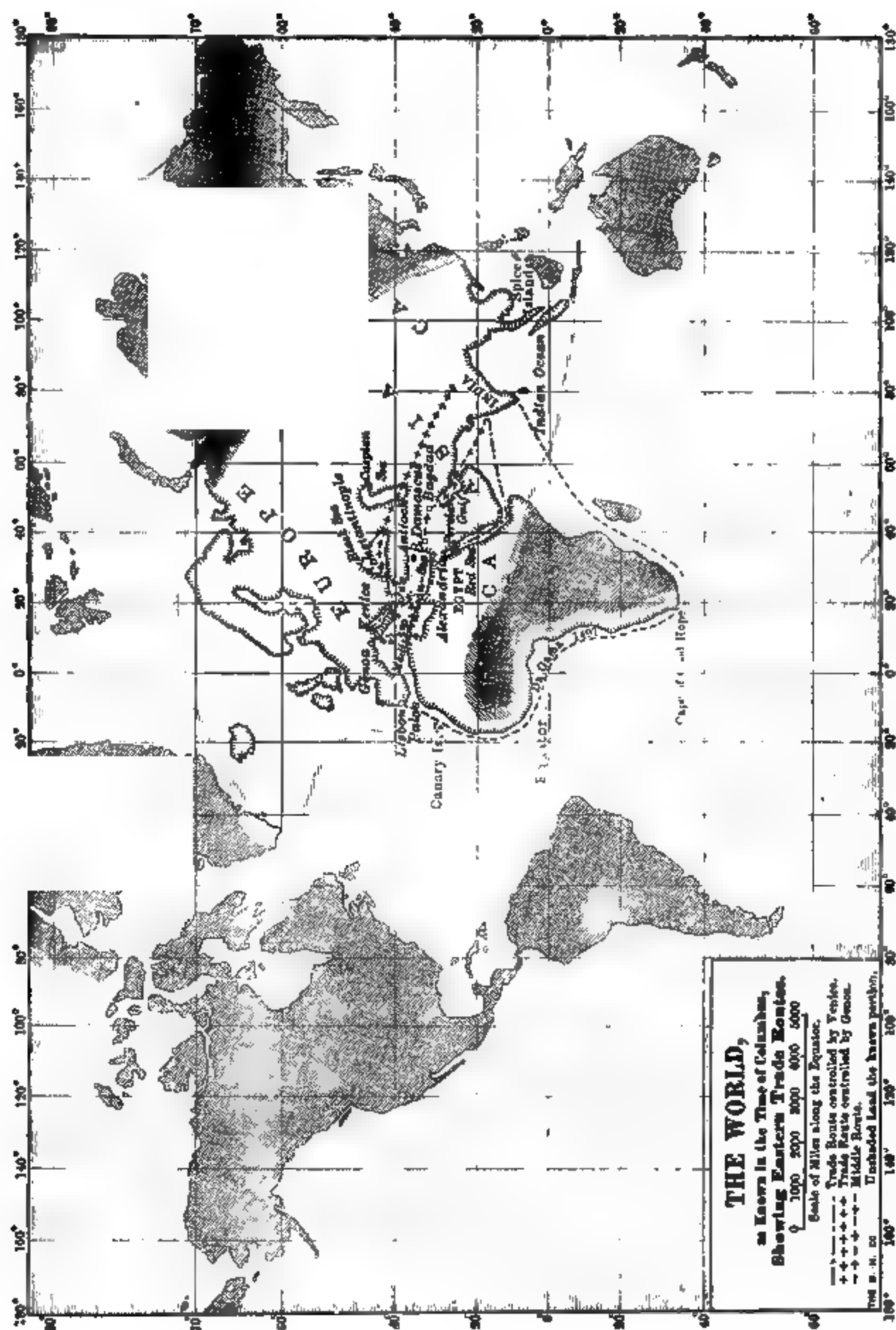


they called the Atlantic, where death seemed likely to meet them. Moreover, practical difficulties stood in the way. Such an enterprise would require the equipment of vessels at much expense. Money and influence were essential. Columbus had neither, but he was eager to fit out an expedition. He went with his plans to his native city, Genoa, and then to Portugal and Spain. He sent his brother to England and to France. Then he went to Spain again. He was nowhere successful. Some thought he was an idle dreamer, and others that he was a madman. But he never despaired, because he had faith in himself and believed also that his work was under the special direction of God.

Difficulties of  
Columbus.

COLUMBUS'S FLEET: THE SANTA MARIA, NINA,  
AND PINTA.

**5. First Voyage of Columbus (1492).**—Finally, after seven years of anxious waiting, the brave Columbus found success. Isabella, Queen of Spain, agreed to aid him in carrying out his plans. Still there were difficulties. Sailors were unwilling to go on the dangerous voyage, but were compelled to yield to the mandate of the king. Three small vessels, only one of which had a deck, were fitted out. The largest of these, the *Santa Maria*, was commanded by Columbus. The others were the *Nina* and the *Pinta*. Before sunrise, August 3, 1492, this little fleet, with one hundred and twenty men and provisions for a year, sailed out of the port of Palos. It was a sad hour for the poor sailors. Columbus steered for the Canaries, where he



stopped over three weeks to make a rudder for one of his vessels. He then set sail again. As soon as they could no longer see land, the sailors were overcome with fear and cried like children. At the end of a week the compass needle did not point to the North Star. Failing to understand the reason for this, the sailors were struck with terror. Three days later the vessels entered wide stretches of sea-weed. It was then feared that the vessels might strike upon hidden rocks and be dashed to pieces. But they passed on in safety.

**Columbus sets sail.**

Soon afterward the sailors were gladdened by the sight of birds, which they thought indicated that land was near. It was an idle hope, for no land appeared. Again and again the cry "Land" was shouted, but in every case the cry was called forth by the sight of distant clouds.

**The sailors in despair.**

The poor sailors were in despair. They were now in the belt of the trade-winds, which were steadily and certainly blowing them farther and farther from home and friends. "We can never return to Spain," they said. "What shall we do?" They begged Columbus to turn back. He refused. They became angry and talked of throwing him overboard. He knew he was in danger and tried hard to quiet their fears and to give them hope. It was then that his great influence over men was shown. His tall and manly figure gave him a commanding presence, but his greatest strength in these trying days lay in his noble soul and his lofty purpose. His courage never failed him. Sometimes he heartened the sailors with promises of wealth and fame, and again, as occasion demanded, he threatened them with punishment from the Spanish king.

At last, after a voyage of ten weeks, land was discovered, October 12,<sup>1</sup> 1492. In a full suit of armor, and bearing the flag of Spain, Columbus landed. With tears of joy he knelt upon the ground and offered thanks to God. Then, planting the royal banner, he took possession of the land in the name of the king and queen of Spain. He had discovered one of the Bahama Islands

**Land discovered.**

<sup>1</sup> October 21, by the present method of reckoning time.



which he called San Salvador (Holy Saviour). He coasted along the shores of Cuba and Hayti, touched the coast here and there, and sent reconnoitring parties inland to examine the land. He did not find the cities of Asia as he had expected, but he had no doubt that he was in the East Indies, and therefore called the natives Indians.

**6. Other Voyages of Columbus.**—When Columbus returned to Spain with the news of his discovery, the people

were enthusiastic with delight. The idle dreamer became suddenly great and famous, and honors were heaped upon him from every side. It was easy enough to find sailors and vessels for a second voyage, which was made in the following year, 1493. Men were now eager to go where they expected to get all kinds of wealth. Four voyages were made in all, but when the adventurers reached the land of their hopes, and found no silks, no spices, no precious stones, no gold, they reproached

CASKET CONTAINING THE ASHES OF  
COLUMBUS.

Columbus. The Court of Spain, also, finding no return for the great expense of fitting out these expeditions, censured him. His enemies increased, and his last days were spent in disappointment and neglect. Heart-broken, he died ignorant of the greatness of his own discovery.

**7. John Cabot Discovers the Mainland of North America (1497).**—In consequence of the discoveries by Colum-

The "Line of Demarcation" divides the heathen possessions of Spain and Portugal.

bus in the West, and of those by Portuguese captains in the East, it was feared there might be trouble between Spain and Portugal over the new-found lands. To keep the peace, therefore, between these two great Catholic countries, a treaty was signed in 1494, dividing between

COLUMBUS TAKING POSSESSION OF SAN SALVADOR.

*After the painting by Vanderlyn.*



them the heathen lands that had been, or should be, discovered. "The Line of Demarcation," extending north and south three hundred and seventy leagues west of the Cape Verde Islands, ran between Spain's possessions on the West, and those of Portugal on the East. The powerful navies of these two countries were sufficient to make good their claims against England or any other nation. But England was determined to have some share in the discoveries that were stirring the hearts of men. Hence, in 1497, Henry VII. sent out John Cabot, accompanied possibly by his son Sebastian, to find a short northwest passage to Asia. By sailing across the northern part of the Atlantic, England avoided difficulties likely to arise from coming in contact with Spanish or Portuguese discoverers farther south. John Cabot landed somewhere on the eastern coast of North America, possibly on the coast of Labrador. He was therefore the first to discover the mainland of the Continent of North America, and he claimed it in the name of England. The next year Sebastian Cabot again sailed from England, and explored the coast of North America from Nova Scotia down as far as North Carolina or farther. Upon these discoveries England based her claim to North America.

**Voyages of the  
Cabots.**

**8. Americus Vesputius and the Naming of America (1499-1503).**—Americus Vesputius, a native of Florence and a navigator, was first employed by Spain, and later by Portugal, to make explorations. In 1499 he skirted the coast of Venezuela and northeastern South America. During the next four years he made several voyages to Brazil, and explored its coast as far south as the mouth of the La Plata River. On returning to Europe he wrote a good description of what he had seen. This was published in 1504, and constituted the first printed account of the mainland of the New World. Up to that time Europe, Asia, and Africa were known as the three parts of the world, and one distinguished geographer believed there was an unknown southern continent which constituted the fourth part. It now seemed clear that Americus Vespu-

cus had proved the existence of the fourth part. In consequence of this belief, a German professor, who printed a little treatise on geography a few years later, suggested that the fourth part should be called America, after Americus Vespucius. According to this suggestion, the name America was at first applied to Brazil, later to South America, and later still to the whole of the New World.

**9. Magellan Proves America to be a Continent (1519-1521).—**What America and the New World meant was as yet by no means clear. By some, America was supposed to be an immense island, like Australia; by others, a peninsula extending in a southeasterly direction from Asia. In 1519, Magellan, a Portuguese captain in com-

#### AMERICUS VESPUCIUS.

mand of a Spanish fleet, started on a voyage whose object was to reach Asia by way of a passage through America. After coasting down much of the eastern shore of South America, he discovered and sailed through the strait now bearing his name. Mutiny, starvation, and other hardships that would have driven back a less heroic man were bravely endured. He sailed for some distance up the western side of South America, and then steered his way across the Pacific. He was killed by the natives in the Philippine Islands, but a part of his men succeeded in finding their way back to Spain. This was the most wonderful voyage that had ever been made, because it proved that the earth was a globe, and that America was a distinct continent.

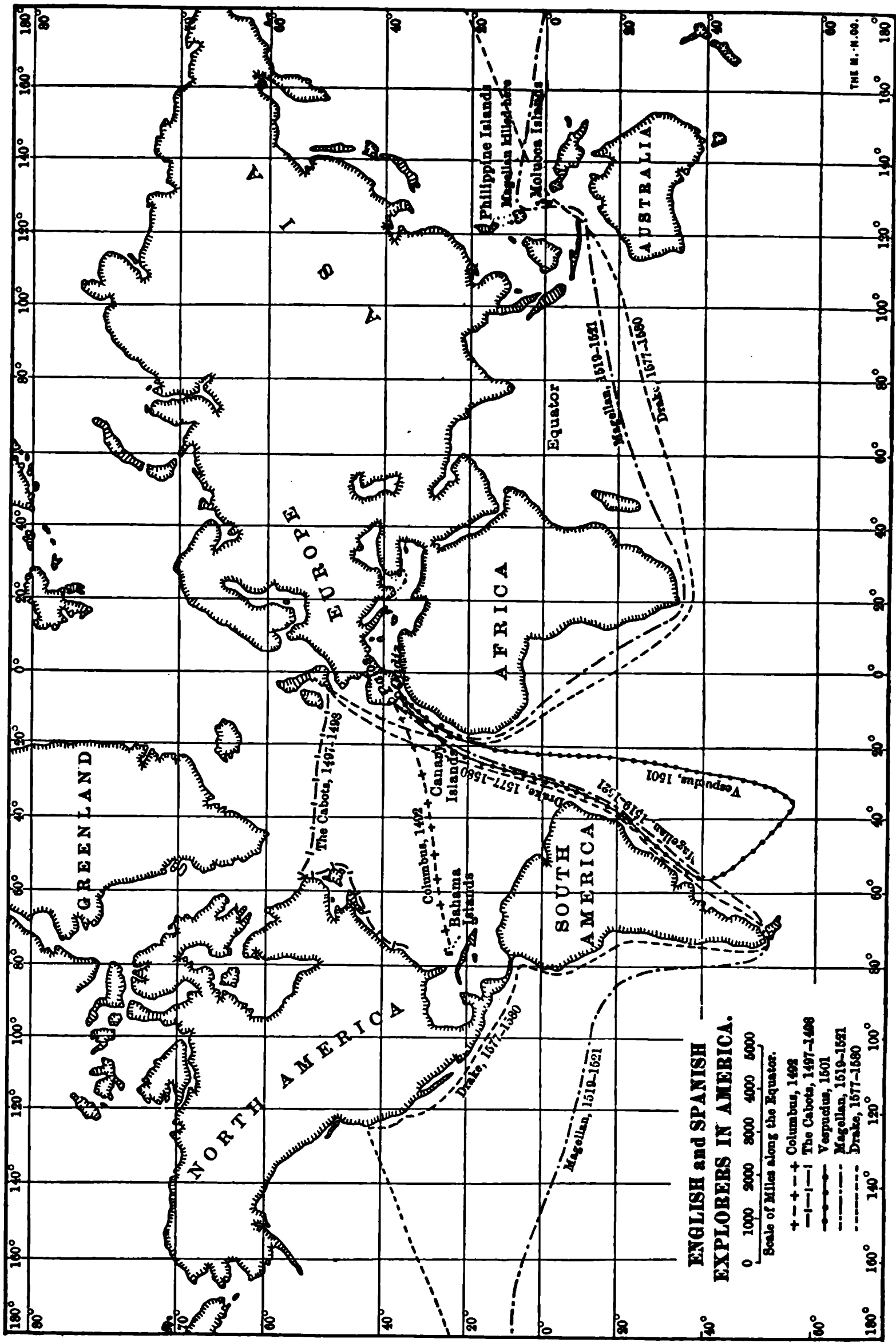
**Wonderful voyage of Magellan.**

## TO THE PUPIL

1. Trace on the map the Eastern trade routes in the fifteenth century. In what way did printing aid discovery? What advantage did the control of the water route to India give to Portugal?
2. Imagine yourself to be Columbus and write an account, in the first person, of your plans, your difficulties, and your first voyage. Trace this voyage on the map. What do you admire in the character of Columbus?
3. How did America receive its name? Was this fair to Columbus? Give reasons for your answer.
4. What was the distinctive work of Columbus? Of Americus Vesputius? Of Magellan?
5. Read in Fiske's *Discovery of America* the account of Magellan's wonderful voyage.

## NOTES

*Leif Ericsson and the Northmen.*—The old inhabitants of Norway were called Northmen or Norsemen. These people were bold and hardy sailors, and in the ninth and tenth centuries were famous sea-robbers. In order to find new fields for plunder and adventure they sought strange coasts. On one of these expeditions they reached Iceland and on another Greenland. In each of these islands they made settlements. The brave deeds of these old warriors are preserved in the so-called "Sagas," which were written in Icelandic prose. For a long time these Sagas were transmitted orally, but finally they were committed to writing. Three of the Sagas tell us of the daring adventures of Leif Ericsson in his wanderings in the year 1000 A.D. along the eastern coast of North America. As the story goes, Leif Ericsson, with a crew of thirty-five men, started out in search of a land which had been visited by another Northman. Sailing west, Leif touched upon the coast of Labrador and thence proceeding south, he landed, built huts, and spent the winter near the coast. Finding vines hung with grapes, he called the country Vinland. Some historians have supposed that Leif Ericsson's Vinland was somewhere on the coast of Massachusetts, but the weight of authority is in favor of Cape Breton Island or Nova Scotia. Other Northmen visited Vinland but they made no permanent settlements. Nothing reliable can be found out about these early expeditions, and nothing of importance ever came of them.



CHRONOLOGY

870. ICELAND DISCOVERED BY NADDOD, THE NORTHMAN.  
1000. LEIF, SON OF ERIC THE RED, DISCOVERS AMERICA.  
1450. INVENTION OF PRINTING, ABOUT THIS DATE.  
1453. THE TURKS CAPTURE CONSTANTINOPLE.  
1492. FIRST VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS; DISCOVERY OF WEST INDIES.  
1497. JOHN AND SEBASTIAN CABOT DISCOVER NORTH AMERICA.  
1498. THIRD VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS; HE DISCOVERS THE CONTINENT OF SOUTH AMERICA.  
SECOND VOYAGE OF SEBASTIAN CABOT.  
1499. FIRST VOYAGE OF AMERICUS VESPUCIUS.  
1504. AMERICUS VESPUCIUS'S NARRATIVE PUBLISHED.  
1507. AMERICA NAMED.  
1513. DISCOVERY OF FLORIDA BY JUAN PONCE DE LEON.  
PACIFIC OCEAN DISCOVERED BY VASCO NUNEZ DE BALBOA.  
1519-21. CORTEZ CONQUERS MEXICO.  
1519-21. A SHIP OF MAGELLAN'S EXPEDITION SAILS AROUND THE WORLD.



# Exploration and Colonization

## CHAPTER II

### SPAIN IN THE NEW WORLD

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, I.; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Bancroft's** United States, I.; **Higginson's** American Explorers; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History, I.; **Andrews's** United States, I.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Prescott's** Conquest of Mexico; **Prescott's** Conquest of Peru; **Fiske's** Discovery of America; **Winsor's** Narrative and Critical History, II.; **Higginson's** American Explorers; **Parkman's** Pioneers of France in the New World (Huguenots); **Montgomery's** French History.

FICTION: **Henty's** By Right of Conquest; **Wallace's** The Fair God; **Munroe's** Flamingo Feather.

**10. Precious Metals the Main Object of Spaniards.**—Spain is to-day a third-rate power, but in the early part of the sixteenth century she was the greatest power in Europe. She had a mighty navy manned by daring and patriotic seamen, and she was ambitious to extend her sway over much of the heathen world. The marvelous stories of the treasures to be found in the New World dazzled the imagination of the Spaniards. Believing that gold and silver made the only true wealth, they were willing to undergo almost any suffering to secure them.

**11. De Leon Discovers Florida (1513).**—Among these fortune-hunters was an old man, Ponce de Leon, who had been governor of the island of Porto Rico. He had heard the natives tell stories of rich gold mines, and of a wonderful fountain in the land of the North, the drinking of whose waters would restore youth and vigor to old age. De Leon

conducted an expedition northward by which he hoped to secure for himself wealth and young manhood. The gold and the fountain he did not find, but he discovered something of much greater value to Spain, a beautiful land covered with flowers. This he named Florida (1513). A few years later De Leon returned to Florida with the purpose of planting a colony, but he was killed by an unfriendly Indian.

**12. De Soto Explores Florida and Discovers the Mississippi (1539-1541).**—The failure of De Leon and Narvaez did not prevent other Spaniards from making similar attempts. In 1539, De Soto with about six hundred men, two hundred horses, and bloodhounds to hunt the Indians, landed on the west coast of Florida in search of the new kingdom of gold. The Indians did not fear the bloodhounds more than they hated the Spaniards, whom they fiercely opposed. Northward and westward the Spaniards wandered in

DE SOTO.

their fruitless search for gold mines. They found, instead, "fighting, fever, and famine." One great, unlooked-for discovery it was their fortune to make. That was the discovery of the Mississippi River. They journeyed many miles beyond it, but soon returned, and at last, after two years of hopeless wandering, De Soto, worn out and sick at heart, died and was buried in the great river which he had discovered (1541). His surviving companions sailed down the Mississippi, and found shelter in the Spanish settlement of Mexico.<sup>1</sup> De Soto, like De Leon,

<sup>1</sup> Cortez had conquered Mexico, and established Spanish colonies there (1519-1521). Pizarro had conquered Peru (1531-1533).

failed, and in the country north of Mexico Spanish explorations were not successful.

**13. The Spaniards Drive the Huguenots out of Florida (1562-1565).**—For more than twenty years after De Soto's failure the Spaniards made no further efforts in Florida. In the meantime a bitter religious war broke out in France between the Catholics and the Huguenots.<sup>1</sup> Coligny, the distinguished leader of the Huguenots, desired to establish

#### THE BURIAL OF DE SOTO.

a commonwealth of his own religious sect in America. Accordingly he sent over in 1562 a small number of settlers who tried to plant a colony where Port Royal, South Carolina, now stands. The colony having failed, another expedition under good leadership was sent out in 1564. This time the French planted a fort not far from the mouth of the St. John's River, Florida.

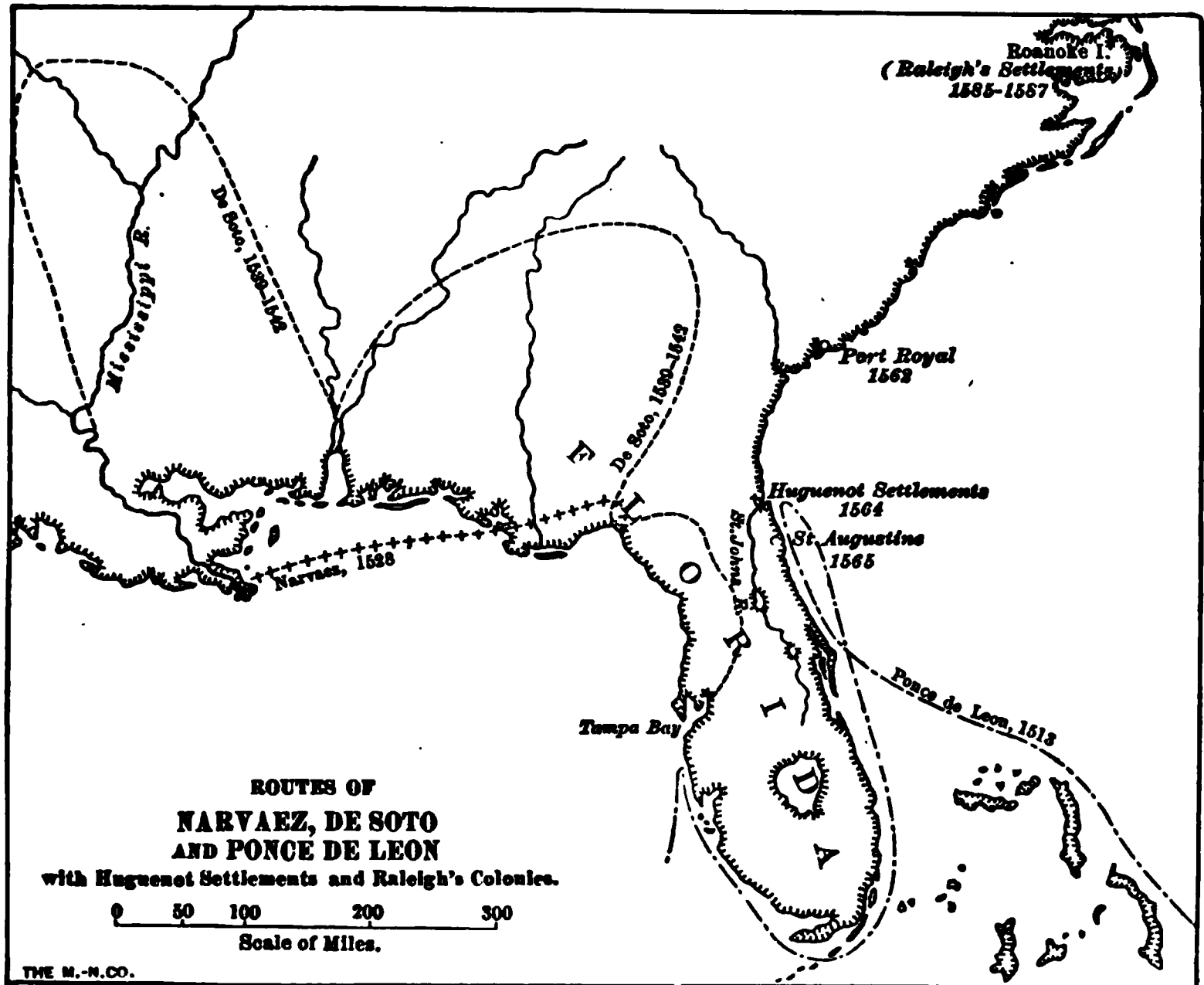
For several reasons Spain laid claim to Florida: (1) By right of discovery through Columbus; (2) by the explorations of De Leon and De Soto; and (3) by the Pope's decree, which assigned that part of the heathen world to Spain. The king of Spain, therefore,

Huguenot settlements.

Why Spain laid claim to Florida.

<sup>1</sup> French Protestants.

was indignant that the French should make any settlement there, and at once decided to send out a force to destroy the insolent intruders. This Spanish force was under the com-



mand of Menendez, who in 1565 landed in Florida and built a stronghold which later became St. Augustine. Then he marched across the country, and by surprise and treachery succeeded in destroying all but a miserable remnant of the unfortunate Frenchmen who had established the settlement. It was a cruel work, thoroughly done.<sup>1</sup> The French learned a lesson

**The Spaniards destroy the Huguenot settlement in Florida.**

<sup>1</sup> Although at this time France and Spain were at peace, the French did nothing to resent this wrong. A French captain, Dominic de Gourgues, however, determined upon revenge in the name of his country. Having a private grudge against the Spaniards who had imprisoned him and made him work in the galleys, he fitted out at his own expense an expedition to Florida. Until the proper time he concealed his real purpose. Then he sailed straight to Florida, and with the aid of the

from their unpleasant experience with the Spaniards at this time, and made no further attempt to plant colonies in the southern part of what is now the United States.

**14. Advantages of Spain in the New World.**—The advantages of Spain in the New World were many, two of which we will notice. In the tropical regions of Mexico, South America, and the West Indies, the Indians lived in a warm climate, supported themselves by a rude tillage of the

#### OLD GATE-WAY AT ST. AUGUSTINE.

soil, and could be easily enslaved. In this respect Spain had a decided advantage over the nations colonizing in the North, where the Indians had been made hardy and brave by exposure to rougher climate and almost continuous inter-tribal warfare. These Indians were dangerous enemies

Indians surprised the Spanish forts on the St. John's River and put to the sword nearly all the Spanish soldiers. As his force was too small to attack St. Augustine he returned to France, leaving Spain in control of Florida.

to the white settlers. But surpassing all other advantages was the possession of the Gulf of Mexico and the mouth of the Mississippi River.

**15. Reasons for Spanish Failure.**—But in spite of these advantages the Spaniards failed, and they failed because their conceptions and aims were wrong. Their greatest desire was for gold and silver, conquest, and ad-

and that in order to develop agriculture, trade, and commerce, a life of patient toil was necessary. As they wished to get rich without work, the gold and silver which they found made them poor because it took away habits of industry. In North America Spanish colonization was a total failure.

## TO THE PUPIL

1. There are some dates which you should know as well as the alphabet. One of these is 1492. Just about fifty years later De Soto, the last Spanish explorer of note, discovered the Mississippi River.
2. 1492-1541. Memorize these dates and remember that Balboa, De Leon, Cortez, Pizarro, and the other Spanish explorers did their work at some time within these fifty years. Just when, it is not important to know.
3. Why did Spain lay claim to Florida? What advantages did Spain have? Why did Spanish colonization fail in North America? You may well notice the fact that in the struggle among European countries for colonizing North America, Spain practically dropped out of the race after establishing St. Augustine.
4. To develop accuracy, frequently write for five minutes on such topics as the following: De Soto's expedition, the Huguenots in Florida. Use your map constantly.
5. Read Munroe's *Flamingo Feather*.

## NOTES

*Balboa Discovers the Pacific* (1513).—Balboa, a Spaniard in command of a company of men at Darien, made his way across the Isthmus of Panama (then known as the Isthmus of Darien) and discovered the Pacific Ocean. He took possession of the sea in the name of his king.

*Cortez Conquers Mexico* (1519-1521).—In 1519, Hernando Cortez began the conquest of Mexico. Although his army numbered less than five hundred Spaniards, he burned his fleet behind him at Vera Cruz, and boldly set forth against the powerful Mexican ruler, Montezuma. Under an ordinary leader, the Spaniards must have been destroyed, but Cortez, with rare courage and foresight, led them on to victory. Before the close of 1521 Mexico had become a Spanish province.

*Narvaez Explores Florida* (1528).—As the greedy Spaniards now had fresh hopes of finding gold and silver in the new country, Narvaez fitted out an expedition that landed on the western coast of Florida (1528). After passing through the severest hardships, he and many of his men were drowned. His secretary, Cabeza de Vaca, and three companions, fell into the hands of the Indians. Passing through many thrilling experiences, they wandered during eight years over two thousand miles of territory, and finally joined, on the Gulf of California, a body of Spaniards from Mexico.

*Pizarro Conquers Peru* (1531-1533).—In 1531, Pizarro sailed from Panama, with the purpose of conquering Peru for Spain. By bravery, cruelty, and treachery, he succeeded in carrying out his plan (1533). Peru, like Mexico, yielded to Spain vast quantities of gold and silver, which greatly aided her in carrying on her European wars.

## CHAPTER III

### ENGLAND IN THE NEW WORLD

**REFERENCES:** **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, II.; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History, I.; **Eggleston's** Household History; **Winsor's** Narrative and Critical History, III.; **Andrews's** United States, I.

**OUTSIDE READINGS:** **Towle's** Heroes of History (Drake and Raleigh); **Higginson's** United States; **Montgomery's** English History; **Camden's** History of Queen Elizabeth; **Creasy's** Fifteen Decisive Battles.

**FICTION:** **Scott's** Kenilworth; **Kingsley's** Westward Ho!; **Henty's** Under Drake's Flag.

**16. Relations Between Spain and England.**—England's claim to North America was based upon the discoveries of the Cabots, who reached the mainland shortly after Columbus made his first landing on the West Indies. But Spain was the leading naval power in Europe. She controlled the Netherlands, and her mighty fleets sailed far and wide over the seas. England was not then the power she is now, and she was not strong enough to prevent Spain from carrying out her plans in America. So English explorers did not venture into that part of America to which Spain laid claim. Their efforts were directed chiefly to discovering a northwest passage to Asia, since they regarded America as only a barrier between Europe and Asia.

During the latter part of the sixteenth century, however, conditions changed. In 1567, the Netherlands revolted against the rule of Spain, and for forty years carried on war with that country. In this war, which was partly religious, England was on the side of the Netherlands. Thus



Spain had to contend with two countries at once, and found the great struggle a constant drain upon her strength. During these forty years of warring Spain received blows from which she never recovered. The "Invincible Armada," her mighty fleet of war vessels,<sup>1</sup> met with crushing defeat at the hands of English seamen (1588). From that date England's naval power was on the increase.

**17. English Sea-rovers and Explorers.**—After 1570 the English did not confine themselves to the northern ocean, but explored in waters that Spain claimed as hers alone. English ships, manned by fearless sea-captains, ready to do and dare anything for old England and their queen, began to sail in every direction. As soon as it became clear that for carrying on her wars, Spain depended largely on the gold and silver<sup>2</sup> coming from the mines of Mexico and Peru, there was a fresh motive for English voyages to the New World. To cut off the supply of these metals, bold sea-captains like Drake and Hawkins scoured the sea in search of Spanish vessels. They cruised about the coasts, burning and plundering Spanish fleets and settlements, and thus did very great injury to Spain and her colonies in South America and Mexico.

**18. Sir Walter Raleigh's<sup>3</sup> Attempt to Colonize America (1584-1587).**—In 1578, ten years before the Invincible Ar-

<sup>1</sup> The Invincible Armada consisted of 130 warships carrying 2,500 cannon and about 30,000 men. Philip II., the Spanish king, expected to humble England with this fleet.

<sup>2</sup> It has been estimated that the gold and silver Spain got from America would be now valued at five thousand million dollars.

<sup>3</sup> Sir Walter Raleigh, born in 1562, was in his own time rightly called the "Great Englishman," for he ranked high as historian, navigator, soldier, and statesman. In 1579, when only seventeen years old, he fought on the side of the Huguenots in the religious wars in France. He is said to have won the admiration of Queen Elizabeth by a simple act of gallantry. Meeting her one day as she was walking across a muddy street, he spread his cloak in her pathway for her to walk upon. From that time the queen took him into her court as a favorite. So entirely did he win her favor that she made him a knight.

In 1588, Raleigh commanded one of the vessels in the English fleet that defeated the "Spanish Armada." Later he was thrown into the Tower of London on

mada sailed for England, a scheme was laid to plant on the coast of America, an English settlement, or military post, from which attacks might be made upon Spanish fleets. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, the author of the scheme, failed, but the idea of making a settlement in America had found a lodging-place in the English mind.

A little later Sir Walter Raleigh determined upon another effort. He saw that America's greatest wealth did not consist in gold and silver, but in the opportunities it offered for the growth of a great people. He earnestly desired to plant an English commonwealth in America, and he had the honor of making the first English settlement. After obtaining a patent from the queen, he sent out in 1584 two vessels to make explorations. The explorers returned with glowing accounts of the new land and its people, and Queen Elizabeth was so delighted with the reports of the new country that she called it Virginia, in honor of herself, the "Virgin Queen."

SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

In 1585, Raleigh sent out one hundred colonists, who landed on Roanoke Island, bright with hope. As soon as the ships sailed back to England the unfitness of the colonists for their new trials became apparent. Like all who had come before them they failed

an unproved charge of treason. After remaining twelve years in the Tower, he was beheaded for destroying a Spanish settlement in time of peace (1618). Just as he was about to lay his head upon the block, he felt the keen edge of the axe and said, "This is a sharp medicine, but a sound cure for all diseases."

because of their thirst for gold. Instead of building homes and trying to cultivate the soil, they gave themselves up to searching for gold and silver. Moreover, they showed so

#### AN INDIAN VILLAGE AT ROANOKE.

little wisdom in dealing with the Indians that the latter became bitter enemies, eager to destroy the white strangers. The natural result of the experiment was failure. Fortunately for them, Drake, who was returning from one of his cruising expeditions, happened along and carried the col-

onists back to England. The expedition was not wholly fruitless, however, for they took back to England on their return two products which were evidence of the real wealth and promise of the new country. These products were tobacco and the common potato.

Raleigh did not lose hope. Two years later he made a second attempt. He sent out a much larger number of settlers, among whom were women and children. The new settlement was made at Roanoke under the leadership of Governor White. He was soon compelled to return to England for supplies, where he found all the people astir in preparation for the attack about to be made by the Spanish Armada. As every man was needed to fight the coming enemy, three years passed before Governor White sailed again for Roanoke. Not one of the colonists was ever found.



SIGNATURE OF SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

Raleigh sent out several expeditions in search of the lost colony, but finally gave up hope of finding it or of planting another. He had already spent what was equivalent to more than a million dollars of our present money. Although nothing remained to be seen in return for this vast expenditure of money, Raleigh's work was not a failure, for his efforts had suggested to England that the real wealth of America lay in the opportunity it afforded for planting colonies which in time would become the foundation of a new English nation.

**19. England's Need of America.**—There was special need at this time for such an opportunity to relieve the crowded industrial conditions at home. The great demand for wool by Flemish weavers made wool-growing very profitable in England. Therefore, English landowners engaged largely in raising sheep instead of cultivating the soil. The result was that but one man was now required to watch sheep where

Raleigh's second colony fails.

Raleigh's lost colony.

Large numbers of men thrown out of work in England.

formerly many had been needed to raise wheat and barley. Large numbers of men were thrown out of work, and there was great distress among the laboring classes. The closing of the monasteries by Henry VIII., a few decades earlier, had had a similar effect, and the return of soldiers from European wars increased the difficulty. What to do with this large body of the unemployed was a trying problem. America seemed to furnish a solution, and to America men eagerly turned for help in the hour of England's need.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. As the defeat of the "Invincible Armada" by England is a great landmark in history, 1588 is another date you should know with certainty. You will notice that this defeat, which had a large influence upon colonization in America, occurred about one hundred years after 1492. You will notice, also, that Raleigh's attempts to plant colonies took place only a short time before 1588.
2. If you will learn important dates like 1492 and 1588 and group about them others of less importance, you will remember your history much better.
3. Why can you say that Raleigh's work in America was not a failure? Make a chart outline of the most important events for the first hundred years after the discovery of America by Columbus.
4. You can easily make a review outline from the topics in the three chapters now studied. Do it. It would be well for you to read the life of Sir Walter Raleigh and also Scott's *Kenilworth*.

### NOTES

*Sir Francis Drake* (1577).—Sir Francis Drake was one of England's famous navigators and admirals. In 1577, he set sail from England with five vessels; in 1580, he returned with but one. In the meantime he had doubled the Cape of Good Hope, as Magellan's men had done sixty years before, and sailed entirely around the world. He was the first English sea-captain to accomplish this great undertaking.

*Bartholomew Gosnold* (1602).—In 1602, the same year in which Raleigh sent out his final expedition in search of the lost colony at Roanoke, Bartholomew Gosnold set sail from England. He had with him twenty-three men, eleven of whom were to remain in America to make a settle-

ment. Reaching the coast at Massachusetts, he sailed around Cape Cod, which he so named on account of the abundance of cod fish near its coast. Then steering his course southward, he entered Buzzard's Bay and landed on an island which he called Elizabeth, in honor of the queen of England. On his return homeward, the eleven men who were expected to remain and make a settlement insisted upon returning with him. But Gosnold's interest in America bore fruit, for it kept alive the interests of other Englishmen in colonizing the New World.

QUEEN ELIZABETH'S SIGNATURE.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE ENGLISH IN VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND (1607-1689)

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, III.; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Drake's** Making of Virginia and the Middle Colonies; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Coffin's** Old Times in the Colonies; **Cooke's** Stories of the Old Dominion; **Andrews's** United States, I.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Fisher's** Colonial Era; **Eggleston's** Pocahontas and Powhatan; **Bancroft's** United States; **Doyle's** English Colonies; **Lodge's** Short History of the English Colonies in America; **Thwaites's** The Colonies; **Cooke's** Virginia; **Browne's** Maryland; **Montgomery's** English History.

**20. London and Plymouth Companies.**—Raleigh assigned his interests to a number of merchants and capitalists, who received a charter from King James in 1606 and formed two companies for the purpose of colonizing America. One of these companies was located in London.



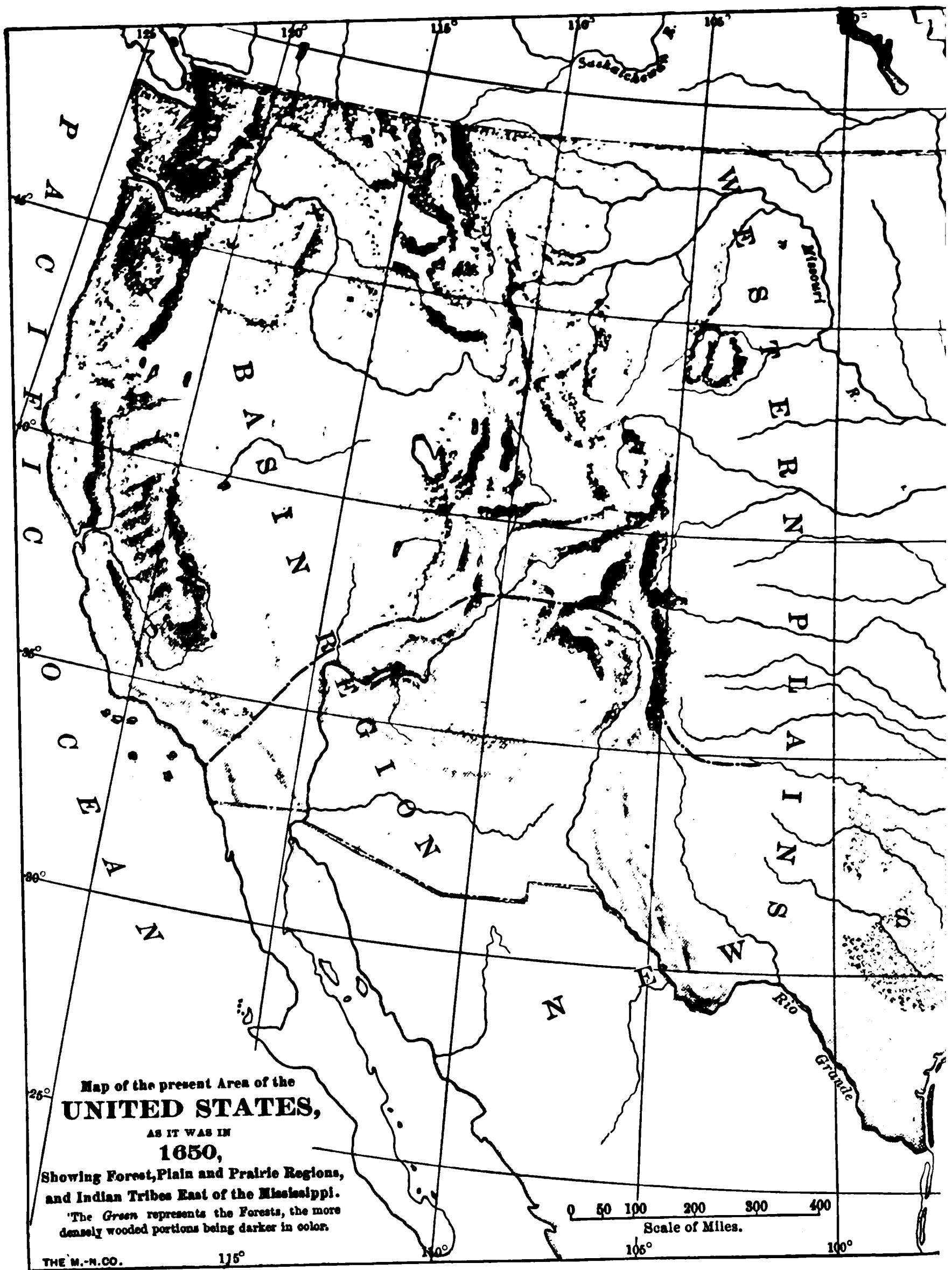
SIGNATURE OF JAMES I.

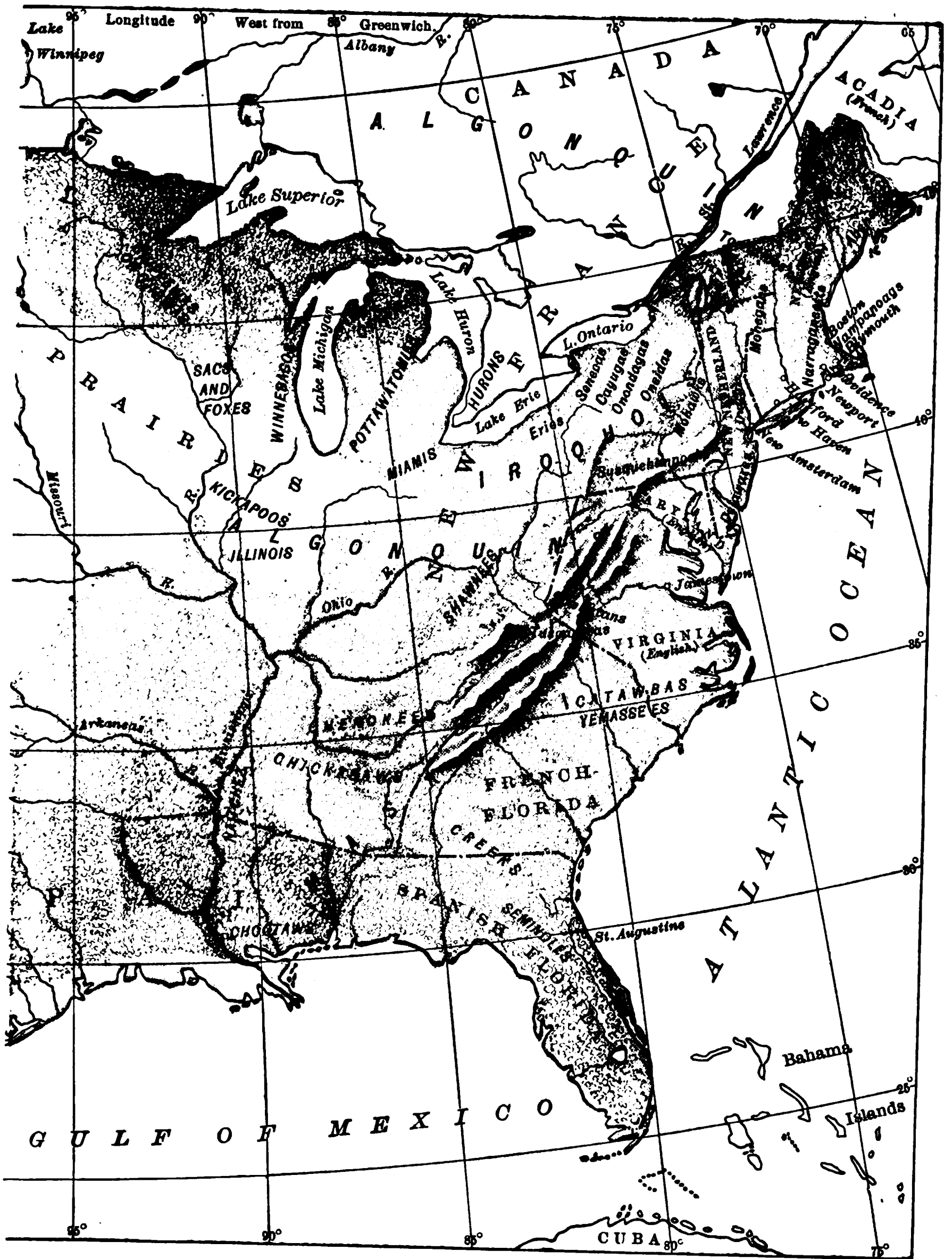
and was called the London Company. The other was located in Plymouth, and was called the Plymouth Company.<sup>1</sup> The former was to occupy the land between 34 degrees and 38 degrees north latitude, extending from Cape Fear to the mouth of the Potomac River; the latter, between 41 degrees and 45 degrees, extending from the mouth of the Hudson River to New Brunswick. By a charter granted in 1609, the Pacific Ocean was made the western boundary of Virginia. The area lying between these two belts, 38 degrees to 41 degrees, might be occupied by either company provided it

<sup>1</sup> The Plymouth Company sent out to the Kennebec the following year a settlement which proved a failure. No further attempt was made by this company.











came no nearer than one hundred miles to a settlement made by the other.

The most notable provision of the charter was that the colonists, as citizens in America, should have the same rights and privileges as belonged to citizens of England. It will be well to bear this great principle of the charter in mind when we study later the causes of the American Revolution. In addition to the charter, the emigrants received from King James and the London Company strict orders about what should be done in Virginia. One of these orders was very unwise and almost ruined the colony. It was as follows: for five years after settlement no one was to have any land of his own; all were to work together and put the products of their labor into a common storehouse, out of which provision was to be made for clothing and feeding the colonists.

The Charter and the Common Storehouse.

**21. Settlement of Jamestown (1607).** — On New Year's day, 1607, the first colony, consisting of one hundred and five men, set sail from London. About half of these men were gentlemen, whose aim, like that of previous settlers, was to make their fortunes in the New World and then return home. The other half consisted mostly of mechanics and tradesmen. There were no farmers and no women in the new colony, for the colonists did not come to make homes and settle down to earning their living by patient labor. Their aim was to find gold as the Spaniards had done in Peru and Mexico. Such men were not the right

material to make a successful colony, as soon appeared after they had reached Virginia. In May, they sailed up the James River and made a settlement. This they called Jamestown, in honor of King James, from whom they received their charter. Being for the most part a lazy, shiftless set, they did very little to prepare for the future. They

**The Settlers and their Sufferings.** were so slow that by the time they were settled it was too late for the spring planting.

Soon their provisions began to fail, and famine, along with the fever which seized them in the warm climate, rapidly

thinned their ranks. Sometimes there were hardly enough well persons to bury the dead. In about four months half their number had died, and the rest were discouraged. During these weary months of suffering some of the settlers lived in miserable dwellings made of boughs of trees or old sails, and some dug holes in the ground for shelter.

**22. The Services of Smith.**—But for one courageous man, John Smith, they would probably have perished. He so managed the Indians as to secure food enough to preserve the lives of the wretched colonists. Two years later

RUINS OF OLD CHURCH AT JAMESTOWN.

more colonists joined them, but the new-comers were as unfit as those who came first. During this time John Smith not only kept the colony from ruin but found opportunity to do some valuable exploring. While on one of these expeditions he sailed, in search of the Pacific, up the Chick-

ahominy River,<sup>1</sup> where he was captured by the Indians and taken before their chief, Powhatan. Smith tells a thrilling story<sup>2</sup> of the saving of his life by Powhatan's young daughter, Pocahontas. However much truth there may be in the romantic incident, Pocahontas herself is an attractive character, and her relation to the colonists is full of interest.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> North America at this time was supposed to be a narrow strip of land.

<sup>2</sup> As Smith in his efforts to prevent capture had killed two Indian warriors, Powhatan decided that he must be put to death. In the meantime, Smith had won the warm friendship of Pocahontas, a kind-hearted girl about ten years old. This little friend saved his life. For the Indians, having bound Smith hand and foot, and laid his head

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH

upon some stones, were gathered about their captive to see him put to death. Then a warrior raised his club, but before it could fall upon Smith's head, Pocahontas threw her arms about the prisoner's neck, and begged her father not to kill him. Powhatan's heart being touched, Smith was released and allowed to return to Jamestown. Although this story has been discredited by some historians, there is pretty good evidence for its truth. Later, Pocahontas carried food to the starving settlers at Jamestown, and gave Smith warning of an Indian plot to kill him.

A young Englishman, John Rolfe, fell in love with Pocahontas and married her. He took her to England, where she was treated with great kindness. Just as she was on the point of returning to America she died, leaving a son who became a man of influence in Virginia. John Randolph, of Roanoke (Va.), was one of her descendants.

<sup>3</sup> According to his own romantic account, John Smith had many thrilling adventures before he went to Virginia. Running away from his home in England, while yet a boy, he went to Holland and became a soldier. From Holland he wandered to other parts of Europe, and in course of time fought against the Turks, three of whom he slew in single combat. After being captured and enslaved by the Turks he made his escape, and in 1604 returned to England, at the age of twenty-five, in time to join the movement for planting a settlement in Virginia. On his return to England in 1609 he sailed to New England and made a map of much of its coast. In addition to an account of his own life, he wrote several books on America. He was a man of immense courage and energy, and doubtless saved the Jamestown colony from ruin.

**23. Smith Returns to England; the Suffering Colonists (1609-1610).** -After two more years of famine and hardships, five hundred additional colonists came over. It was the old story over again. Paupers, criminals, and

**POCAHONTAS SAVING CAPTAIN SMITH'S LIFE.**

*From Smith's "General History."*

otherwise worthless men made up the greater part of this wretched company. About this time the colonists suffered a severe loss, also, for Smith, having been wounded by the accidental discharge of a gun, was obliged to return to

England. The colony was thus left without a leader. At once the Indians, whom Smith had managed with great skill, began to rob and plunder the settlers, and famine and disease aided the work of destruction. The famine became so severe that the colonists ate the bodies of their own dead. Every day the numbers were thinned by death, and at the close of that dreadful winter (1609-1610), long known as the "starving time," barely sixty of the five hundred were left alive. Lord Delaware, the newly appointed governor, came in June, 1610, just in time to prevent the miserable remnant from sailing away to England. On account of ill-health he could not remain long in the colony, and left Sir Thomas Dale in charge of affairs.

**24. Dale's Great Reform : He Establishes Individual Ownership of Land and Goods (1611-1616).** — Dale was, like Smith, a vigorous and able ruler. He quickly saw that he must be extremely severe in governing the law-

POCAHONTAS.

less men in the colony. He not only flogged the unruly, but inflicted the severest kind of punishment upon those who said anything against his mode of governing. He even went so far as to burn some of the most rebellious, and in one case he sentenced to death by starvation a man who had stolen food. Of course these oppressive measures made Dale unpopular, but a stern ruler was just what was needed to put the colony on a firm footing. Its future soon began to look hopeful.

"The Starving Time."

Dale's severe measures.



Perhaps Dale's wisest act was the abolition of the system of a common storehouse. This had been one of the greatest evils of the colony. The settler had no land of his own and had to put the products of his labor into a common stock which all shared alike. It was a foolish system. The idlers, knowing they would be fed and clothed whether they

Dale abolishes  
the system of the  
common store-  
house.

#### THE IDLE COLONISTS.

worked or not, willingly let the industrious ones support them. As a result, thirty or forty energetic men had been supporting four or five times as many lazy, good-for-nothing men. Dale's great reform consisted in giving every man his own plot of ground. After the owner had turned into the common stock two and one-half barrels of corn, the remainder of his crop was his own. Under the new law, the idle were compelled to work and the thrifty were encouraged to produce all they could by their labor.

**25. Tobacco the Main Source of Wealth.**—About the time that this working spirit began to direct the colonists, they found that raising tobacco was immensely profitable. The soil and climate of Virginia specially fitting it for growing tobacco, after 1616 this product was the principal source of wealth. Now that the colonists could have their own land, and could make money by raising tobacco, they were ready to work with a will. Farmers in England were glad to come to Virginia, and the success of the colony was no longer doubtful.

**26. The Second Great Reform: Self-government (1619).**—Up to 1619 the people had little or no voice in their government. This state of things they did not like, for they had been accustomed in England to sending representatives to their governing body, Parliament. In 1619, therefore, they were granted a new charter, which provided for a representative assembly consisting of two delegates from each of the eleven settlements. As these settlements were called boroughs, the assembly was known as the House of Burgesses. The new government consisted of a governor, council, and assembly. This threefold government was modelled after the English form<sup>1</sup> and furnished later a basis for our own State and national governments. The private ownership of land and the culture of tobacco were two great inducements to emigration. Now that the people had a voice in making their own laws and levying their own taxes, Englishmen flocked to Virginia. Within a year after the people began to govern themselves, the population increased from 600 to 4,000. With the coming of women about that time, family life found a place in Virginia, and the people became prosperous and contented.

**The New Government.**

**27. Great Need of Labor; Labor Supply.**—A very different class of men now came to Virginia. Men with families and capital were ready to plant homes where re-

<sup>1</sup> The English Government consists of the Queen, House of Lords, and House of Commons. The Cabinet, and not the Queen, is the real executive in England. The two Houses constitute what is known as Parliament.

turns for labor were so promising. The great need was for laborers, and to supply this need indented servants in large numbers were brought over. At first these were poor boys and girls who were bound to service until they be-

**White servants  
sent to Virginia.**

came of age. Then adult servants, required to serve a term of years to pay for their passage, were sent. There were also kidnappers in England

whose special duty it was to procure men for service in Virginia.

But all these sources of labor did not supply Virginia's demand; for it frequently happened that the indented servant when free, himself became a landowner and required laborers. Naturally, then, the slave-trader sought this invit-

**The first cargo of  
negro slaves.**

ing market, and in 1619 landed the first cargo of negro slaves in Virginia. At that time able-bodied negroes could be bought on the coast of Guinea for a few shillings apiece.

These negroes were packed so closely for sail-

#### TOBACCO-PLANT.

ing that a vessel would bring hundreds of them over in a single voyage. Reaching Virginia they could be sold for about the price of a good horse. The profits were immense both to the slave-trader and the slave-owner. What the tobacco grower needed was an abundance of cheap labor, a need which negro slavery supplied. Tobacco, therefore, was largely responsible for the introduction of negro slavery into Virginia.

**28. Tobacco Establishes Rural Life.**—It was found that tobacco quickly exhausted the soil. This led to taking up much new land as soon as the old was worn out. Large plantations were the result. Each planter tried to secure a plantation on one of the many rivers. He could then have his own wharf, where he could ship his tobacco and receive in exchange manufactured goods from England. Under such a system, where each planter held thousands of acres of land, no large town could grow up, and life was wholly rural.

**29. Berkeley and the People.**—In 1660, after the overthrow of the commonwealth (see par. 35), Charles II. ascended the throne of England and Sir William Berkeley for a second time<sup>1</sup> became governor in Virginia. Governor Berkeley cared very little for the rights and wishes of the people. He was trying to rule in America as his despotic king was ruling in England. Hence in 1660 there began, between the people on the one side and the king's party headed by Berkeley on the other, a struggle that grew more and more bitter until it ended in Bacon's Rebellion in 1676. As this rebellion is an event of some importance, we may well notice how it came about. We shall see in the chain of events some of the causes of the American Revolution which occurred one hundred years later.

**30. Bacon Leads an Uprising of the People (1676).**—Charles II., early in his reign, decided to enforce the Navigation Laws, as a means of increasing his revenue. **The Navigation Laws.** These laws were very severe upon the tobacco trade of Virginia. They required that the planters should send their tobacco in English vessels, and to none but English ports. They required also that the planters should buy in England all the European goods they might need, and that these goods should be brought over in English vessels. In other words, the planter had to sell his tobacco and buy his manufactured goods at prices set by English merchants. This nearly ruined the leading industry of the planters, and they became discouraged and exasperated. In 1670 they

<sup>1</sup> Berkeley was governor from 1642–1651.

received almost nothing for their tobacco, and paid high prices for goods manufactured in England.

At the same time the Virginia Assembly no longer represented the wishes of the people, but the tyrannical ideas of Berkeley. Having found in 1660 a set of men<sup>1</sup> that suited his views, Berkeley for sixteen years kept these men in office, without an election by the people, by adjourning the assembly from year to year. Popular rights were thus despised. Moreover, suffrage was taken from all except land-owners and "housekeepers."

All these things were bad enough, but in 1673 the king did something far worse. He actually gave away Virginia to two of his favorites for thirty-one years. This action made the colonists uncertain about the titles to their land and aroused them to a high pitch of indignation. When a little later the lives of the settlers were threatened by attacks from the Indians and Berkeley refused to send troops against them, the people were ready for open rebellion. Nathaniel Bacon, a young man of wealth and influence, and a leader among the people, sought a commission from the governor to march against the Indians, but the governor, fearing a revolt, refused to give it. Without the commission, therefore, Bacon led his troops against the Indians and routed them. The governor declared him a rebel and traitor. Civil war followed. Governor Berkeley was driven out of Jamestown and the town was burned by owners of property in order to prevent his coming back. But Bacon suddenly died of fever, and Berkeley returned to take revenge by putting to death more than twenty of Bacon's leading followers. Not pleased with Berkeley's management of affairs, the king summoned him to England where, disappointed and heart-broken at the king's rebuke, he soon afterward died. Bacon's Rebellion showed that the 40,000

<sup>1</sup> Between 1650 and 1660, when the Puritans were in control in England, hundreds of the Stuart followers, called cavaliers, came to Virginia (see par. 103). Many of these cavaliers became planters of large influence and naturally supported Berkeley.

people in Virginia loved liberty well enough to shed their blood in its defence.

We have shortly to study settlers of a very different type—the New England Pilgrims and Puritans—but before doing so we must glance at the fortunes of the Catholics in Maryland.

**31. Lord Baltimore and the Catholics Settle Maryland (1634).**—At the time the Puritans<sup>1</sup> were coming over to America on account of religious persecution in England, the Catholics also were being badly treated because they were unwilling to conform to the English church. Lord Baltimore, a prominent Catholic, wishing to secure freedom of worship for English Catholics, obtained from Charles I., who was his personal friend, a charter granting him the land lying north and east of the Potomac River and on both sides of the Chesapeake Bay. Lord Baltimore died before the charter was issued, and it was transferred to his son. The latter made a settlement in 1634, near the mouth of the Potomac River, at St. Mary's, and named his colony Maryland in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria. Before proceeding to build houses for themselves, the colonists bought the land of the Indians, and paid for it with axes, hoes, and cloth. Their relations with the Indians were, with rare exceptions, most friendly.

GEORGE CALVERT, LORD BALTIMORE.

**32. Lord Baltimore's Proprietary Rights.**<sup>2</sup>—The charter granted to Lord Baltimore was extremely liberal. The king made him proprietor, requiring, as a token of his alle-

<sup>1</sup> See par. 40.

<sup>2</sup> Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Delaware were the only Proprietary colonies at the time of the Revolution. See par. 111.

giance to the crown, two Indian arrows yearly and one-fifth of all the gold and silver. Lord Baltimore had almost the powers of a king in the new colony. He could call together an assembly of the people's representatives, whose laws were in force as soon as he signed them, the king's assent not being required. The proprietor could coin money, establish at his will courts of law and pardon criminals; and these proprietary rights were to remain with Lord Baltimore's descendants. Thus

*The liberal character.*

we see that he had almost as much power in Maryland as King Charles had in England.

Besides, the Maryland charter contained a remarkable provision denying the right of the English government to tax

#### A MARYLAND SHILLING.

the colonists within the province. The colonists were to enjoy all the rights of freeborn Englishmen in the mother country, and no taxes could be levied without being voted by the people's representatives in their colonial legislature.

**33. Disputes About Boundaries and Religion.**—The Virginia colonists were greatly dissatisfied on account of the king's grant of land to Lord Baltimore, because the same land, they claimed, had already been granted to them. This dispute led to fighting and bloodshed, but the king finally decided the question in favor of Lord Baltimore. Much later, after the settlement of Pennsylvania, there was a dispute also about the boundary between that colony and Maryland. After a long time two surveyors, Mason and Dixon, established the boundary since known as Mason and Dixon's line (1763-1767).

*Mason and Dixon's line.*

In the early days of the colony every settler was allowed to worship as he pleased—provided he worshipped in a Christian church; all were equally protected under the laws. But later, during Cromwell's rule in England, the Protestants,<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Protestants were always more numerous in the colony than Catholics.

getting control of the government, began to persecute the Catholics, and serious trouble followed.

**34. Prosperity of the People.**—But in spite of many disputes about boundaries and religion the colony prospered. The land was fertile, the climate delightful, and the colonists could make their own laws. As in Virginia, life was almost wholly rural during the seven- **Rural life of the**teenth century. The numerous rivers, creeks, **people.** and inlets made communication so easy that towns, or centres for collecting and distributing articles of trade, were unnecessary. Ships could bring whatever the planter needed to his door, and carry away in exchange the products of the plantation,—tobacco and Indian corn. Like Virginia, Maryland derived much wealth from growing tobacco, which was for a long time the staple product of the two colonies.

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. What was the most notable provision of the charter granted by James I. to the London Company? What bad results followed the establishment of the common storehouse? What did John Smith do for the Virginia colony? Tell all you can about his character.
2. Imagine yourself in Virginia during these early years, and give an account of your life there. Impersonating Pocahontas, speak in the first person of your relations to the whites. Compare the work of Smith and Dale.
3. Do not be satisfied until you understand clearly the two great reforms.
4. Study the relation of soil and climate to tobacco, and of tobacco to plantation life and to negro slavery.
5. What was Berkeley's attitude toward the plain people? How did the Navigation Laws bear heavily upon the Virginia planters? In what way was Berkeley tyrannical? Write a simple outline of the events which led to an uprising of the people under Bacon in 1676. What were the results of this uprising? Contrast Bacon and Berkeley, and show why you like or dislike either of them.
6. Subject for debate: Resolved that Virginia owed a greater debt to John Smith than to Governor Dale.
7. Why did Lord Baltimore wish to plant a colony in the New World? What singular powers did the king confer upon Lord Baltimore as proprietor of Maryland? Be sure that you know what a proprietor was.
8. What remarkable provision did the Maryland charter contain? Note the important clause in the Maryland charter about "no taxation



without representation." What was Mason and Dixon's Line? In what respect was the life of the Maryland colonists like that of the settlers of Virginia? If you can see the relation of cause and effect between events, history at once becomes full of meaning and life. In looking for such relation, you will find it a great help to bring to your recitation at least one written question on every lesson.

9. The account of Bacon's Rebellion, as told in Cooke's Virginia, is well worth reading.

### NOTES

*North and South Carolina* (1663-1729).—In 1663-65 Charles II., desiring to reward eight of his favorite noblemen, gave them a grant of all the land between the Atlantic and the Pacific and extending from Virginia to a point some distance below St. Augustine. Thus we see that this land, called Carolina, had eight proprietors, just as Maryland and Pennsylvania each had one.

The form of government for Carolina was aristocratic. It was called the Grand Model and is said to have been outlined by a great English philosopher, John Locke. A few noblemen were to own all the land, make the laws, and have all the powers of government in their hands. The people were, like the old Russian serfs, to be bought and sold with the land. Of course this absurd scheme was a failure. The people made so much trouble for the proprietors that the latter were glad to sell in 1729 all their rights to the king of England. The king then divided Carolina into North and South Carolina, appointing a governor for each colony and allowing the people in each to choose their own assembly.

The population of the two colonies was composed of Englishmen, Huguenots, Germans, Scotch-Irish, and Scotch Highlanders. When the Revolution began, North Carolina was the fourth colony in population. The staple products of South Carolina were rice and indigo, and of North Carolina were tar, pitch, turpentine, and lumber.

*Georgia* (1733).—James Oglethorpe, a brave soldier and wealthy member of Parliament, knowing how eager the Spaniards were to destroy the weak English settlements in South Carolina, wished to plant a colony that should serve as a military outpost to ward off the Spanish attacks. But this was not his only motive. Being a man of warm sympathies, he desired to find relief for imprisoned debtors suffering in English prisons. He therefore secured from the king a grant of the land lying between the Savannah and the Altamaha Rivers and extending westward to the Pacific. In 1733 he planted at Savannah a colony in which freedom of worship was allowed to all but Catholics. For many years neither rum nor slaves could be imported. But believing that these restrictions interfered with the prosperity of the colony, the people finally secured their removal. At the end of twenty years, the trustees to whom the king had granted the original charter, gave it up. Georgia then became a royal colony and remained so until the Revolution.

## CHAPTER V

### THE PILGRIMS AND PURITANS IN MASSACHUSETTS AND CONNECTICUT (1620-1689)

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, I. and II.; **Drake's** Making of New England; **Coffin's** Old Times in the Colonies; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Winsor's** Narrative and Critical History, III.; **Eggleston's** Household History; **Andrews's** United States, I.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Fisher's** Colonial Era; **Doyle's** English Colonies; **Lodge's** Short History of the English Colonies in America; **Thwaites's** The Colonies; **Hawthorne's** Grandfather's Chair; **Hale's** Story of Massachusetts; **Fiske's** Beginnings of New England; **Abbott's** Captain Myles Standish; **Montgomery's** English History.

FICTION: **Stowe's** Mayflower; **Austin's** Standish of Standish, Betty Alden, A Nameless Nobleman, Dr. Le Baron and His Daughters; **Cogswell's** Regicides.

POETRY: **Longfellow's** Courtship of Myles Standish.

**35. England Under the Stuarts (1603-1649 and 1660-1688).**—We cannot understand who the Pilgrims and Puritans were, why they left their homes in England, and what they did after they came to America, unless we know something of English history from 1603 to 1689. With the exception of eleven years (1649-1660), the Stuart kings<sup>1</sup> reigned in England during this period. These men were oppressive rulers and aroused the opposition of many of the best people in England. When James I. ascended the throne he seemed to think that all England and its people were his personal property. He claimed that he ruled by divine right, which was another

**The tyrannical Stuarts.**

<sup>1</sup> James I. (1603-1625), Charles I. (1625-1649), Charles II. (1660-1685), James II. (1685-1688).

way of saying that his will was law and that the people had no rights which he was bound to respect.

Accordingly, there at once began a struggle between the throne and the people, who were represented by Parliament. The great majority of the people claimed that they could not lawfully be taxed without their consent; in other words,

**No taxation without representation.** that no taxes could be levied unless voted by the people's representatives in Parliament.

The Stuarts tried to plan various ways of raising money without asking Parliament to vote it. But this was very difficult.

For eleven years (1629–1640) Charles I. ruled England without Parliament, and he was so arbitrary that he brought on the war which ended in the loss not only of his crown, but of his life (1649). The Commonwealth followed (1649–1660)—England being ruled by Oliver Cromwell and later by his son Richard. Oliver Cromwell became almost as by his son Richard. Oliver Cromwell became even more autocratic than Charles I. had been.

After the Restoration, Charles II., son of Charles I., reigned till 1685, when he was succeeded by his brother, **James II. driven from England.** James II. The latter was so despotic that the people rose against him in the Revolution of 1688, and drove him out of England. It will greatly help us to understand Berkeley in Virginia and Andros in New England, if we remember that these men were trying to rule in America as their royal masters were ruling in England.

James I. was determined to make every one conform to the Established Church in England. But there were many

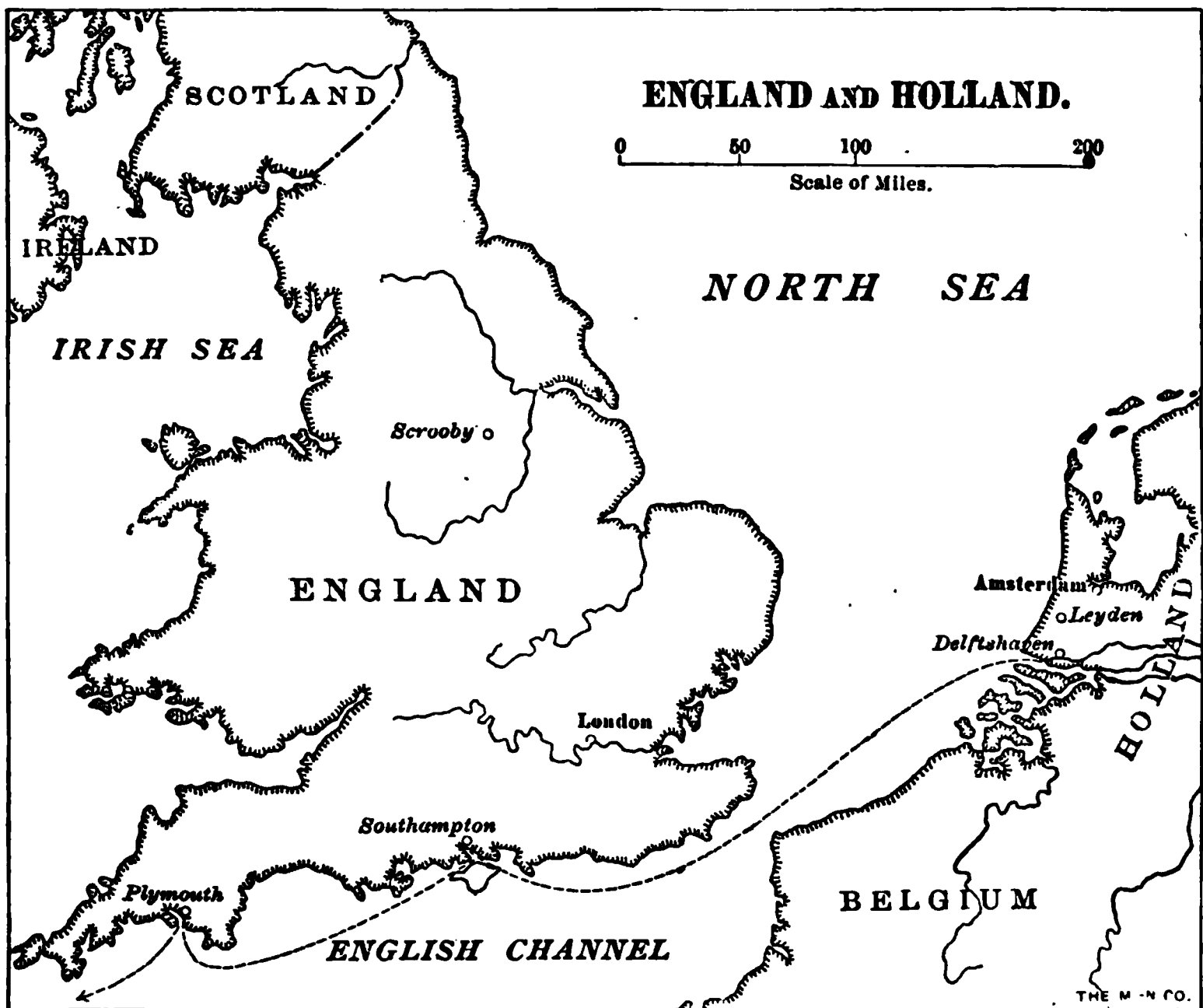
**The Church of England and the Puritans.** people who did not like its forms and ceremonies and wished to modify them. They were called Puritans because, it was said, they

wished to purify the Church. The Puritans wished to remain in the Church and reform it. Another party wished to leave the Established Church, or separate themselves from

**The Separatists.** it, and were therefore known as Separatists or Independents. They not only disliked the forms and ceremonies of the English Church, but they also

disapproved of church-government by bishops. They wished to have a church in which the people only should rule. Such a self-governing church, where each congregation could elect its minister and manage its own affairs without interference from king or bishop, afterward became known as Congregational.

**36. Pilgrims Migrate to America (1620).**—In the early part of the reign of James I., a number of people in the



village of Scrooby, a small village in Nottinghamshire, undertook to form such a church. But they were regarded as rebels and were hunted down, and some of **The Pilgrims** **escape to Holland.** At last, in 1608, they escaped to Holland, where they were allowed to remain in peace and to worship as they pleased.

But they were not satisfied to settle permanently in Holland, because they did not wish their children when grown

up to intermarry with the Dutch. They wished to make homes in a new land and there establish a free government and their own religion.

After remaining in Holland twelve years, therefore, they decided to go to America, in order to establish a

~~Their aims and~~ self-gov-  
character.

erning community and bring up their children to be liberty-loving and God-fearing men and women. By reason of their wanderings these people were called Pilgrims. The Pilgrims were poor, but they

#### THE MAYFLOWER.

were men of strong will and noble purpose. They tried to get a charter from the king, but he refused to give it. He led them to believe, however, that he would not interfere with their project if they did not make themselves troublesome to him.

**37. Voyage and First Winter.** — After getting money on hard terms they started<sup>1</sup> over from Plymouth, England, in the *Mayflower* and the *Speedwell*. On account of a

RELICS FROM THE MAYFLOWER:—JOHN ALDEN'S BIBLE, WILLIAM CLARK'S MUG AND WALLET, ETC.

<sup>1</sup> The Pilgrims sailed in July, 1620, from Delftshaven, the Port of Leyden, Holland, in the *Speedwell* for Southampton, England, where the *Mayflower* awaited them.

leak the *Speedwell* was obliged to return, and the *Mayflower*, with about one hundred people on board, sailed for America. After a stormy voyage they anchored about the end of November, 1620, on the northern shore of Cape Cod. As this place was not suitable for a settlement, they sailed across the bay to a good harbor and made their final landing at Plymouth, December 21, 1620. The suffering during the first winter was severe, and before spring half their number were dead. But when spring came, they had no disposition to return to England. Weak as they were in numbers and possessions, they were strong in manly purpose and brave enough to face any danger that threatened their little settlement.

A CHEST WHICH CAME OVER IN THE  
MAYFLOWER.

GOVERNOR CARVER'S  
CHAIR.

**38. The Covenant, Democracy, and the Church.** — Before landing, they signed, in the cabin of the *Mayflower*, a covenant in which they agreed to make and support such laws as should seem for the best interests of all. John Carver was chosen governor. The laws were made in town-meetings, in which every man could vote. The Pilgrims at Plymouth believed that the people should rule; they planted democracy in their church and state. Some years later,<sup>1</sup> after population had increased, this pure de-

Pilgrim leaders.

mocracy was obliged to give place to representative government. Governor Carver died during the first winter,

<sup>1</sup> In 1630, there were only 300 settlers. By 1639 representative government became necessary, and in 1643 the population numbered 3,000. This increase was due to surrounding settlements which began to spring up about 1630.

and William Bradford was chosen to succeed him. Elder Brewster was the minister and Captain Myles Standish was chosen military leader. These stout-hearted leaders well represented the character of the Plymouth settlers.

**39. Relations with the Indians.**—For a better defence against the Indians the Pilgrims organized their able-bodied men into small companies who took turns in guarding the settlement against surprises by the Indians. Fortunately for the Plymouth settlers, so many of the Indians of that region had recently died from a pestilence that the remaining natives were not troublesome. Massasoit, chief of the Wampanoag Indians, visited Plymouth in the spring of 1621, and Governor Bradford made a treaty of peace with him that lasted fifty years.<sup>1</sup>

*Myles Standish*

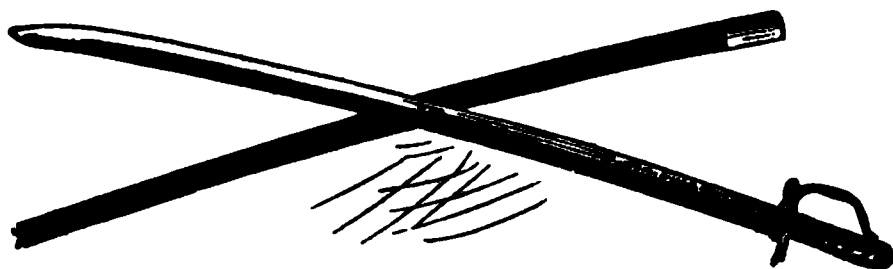
**40. The Puritans and the Massachusetts Bay Colony (1628-1630).**—Encouraged by the successes of the Pilgrims, many Puritans began to follow their example. In 1628, some of the leaders of the Puritan party in England, men of wealth and influence, formed a trading company. They bought of the Plymouth Company a

STANDISH'S POT AND PLATTER.

<sup>1</sup> Later the Narragansett chief, Canonicus, sent to Plymouth a rattlesnake skin containing a bundle of arrows; Governor Bradford removed the arrows and, filling the skin with powder and shot, returned it to the Indians. This hint was sufficient.

tract of land along the Massachusetts coast, extending between the Charles and Merrimac Rivers and to within three miles beyond each, and sent out men to occupy it. Endicott was their leader, and they settled at Salem.

The following year the same trading company, with increased numbers, obtained a charter from the king, incorporating it as the Governor and Com-



STANDISH'S SWORD.

pany of Massachusetts Bay. Very likely Charles I. was quite willing to be rid of these liberty-loving, unruly subjects. At any rate he granted them a charter which was very liberal in its terms. It allowed the freemen of the company to choose their own governor, his deputy, and a council of eighteen assistants, and to manage in every way their own affairs.

**The Puritans secure a liberal charter.**

It did not restrict its holders in the place of meeting. Of course this was a distinct advantage to the promoters of the new enterprise. Accordingly, in 1629, when the king was ruling with a high hand and setting at naught the will of Parliament, by levying taxes himself and by throwing into prison those who refused to pay such illegal taxes, these Puritans decided upon the bold step of removing with their chartered rights to New England, where they might find a refuge from the tyranny of the king and build up a government according to their own ideas.

In 1630, under the leadership of John Winthrop, about 1,000 persons, with horses, cattle, and stores of various kinds, sailed for Massachusetts. This new colony, called the Massachusetts Bay Colony, made settle-

**The Puritan settlements in 1630.**

ments at Charlestown, Boston, Roxbury, and Watertown. John Winthrop was made the first governor. Like the Plymouth colony they established a government democratic in form, but unlike the Plymouth colony they were men of wealth and culture. Some of them were relatives of the greatest men of the day. They were men of



wisdom and energy also, and might have made great names<sup>1</sup> for themselves in England. It must have been a strong motive that led them to sacrifice so much. We shall see how tenaciously they held to the rights which those sacrifices had bought.

Governor Bradford  
 Sir..... My journey  
 to Massachusetts lodge may  
 be worth 16 s. 4 d to your  
 humble servant.

Myles Standish  
 Plymouth Colony  
 16 June 1621.

MYLES STANDISH'S BILL OF EXPENSES AFTER HIS VISIT TO THE INDIANS.

**41. The New England Township.**—Unlike ordinary colonists, the Puritans came in large communities with their plans of government fully matured. They were not Separatists in England as the Pilgrims had been, but the church they established in Massachusetts was independent and Con-

<sup>1</sup> Stoughton, lieutenant-governor of Massachusetts (1692-1701), said, "God sifted a whole nation that he might send choice grain over into this wilderness."

gregational. Each congregation formed a settlement, and each settlement constituted a township and parish whose boundaries were one and the same, and usually included an area of from forty to sixty square miles. Each parish had one church or meeting-house where all business, church or civil, was transacted.<sup>1</sup> Later, the people erected a separate building for their town meetings

*The meeting-house and the village.*

and called it a town-house or town-hall. The meeting-house and the town-house were the centres about which clustered the villages. In order to meet the more easily for worship the settlers built their houses close together. Perhaps another reason was to secure a better defence against the Indians.

#### 42. Church and State.

—The charter permitted all freemen to vote, but the Puritans came to New England to establish and preserve what was most dear to them, their own religious and political freedom—in no sense religious toleration. When the first

elections were held, therefore, it was enacted that no one should be admitted a freeman and so have a right to vote, who was not a member of one of the churches of the colony. The union of church and state was thus complete.

*Puritans allow none but church members to vote.*

At first the freemen met with the governor, his deputy, and council of assistants, to make such laws as pertained to

<sup>1</sup> As early as 1631 it was decided that none but church members should be admitted as freemen.

the general welfare of the several towns. But after a time, when the towns and freemen had so multiplied that it became inconvenient for them all to meet, each town began to send representatives, or deputies, to the legislature or General Court (1634), just as each settlement or borough in Virginia sent representatives to the House of Burgesses.

**43. Massachusetts Gets Control of the Connecticut Valley (1633-1636).**—Some time before the Massachusetts Bay Company had made settlements on the New England coast, the Dutch had become established in New York (then New Amsterdam) on the Hudson, where they were engaged in the fur trade with the Indians. Claiming the land as far east as the Connecticut River, they built a small fort at

**The Dutch at Hartford.** Hartford, in the interest of the fur trade. In 1633, Massachusetts sent up the Connecticut a vessel, which in spite of Dutch protests, sailed to Windsor; six miles above Hartford. There the Massachusetts men built a house for trading with the Indians. Two years later, John Winthrop, by building a fort called Saybrook at the mouth of the river, cut off the Dutch fort at Hartford from the support of New Amsterdam. The way was now open for Massachusetts to send settlers into the valley of the Connecticut.

**44. Massachusetts Settles the Connecticut Valley (1635-1636).**—In 1635, 3,000 more settlers came from England to Massachusetts, where, some of them maintained, there was not enough good land for the many people now in that colony. The complaint of the lack of land came mainly from three of the eight Massachusetts towns. On hearing of the fertile soil of the Connecticut valley a great part of the people of these three towns decided to make settlements there. When they migrated to Connecticut they settled

**Settlement at Hartford.** the three towns of Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor. The principal settlement was made at Hartford in June, 1636. Under the leadership of their minister, Thomas Hooker, one hundred men, women, and children came overland from Cambridge (then Newtown) driving their cattle before them. It took them two

weeks to make the toilsome journey through the woods to their new home.

**45. Thomas Hooker and Democracy.**—There is not much doubt that the principal reason why these three towns wished to move to Connecticut was political. Many people did not approve of the Puritan idea of allowing only church members to vote in Massa-

#### HOOKER'S EMIGRATION TO CONNECTICUT.

leader of this movement in favor of a more democratic system. John Winthrop and other Puritan leaders believed in government by only a part of the people. They did not believe that all the people were wise enough to govern well. But Thomas Hooker, like Abraham Lincoln, believed in government "of the people, by the people, and for the people."

**46. The Connecticut Constitution (1639).**—In 1639, the

three towns of Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor united under one government. The constitution which they adopted was the first written constitution in all history upon which a government was built up. Another interesting fact about this constitution is that in it no mention was made either of the king or of the English company<sup>1</sup> holding a patent of the land. This constitution **Government by the people.** was made by the people, in the interests of the people, and showed that Thomas Hooker and his followers had faith in the ability of the people to manage their own affairs.<sup>2</sup> In the Connecticut colony all freemen, whether church members or not, could vote.

The New Haven colony was founded in 1638, by a small body of men under the leadership of John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton. They based **New Haven colony.** their laws strictly upon the Bible, and like the Massachusetts Bay colonists, allowed none but church members to vote.

After the Restoration, Connecticut, in order to confirm her rights, thought it best to secure, if possible, a charter from the king. Governor Winthrop was sent to England, and by his tact and pleasing address, succeeded in obtaining a charter (1662) for the territory which **The Connecticut Charter.** included Hartford, New Haven, and all the other settlements<sup>3</sup> that had been made in what is now Connecticut. This charter was so liberal and satisfied the people so well that it afterward became the State Constitution and remained in force till 1818.

**47. Religious Intolerance in Massachusetts Leads to the Settlement of Rhode Island (1636).—**We must remember that the Puritans did not come to New England to establish religious freedom, but to form a state where they should

<sup>1</sup> In 1630 the Council for New England granted the patent to the Earl of Warwick. In 1631 he assigned it to Lord Say-and-Sele and others.

<sup>2</sup> Alexander Johnston says: "It is on the banks of the Connecticut, under the mighty preaching of Thomas Hooker, and in the constitution to which he gave life if not form, that we draw the first breath of that atmosphere which is now so familiar to us. The birthplace of American democracy is Hartford."

<sup>3</sup> Saybrook was purchased by the Connecticut colony in 1644.



have freedom for their own religion. They thought their own safety, certainly their own welfare, depended upon having none but members of the church take any part in government. But while none but church members could vote, all were obliged to pay taxes for the support of the church and

**Roger Williams  
and his views.**

were compelled to attend its services. Roger Williams, a young man of pure spirit and strong conviction, who had become pastor of a church at Salem (1633), declared this system to be wrong. He as-

serted that no man should be obliged to pay taxes to support any church, nor should he be punished by the magistrates for not attending church services. His belief was that every man should settle all such matters with his conscience and his God. Williams stirred up the Puritans by declaring, also, that they had no just claim to the

#### FIRST CHURCH AT SALEM.

land they lived on. The land was theirs because the king had granted it to the Massachusetts Bay Company. But the land, Williams said, had never become the king's property; it belonged to the Indians; and the king, therefore, could not grant to anybody what was not his own.

This strange way of looking at the authority of the magistrates and at property rights alarmed the Puritans, especially as the English government was already none too friendly. They very much feared that the English king, hearing of the disturbance which these new teachings had caused in the colony, would hasten to take away the

charter. Hence they looked upon Roger Williams as a dangerous person and drove him out of the colony.<sup>1</sup> He went to Rhode Island and made a settlement at Providence (1636). Rhode Island became a refuge for all who were seeking for a place to worship freely in accordance with their chosen faith.

Roger Williams  
driven out of  
Massachusetts.

#### A SETTLER BUILDING HIMSELF A HOUSE AT PROVIDENCE.

Another disturber of the public peace was Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, a bright woman who had recently come from

<sup>1</sup> As soon as Roger Williams learned that the Puritan magistrates had decided to send him back to England, he made his escape in midwinter to the wilderness. Here he wandered about for fourteen weeks, through deep snows, sometimes sleeping in hollow trees at night, and sometimes getting food from the Indians. Early in the following summer, with five friends from Salem, he crossed the Narragansett Bay in search of a new home. Canonicus, chief of the Narragansetts, gave him a tract of land where he made a settlement, calling it Providence, in token of God's care for him during his time of trouble.



## FACSIMILE OF OPENING LINES

England. She gave religious lectures which were opposed in their doctrines to those of the regular clergy, and caused great excitement. Although some of the leading men were included among her followers she was banished from the colony.

**48. The New England Confederacy (1643).** — The Dutch, angry at the loss of their fur trade in the Connecticut valley, had twice tried to drive the English away. The French in Canada were trying to push their claims to the south, and the Indians, either as allies of the French or the Dutch or on their own account, threatened on all sides. Connecticut, therefore, proposed to Massachusetts a union of the New England colonies for mutual defence. In 1643, articles were agreed upon at Boston by representatives from Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven, uniting the colonies in a confederation for "mutual safety and welfare."

This confederacy was important because it taught the colonies how to unite, and made stronger their feeling of independence. It prepared the way for the Albany Congress, the Continental Congress, and the union of the States in 1789.

## OF THE MASSACHUSETTS CHARTER.

**49. The Quakers in New England.**—In 1656, the Massachusetts colonists were greatly alarmed to learn of the arrival of two Quakers. These persons were at once thrown into prison until the ship in which they had come should sail, and boards were nailed on their prison windows to prevent them from communicating with people outside. But in spite of this harsh treatment the Quakers continued to come. Fined, imprisoned, whipped without mercy, mutilated, and driven from the colony on penalty of death, they still persevered. Not until four of them were hanged did a reaction in their favor set in.

We are led to ask why the Quakers persisted in coming to Massachusetts in the face of such deadly opposition, and why the Puritans were so horrified to have them in the colony. The first question is quickly answered. The Quakers were zealous to make converts and were more than willing to suffer for their teachings. In answering the second it may be said that the Quakers held in small esteem both the political and religious system of the Puritans. The ideal of the Quakers was a separation of church and state. They were guided by

Punishment of the  
Quakers.

Peculiar ideas of  
the Quakers.

what they called the "inner light," or conscience. This was to them a supreme authority to be obeyed in spite of law or punishment. As they did not approve the Puritan system, they refused to take the oath of allegiance, to pay taxes, or do military service.

To the Puritans the success of Quakerism meant the overthrow of Puritanism. The Puritans said, **Why the Puritans persecuted the Quakers.** "We have come over to New England to establish a church and state after our own ideal. If the Quakers and others do not like our system let them go elsewhere, as we did when we left England."

**50. Trouble with England and Loss of the Massachusetts Charter (1684).**—During the first thirty years of

its existence, Massachusetts, left pretty much alone by England, had

**Independent attitude of Massachusetts.** improved her opportunities to

build up a strong and independent government.

The stormy reign of Charles I. had not permitted any oversight on the part of England. The commonwealth which succeeded (see par. 35), being Puritan in its sympathies, allowed the colony to follow its own course. But the conditions which had favored her growth thus far were

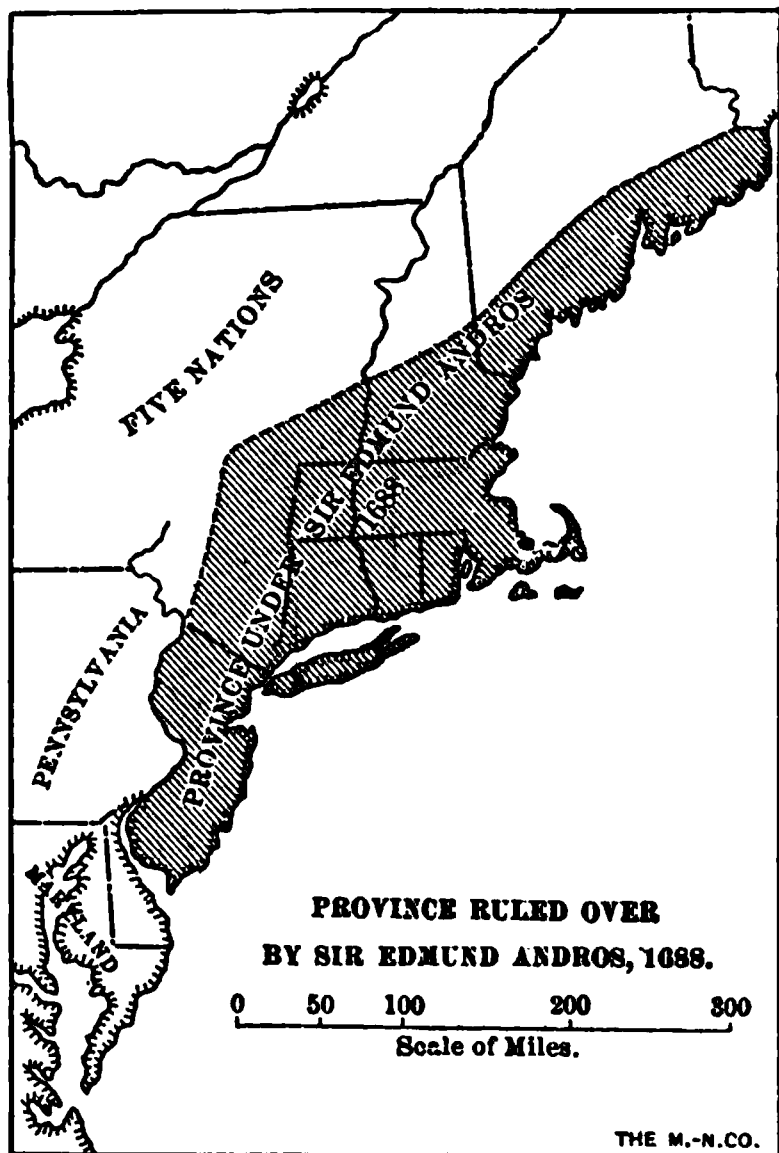
**SIR EDMUND ANDROS.**

giving way. After the Restoration (1660), it was not to be expected that Charles II. would overlook the growing importance and independent attitude of the Massachusetts colony. That would be too much to expect of any king, especially of a Stuart king. Moreover, Massachu-

setts had used her power in such a way as to make many enemies. Her custom of excluding from the colony people like Roger Williams and Anne Hutchinson, **Enemies of Massachusetts.** whose religious views differed from her own, had driven some men of influence back to England. Others who were not members of the Congregational Church had of their own accord returned to England, because in Massachusetts they could have no voice in the government. As a result, these men cherished only ill-will toward the colony which had caused them so much trouble.

All these aggrieved persons found means of carrying into the king's court mischievous reports of the doings of the colony. For instance, it was rumored that Massachusetts had raised money without the king's sanction, and had given a hearty welcome to two of the judges who had sentenced Charles I. to death, and who afterward had escaped to Massachusetts. Furthermore, it was said that Massachusetts had broken the Navigation Laws which forbade the colonies to receive foreign vessels into their ports or to trade with any except English ports or ports belonging to England. This political sin was especially grievous to English merchants, and robbed the king of his revenue.

The time had therefore arrived for England to find means of humbling her ambitious colonists. But it was not until after a long struggle that the charter was finally annulled in 1684. The Government and Company of Massachusetts then passed out of existence.



**Complaints  
against Massa-  
chusetts.**

**51. Andros the Stuart Governor in New England (1686-1689).**—Charles II. died and James II. succeeded him. In 1686 he appointed Sir Edmund Andros governor of all New England and, later, of New York and New Jersey

#### THE CHARTER OAK.

also. Andros truly represented the despotic will of his royal master. He was especially tyrannical in Massachusetts, because this colony had taken such an independent attitude toward England. He at once declared that inasmuch as the colonists had lost their charter they could no longer lay any legal claim to their lands. They could hold them only by paying money as a quit-rent to the king. The privilege of making their own laws and levying their own taxes in town meetings and General Court<sup>1</sup> was also taken away. Andros

**Tyranny of Andros in Massachusetts.**

<sup>1</sup> General Court was the name for the colonial legislature. The term is still applied to the Massachusetts legislature.

and a council of his own choosing now made the laws and levied the taxes. The colonists rebelled, but the king stood back of the governor, and resistance was useless. Freedom of the press was no longer allowed, and men were illegally thrown into prison. Indeed the condition of the people was little short of slavery.

In 1687 Andros went to Hartford to secure the Connecticut charter. The conference was so long and heated that it continued till dark, when suddenly the candles were blown out and, as the traditional story goes, the charter was snatched from the table and hidden in an oak-tree.<sup>1</sup> afterward historic as the "Charter Oak." But the colonists were obliged to give up their charter government and to acknowledge Andros as governor.

Andros fails to secure the Connecticut charter.

Andros, however, pressed his tyranny too far. As soon as the people heard that King James II. was driven from the throne of England, they seized Andros, threw him into prison, and later sent him back to England. Andros in Massachusetts, and Berkeley in Virginia, were both warmly hated and bitterly remembered.

**52. Industries and Trade in New England.**—As we have seen, soil and climate favored the growth of tobacco on large plantations in Virginia, where life was rural. This was not true in New England. There the soil was rocky, and the climate was too cold for the growth of tobacco. The people lived mostly in towns, usually not far from the coast. Near the towns were the farms of those who tilled the soil.

In Virginia, the many sluggish rivers made it easy for vessels to reach the wharves of the plantations. In hilly New England the swift-running streams were not so navigable, but were useful for turning the wheels of mills and factories. Naturally, manufacturing on a small scale began

<sup>1</sup> In 1856, the noble old tree, which stood in what is now Charter Oak Place, Hartford, was blown down. A marble tablet marks the spot.

<sup>2</sup> It is only fair to say that Andros was personally a far more honorable man than Berkeley.

early in New England. In addition to saw-mills and weaving-mills, the New Englanders had factories for making salt, gunpowder, and glass-ware. Good fishing off the coast led to a considerable export trade in dried fish. The extensive forests furnished lumber for ship-building and commerce. At an early day New England started the ship-building industry, for which, in later New England history, the people became famous.

#### COD-FISHING.

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. In what ways were the Stuart kings tyrannical? Name two or three results of their struggles with the people of England.
2. Who were the Puritans? the Pilgrims? Why did the Pilgrims wish to emigrate to America?
3. Explain how the settlers at Plymouth first made their laws. What were their relations with the Indians?
4. State the leading provisions of the charter which the Puritans obtained from the king. What was the township? Why would the Puritans allow none but church members to vote? What form of government did they have?

5. Name points of difference between the Pilgrims and the Puritans. Which do you like the better, the Pilgrims or the Puritans? Give your reasons.
6. How did the Massachusetts people get control of the Connecticut valley? How did Thomas Hooker and John Winthrop differ in their ideas of government? Tell all you can about the Connecticut Constitution.
7. Why did the Puritans send Roger Williams out of their colony? Subject for debate: Resolved that the Puritans were right in their treatment of Roger Williams.
8. What were the causes and results of the New England Confederacy? Do you think that if you had been a Puritan you would have joined in persecuting the Quakers? Give your reasons.
9. What enemies did Massachusetts make? What complaints did they raise against the colony? Compare the rule of Andros in Massachusetts with that of Berkeley in Virginia. In what respects were these governors like the Stuart kings?
10. How did the life and occupations of the people in Virginia differ from those of the people in Massachusetts?
11. Read Austin's *Standish* and Longfellow's *Courtship of Miles Standish*.

## NOTES

*New Hampshire* (1623).—Two years after the Pilgrims landed, the Council of Plymouth granted to Sir Ferdinando Gorges and Captain John Mason the territory between the Merrimac and the Kennebec Rivers. In 1623, fishing stations were begun at Dover and Portsmouth. Later, Mason and Gorges divided the territory between them. Mason took the part west of the Piscataqua, which he named New Hampshire after his own county of Hampshire in England: Gorges took the part east of the same river, naming it Maine. The proprietors left the early settlers to do pretty much as they liked. Massachusetts claimed all the territory, but to make certain her claim bought out the heirs of Gorges (1677) for \$6,000. Maine continued as a part of Massachusetts till 1820. New Hampshire remained for a long time under the protection of Massachusetts. After severing connection with Massachusetts three times, New Hampshire became a separate royal colony in 1741, and so continued until the Revolution.



## CHAPTER VI

### THE DUTCH IN NEW YORK AND THE QUAKERS IN PENNSYLVANIA (1609-1689)

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, II. and III.; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Drake's** Making of Virginia and the Middle Colonies; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History; **Andrews's** United States, I.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Fisher's** Colonial Era; **Doyle's** English Colonies; **Lodge's** Short History of the English Colonies in America; **Thwaites's** The Colonies; **Bancroft's** United States, I.; **Winsor's** Narrative and Critical History, III.

FICTION: **Irving's** Knickerbocker's History of New York.

**53. Henry Hudson Seeks the Northwest Passage (1609).** In 1609, Henry Hudson, an English navigator, was employed by the Dutch East India Company to sail in search of a short northwest passage to India. Holland was then one of the greatest commercial countries in the world, and, like the other great European powers, desired to find a shorter route for the trade that was making her people rich. Hudson crossed the Atlantic, and with a crew of twenty men, in the *Half-Moon*, sailed up the river which now bears his name. He held the familiar belief of his time, that the East Indies could be reached by a short water-route through North America, which was supposed to be a narrow continent. But after sailing as far as the present site of Albany, he could go no farther, and gave up his plan of finding the East Indies by that route. Although he did not find a short passage to the Pacific, he discovered the Hudson River, which was a great water-way for the Dutch fur traders coming later. He also won the good-will of the Indians.

It was worth much to the Dutch that Hudson came to the Indians as a friend. The same year Champlain, a French explorer and trader, made deadly enemies of these same Indians, the Iroquois, who gave him great trouble, and hindered the French

Hudson wins the good-will of the Indians for the Dutch.

in their work of exploration and colonization.

#### THE LIMIT OF HUDSON'S VOYAGE.

region of the Hudson, and in 1615 the Dutch States-General gave a charter to a company of merchants. In this charter the new country was named New Netherland. A small trading-house was erected on the present site of Albany, and a similar one was built on Manhattan Island, at the mouth of the river.

Real colonizing did not begin until 1623, when the West India Company, which had been chartered two years before for purposes of settlement and trade, began to send out colonists. Some of these settled on the Delaware, or South River, some on the Hudson, or North River, some on Long Island, and a few remained on Manhattan Island.

The Dutch built Fort Orange, where Albany now stands. In 1626, Peter Minuit, governor of New Netherland, founded New Amsterdam (now New York City) on Manhattan Island, which he bought from the Indians for trinkets worth twenty-four dollars. These early colonies opened a successful trade with the Indians, with whom they kept on good terms, but they did not cultivate the soil, and, therefore, their settlements did not thrive.

Dutch settlements  
and forts.

#### THE EARLIEST PICTURE OF NEW AMSTERDAM.

**55. The Patroons.**—To encourage emigration the States-General of Holland granted to the company a new charter by which the patroon system was established. This system permitted any member of the Dutch West India Company who would, within four years, bring into the colony fifty settlers, to own a landed estate with a water front of sixteen miles, if on but one side of the Hudson, or of eight miles if on both sides. This great land-owner or patroon might extend his estate inland as far as he thought desirable. In all cases the land was to be fairly bought of the Indians. These patroons exercised almost absolute power over their tenants. In fact the patroons resembled feudal lords, and the tenants resem-

Power and duties  
of the patroons.

bled the vassals of feudal times. It should be noted that the patroons were each required to support a minister and a school teacher, in order that religious education should not suffer. This wise provision indicated the sturdy, wholesome character of the Dutch people.

**56. The Dutch Win the Friendship of the Iroquois Indians and thus Secure an Extensive Fur Trade.—By**

#### SELLING ARMS TO THE INDIANS.

treating the Iroquois justly, the Dutch won the warm friendship of these powerful Indians, who engaged in an extensive fur trade with them. By honest dealing, the Dutch fur-traders avoided costly Indian wars, and easily secured all the furs coming through the hands of the Iroquois from numerous tribes around the Great Lakes and between the Ohio and the Mississippi. The results of this friendship were important: (1) Dutch commerce was enriched; (2) the Iroquois received for their furs the fire-arms which enabled them all the more successfully to prevent the French

Results of the  
friendship of the  
Iroquois for the  
Dutch.

from getting possession of New York; (3) unwittingly, the Dutch were doing the English a great favor, for after New Netherland passed into the hands of England, the Dutch remained along the Hudson as before, and helped to maintain the fur trade with the Iroquois, much to the advantage of England.

**57. New Netherland Under Dutch Governors<sup>1</sup> (1623-1664).**—There was less political freedom in New Netherland than in New England. The people could not make their own laws nor levy their own taxes.

**The government.**

The town meeting, which was such a characteristic feature of New England life, had no existence here. Religious freedom was all that the most liberal could desire. As Holland welcomed the Pilgrims when driven by persecution from England, the Dutch in New Netherland welcomed the victims of Puritan intolerance in New England. People from

**The mixed population.** all parts of Europe were attracted to New Netherland, and a very mixed population was the result. It was said that in 1643 eighteen languages were spoken in New Amsterdam. In such a mixed community there could not be the same intense loyalty to the ruling power as if all the people had been of one nation.

**58. New Netherland Becomes New York (1664).**—The Dutch were now, as the Spaniards had been the century before, the great naval and commercial rivals of England. It was natural that England should be jealous of Dutch trade. The Dutch held the best harbor on the Atlantic coast, and the best highway to the Indian fur trade in the interior. No other river equalled the Hudson in this respect; its advantages were superb. Moreover, the Dutch colonies separated the English colonies north and south, and England, not foreseeing that the union of the English colonies could prove disastrous to the mother country, conceived the idea that the intrusion of the Dutch was a great obstacle to their growth.

**Why England wished to get control of New Netherland.**

<sup>1</sup> New Netherland had four Dutch governors: Peter Minuit, Walter von Twil-ier, William Kieft, and Peter Stuyvesant. Stuyvesant was the only governor worthy of the name. With great reluctance did he yield to the English.

Therefore, after allowing the Dutch to remain fifty years in the territory they had settled, England suddenly brought forward her claim to the land by the discovery of the Cabots. Accordingly, in 1664, while Holland and England were at peace, Charles II. sent over a fleet to attack the Dutch colony at New Amsterdam.<sup>1</sup> Governor Stuyvesant made frantic appeals to the people to assist in warding off the attack, but the Dutch were outnumbered,<sup>2</sup> and resistance was useless. Without a blow New Amsterdam fell into the hands of the English, and with it the whole of New Netherland. Charles II. gave the newly conquered territory to his brother, the Duke of York, and changed the name of both the colony and its capital to New York.

**The Dutch yield to the English.**

Dutch colonization, like Spanish, failed, and for a similar reason. The Spaniards were allured by gold, the Dutch by trade. They both lacked the colonizing instinct which puts home-making before wealth-getting. Though the Dutch failed as a nation in colonizing America, their influence was indelibly impressed for good on the part of the country which they settled.

**Why the Dutch failed.**

**59. New York Under English Governors.**—New York prospered under English rule, but the people there were disappointed because they were not given as much political freedom as the English colonists enjoyed in New England. The feeling became so strong that in 1683 they were allowed an assembly elected by the freeholders, which could meet with the governor and council to make laws and levy taxes.

In 1686, however, the Duke of York, having become king, took away this representative government, and two years later annexed New York to New England, under the

<sup>1</sup> Connecticut readily came forward to assist in defeating her old enemy in the Connecticut valley and on Long Island, where English settlers had come into collision with the Dutch.

<sup>2</sup> At this time the population of New Amsterdam was about fifteen hundred, and of New Netherland about seven thousand.

rule of Andros.<sup>1</sup> The later English governors were so exasperating and tyrannical, that a people's party arose in the colony. When, in 1689, news came that James II. had been driven from the throne, the people of New York, like their New England neighbors, put aside the king's government and established one of their own. Their party was headed by

Leisler leads an uprising of the people against Andros.

#### LEISLER'S HOUSE.

Jacob Leisler, an energetic tradesman without education or political experience. He made many mistakes and aroused the opposition of his own party, but he managed to hold office for three years. The people finally appealed to the king (William III.), who sent over in 1691 a new governor. Leisler was tried for treason and hanged. With the new governor, the assembly was restored, and from this time the colony was governed in a constitutional way.

<sup>1</sup> Andros, while governor of New England, New York, and New Jersey (1686-1689), remained in New England. Nicholson represented him in New York as lieutenant-governor.

**60. The Quakers in England.**—The direct cause for the settlement of Pennsylvania was the bitter persecution of the Quakers in England.<sup>1</sup> They had no respect for forms and ceremonies; they were extreme dissenters from the Established Church, and did not believe in paying taxes for its support; they would use no titles of honor to any man, not even the king; they counted it a sin to take oath even in a court of justice, or to pay taxes for war.

**61. William Penn and the Quakers Settle Pennsylvania (1681).**—William Penn was the most illustrious convert of the Quakers in the seventeenth century. He was a young man of wealth, education, culture, and political promise. His father, Admiral Penn, had been active in bringing about the restoration of the Stuarts, and was therefore held in high esteem by King Charles II. and his court. Penn early cherished an idea of founding a settlement for the Quakers in America. He had taken a leading interest in a colony in West Jersey, where many Quakers had found a refuge.<sup>2</sup> The colony was not altogether satisfactory, and he was led to obtain a grant of land from the king, in payment of a claim of \$80,000 which he had inherited from his father.

WILLIAM PENN.

The king, always short of money, was glad to discharge his debt in this way. He granted Penn a large tract of land west of the Delaware River (1681), and named it Pennsylvania in honor of his friend, the admiral. Penn was made proprietor of the new colony, and by the terms of

<sup>1</sup> At one time there were 4,000 Quakers in English prisons.

<sup>2</sup> Some of the New England Quakers came here and many came from England.

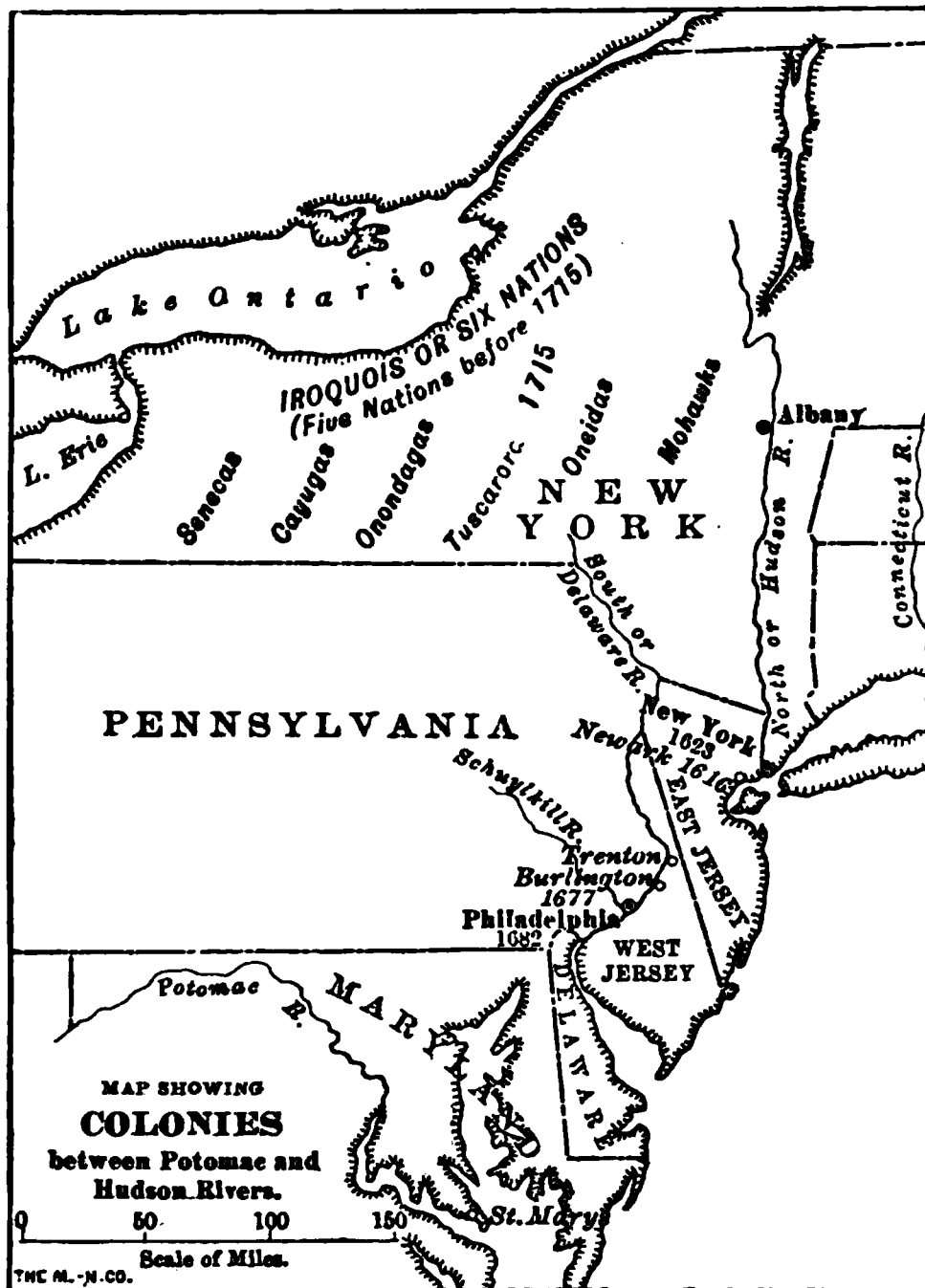


the charter, which was drawn by his own hand, the proprietor, with the consent of the freemen, was to make all necessary laws. Having obtained the charter, Penn offered land on liberal terms, and promised the settlers a popular government, with justice to all regardless of religious belief. The people of his faith throughout England responded with such

**Penn becomes proprietor of Pennsylvania.**

enthusiasm that he sent out a large colony.

**62. The Quakers Live in Peace with the Indians.**—William Penn came to America in 1682, and in the following year he laid out the city of Philadelphia on a tract of land lying between the Delaware and Schuylkill Rivers. Under the spreading branches of an elm-tree<sup>1</sup> he made a treaty<sup>2</sup> of peace with the Indians. By this treaty he paid them fairly for the land and made them presents.



So honest were the Quaker colonists of Pennsylvania in

<sup>1</sup> This tree was blown down in 1810. A monument marks the spot where it stood.

<sup>2</sup> Penn said to the Indians: "The friendship between you and me I will not compare to a chain, for that might rust, or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts. We are all one flesh and blood." When the Indians handed to Penn the wampum belt of peace, they said: "We will live in love and peace with William Penn as long as the sun and the moon shall endure."

PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.



all their dealings with the natives that for a long time the highest compliment an Indian could pay a white man was to liken him to Penn. They kept their treaty with him for sixty years.

**63. Penn's Liberal Government.**—The government was very liberal. The proprietor named the governor, but the people chose the members of the council and the assembly. Every tax-payer and freeholder was to have the right to vote. The first laws reflect the benevolence of Penn and his people. These laws provided that the Indians should be treated kindly; that each child should be taught a trade; that criminals in prison should be kept busy with some kind of work; and that all public officers should be professing Christians.

**64. Growth of Pennsylvania.**—In spite of internal feuds, some slight and others serious, the colony continued to prosper. The climate was good, the soil was fertile, and rivers offered easy communication. These natural advantages, together with the liberal spirit, the good laws, and the peaceful relations with the Indians, caused the settlement to grow rapidly.<sup>1</sup> Colonists were not afraid to come where others had opened the way. Besides English and Swedes, there were many from Wales, Holland, and Germany. Industries were built up, and wealth increased with population. Thus Penn's "Holy Experiment" proved to be successful, and Pennsylvania took her place among the foremost of the original colonies.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In three years Philadelphia had gained more in population than New York had in a half century. Toward the close of the century Philadelphia was a "noble and beautiful" city, as a history of that time describes it, containing two thousand houses, most of them "stately," built of brick.

<sup>2</sup> Although Penn's colony prospered, it caused him much anxiety and the loss of a large fortune.

## TO THE PUPIL

1. Describe Hudson's attempt to find the Northwest passage to India. What advantage did he gain for the Dutch by winning the goodwill of the Iroquois Indians? How did Champlain make these same Indians deadly enemies of the French? In what way did the friendship of these Indians to the Dutch aid the English later? Note the importance of the fur trade.
2. Bear in mind the mixed population in New York and in Pennsylvania, for you can use this knowledge to a good purpose when you study the Revolution.
3. Why did England wish to secure New Netherland? What does the series of years, 1609-1664, cover in the history of New Netherland? Why did Dutch colonization fail?
4. What was the condition of New York under the English governors? What led to a popular uprising under the leadership of Leisler?
5. Find interesting facts about the following: The Quakers, William Penn, his charter, his liberal ideas of government in the new colony, and his relations with the Indians. Write five minutes on one of these.
6. You began with 1492: you have now reached 1689, about two centuries later. Learn these dates thoroughly: 1492, 1588, 1689. 1492-1897: observe that 1689 is almost half-way between the two. How many of the thirteen original colonies had been settled before 1689? Make out a chart with the following facts in separate columns: Name of colony, when settled, where settled, by whom settled.
7. You have seen how the Spanish, the English, and the Dutch tried to establish colonies. In the "Notes" you will find an account of similar attempts made by the Swedes.
8. It would be a good plan for you to make out a chronological chart, beginning with 1492 and ending with 1689, including dates of principal events in three parallel lines, one for the Spanish, one for the English, and one for the Dutch.

## NOTES

*New Jersey* (1618).—As New Jersey was at first included in New Netherland, the Dutch erected, as early as 1618, a small fort at Bergen, on the west bank of the Hudson River. When, in 1664, New Netherland passed into the hands of the English, the Duke of York sold the land between the Hudson River and the Delaware to his friends, Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. He named the province New Jersey, after the island of Jersey, which Carteret had bravely defended for the king's father,

Charles I., during the Civil War in England. The first permanent English settlement was made at Elizabethtown in 1665. As the people were allowed freedom of worship and a part in making the laws, a good class of settlers was attracted to New Jersey. The Indians were so kindly treated that they gave no trouble.

In 1674, the province was divided into East and West Jersey, for many years known as "The Jerseys." By 1682 both the Jerseys had been sold to a number of Quakers, among whom was William Penn. There were now so many proprietors that much confusion over land titles resulted. The proprietors therefore sold in 1702 all their claims to the English Crown. From that time the Jerseys were known as New Jersey and were united to New York. New Jersey and New York now had the same governor, but each province had its own assembly. In 1738, New Jersey was made a royal province, which it continued to be until the Revolution. Benjamin Franklin's son was the last royal governor.

*Delaware* (1638).—In 1638, a number of Swedes and Finlanders landed near the present site of Wilmington, Delaware, and built a fort which they called Christina, in honor of their queen. Later, the Swedes made settlements along the Delaware River as far as the site of Philadelphia. Their colony they called New Sweden. But the Dutch claimed all this region as a part of New Netherland, and in 1655 they sailed up the Delaware, captured all the Swedish forts, and made New Sweden a part of New Netherland.

When, in 1664, the English took New Netherland from the Dutch, Delaware became an English possession. In 1682, William Penn, wishing to secure a free outlet to the ocean, bought from the Duke of York this territory, then known as the "three lower counties on the Delaware." Delaware then became a part of Pennsylvania. In 1703 the people of Delaware were allowed a separate assembly; but they had the same governor as Pennsylvania until the Revolution.

## CHAPTER VII

### LIFE AMONG THE INDIANS

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, I., II., III.; **Drake's** Making of New England; **Drake's** Making of the Great West; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History, I.; **Richardson's** History of Our Country.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Catlin's** North American Indians; **Chapin's** Land of the Cliff Dwellers; **Fiske's** Discovery of America; **Ellis's** Red Man and White Man; **Drake's** Indian History for Young Folks; **Parkman's** Conspiracy of Pontiac.

POETRY: **Longfellow's** Hiawatha.

**65. The People Columbus Found in America.**—When Columbus came to America he found a people very different from the Spaniards or other Europeans. As he believed he had reached the Indies he called these people Indians. They were alike in having high cheek-bones, black eyes, coarse black hair, and beardless faces. But with respect to their size, dress, houses, and manner of life there was as much difference as there was among people living in various countries of Europe.

**66. Division into Families of the Indians East of the Mississippi.**—The Indians whom the French and English found living East of the Mississippi were divided into three great families. First, there were the Southern or Maskoki Indians, who were spread over the country extending from the Tennessee River to the Gulf of Mexico and from the Mississippi to the Atlantic. The most important tribes were the Chickasaws, Choctaws, Cherokees, Creeks, and Seminoles. Secondly, there were the Iroquois Indians,

who included the Five Nations<sup>1</sup> in Central New York, the Tuscaroras in North Carolina, the Hurons north of Lake Erie, and the Eries south of it. Thirdly, all the other tribes spreading northward from the Tennessee and eastward from the Mississippi were Algonquins.

**67. Character.**—The Indian was a true child of the forest. He had a wild love of liberty, which refused control by any will except his own. He was cruel to his enemy and often tortured him, or burned him alive. But the Indian was generous and kind. In the midst of famine he would cheerfully share the last morsel with a fel-

AN INDIAN CHIEF: "RAIN-IN-THE-FACE."

*Copyrighted by D. F. Barry.*

low-sufferer, and in the hour of danger would lay down his life for a friend.

<sup>1</sup>The Five Nations included the Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, and Senecas, who formed a loose confederacy. The Five Nations were very powerful Indians till their defeat by Frontenac in 1697. They firmly controlled the Mohawk River valley and prevented the French from using the best natural highways from Lake Erie to the Ohio. Their population at the time of their greatest strength was under 20,000. After the Tuscaroras from North Carolina joined them in 1715 they were known as the Six Nations.

A SOUTHERN INDIAN SHOOTING AN ARROW.



**68. Occupations.**—The squaw did nearly all the work. She dug the soil with shells and pointed sticks, gathered



INDIAN WHIP (QUIRT), WAR-CLUB,  
AND HUNTING-ARROW.

the crops, dressed skins, dried meat, and made moccasins and various articles of clothing out of the skins of animals. The Indian was first of all a warrior. His weapons were the war-club, the bow and arrow, and the tomahawk. A sharpened stone served for the blade of his tomahawk, and bone or flint pointed his arrows. He was also fond of hunting and fishing and, to assist him in these occupations, he made the canoe and the snowshoe.

**69. The Canoe and the Snowshoe.**—In the fishing season he sought the side of lake or stream, and he was always eager to go where game was thickest and where the scalps of his enemies could be taken in greatest numbers. The canoe was therefore a necessity. Before the whites came it was to him horse, steamboat, and railroad, all in one. In travelling on land he followed the trail of the deer or the buffalo. But water-ways were so much easier that he travelled ten miles on water to one on land. Between the water-ways there were "carrying places," or portages,

over which he had to carry the canoe and all its load of fur and other goods. In other words, sometimes the canoe carried its owner and sometimes the owner carried his canoe. It was therefore necessary that it should be both light and strong. Such was the birch-bark canoe, which

INDIANS CARRYING CANOES OVER A  
PORTAGE.

70. **Wampum.** — Wampum consisted of small shells, or beads made from

shells, perforated and strung together, and often wrought into belts. The Indians used wampum for personal adornment and also for more serious purposes, such as summoning the tribes to war, and recording treaties, laws, and speeches. Ten thousand beads have been known to be worked into a single war-belt four inches wide. The col-

ors and the patterns of the belt varied with its purpose, peculiar signs and figures enabling the Indian to remember certain parts of a speech or a treaty. This was necessary

#### INDIAN SNOW-SHOES AND PAPPOOSE-CASE.

because the Indian could not write. Apart from other uses it was valued also as money.

**71. Religion.**—The Indian believed that all Indians, good and bad, would after this life go to the Happy Hunting Grounds. This was his name for Heaven. Life there would be the same as life in this world, but without pain or trouble of any kind. It is thought that the practice of scalping enemies killed in battle was associated with the belief that the loss of the scalp prevented the spirit from entering the Happy Hunting Grounds. The Indian would therefore risk almost any-

thing to save the dead body of his chief or his friend from being scalped by the enemy. As in the Happy Hunting Grounds he would need arms to defend himself, these, and other things of use in this life, were buried with him for use in the other life.

**72. The Clan and the Tribe.**—According to language and locality the Indians were separated into families, such as the Mobilian, Algonquin, and Iroquois. According to government the family was separated into distinct tribes, and again, by relationship more or less remote, the tribe was separated into clans. Each clan had its name, usually that of some bird, beast, or reptile, and the picture of this animal became the peculiar emblem or “to-  
tem” of the clan. The animal represented in  
the totem of each clan was supposed to favor and protect that clan and was sometimes tattooed on the breast.

The totem.

#### WAMPUM RECEIVED BY PENN FROM THE INDIANS.

Every clan elected a sachem, or civil ruler, and at least one war-chief. The sachems exercised but little authority. They acted as advisers and, when assembled together in tribal councils, freely discussed important questions. The Indian government was therefore democratic, each warrior being to a large degree his own master.

Indian govern-  
ment democratic.

**73. Communal Living.**—The Indians knew but little of real estate. The tribes occupied the land, but did not own it in the sense in which white men own land now. They had very little personal property except such objects as weap-

ons, trinkets, and other property in architecture was adapted to their communal life. Interesting

The "Long Houses" of the Iroquois.

are to be seen in the "Long Houses" of the Iroquois. These and bark, were in some cases one hundred feet long, and as many as twenty families were accommodated in each house, which the mothers of the same clan. Whatever

clothing, and held all common. Their art was adapted to their communal life. Illustrations of this are found in the "Long Houses" of the Iroquois. These houses, made of wood and bark, in some cases one hundred feet long, and as many as twenty families were accommodated in each house, which the mothers of the same clan. Whatever

TOTEM OF THE ILLINOIS.

TOTEM OF THE HURONS.

tained by hunting, and culture of the soil in common, and they kept in a common storehouse.

74. The Mound Builders. — Many mounds have been found in Ohio and in other parts of the United States. Some of birds, fishes,

TOTEM OF THE SIOUX.

ing or the rude soil they owned all their food in a common storehouse.

Mound Builders. — Thousands of mounds have been found in other parts of the United States. Some of birds, fishes,

TOTEM OF THE FIVE NATIONS.

and reptiles; some of the square, circle, and other mathematical figures. The Big Elephant Mound, a few miles below the mouth of the Wisconsin River, is 135 feet long;

#### INDIAN MALE AND FEMALE COSTUME.

the Serpent Mound, in Ohio, is 1,000 feet long, with a gracefully curving body. These mounds have gateways, outlooks, and parallel lines, showing that they were probably used as fortifications. Of late years very careful explorers have been at work among

The mounds.

these mounds, opening many of them and taking out relics. These relics include kettles, pipes, axes, arrow-heads, tools for weaving and spinning, and other things.

Relics found in the mounds.

They have been examined with the greatest care, because they help us to understand what kind of people made and used them. At one time it was thought that the Mound Builders were a people of a very superior civil-

ization, because of the artistic skill they showed in their sculptured relics. Accordingly the Mound Builders were spoken of as a "lost race," who numbered many millions and constituted a mighty empire.

The character of the mounds and of the relics found in them leaves no doubt that they were the

Mound Builders work of various tribes, probably American Indians, differing

from each other quite as much as Indian tribes differ now. The Cherokees, who are known to have built mounds some time after the whites came to America, proba-

CARVED PIPES FROM AN INDIAN MOUND.

bly built those found in the western part of North Carolina and the eastern part of Tennessee. It seems altogether probable that the Mound Builders were nothing more than American Indians, like those found by the English and the French colonists.

**75. Number of Indians.**—There are at present about 250,000 Indians in the United States. Very likely the number is quite as large now as it was when the English and

the French began to plant settlements. It has been thought that the coming of the whites prevented the destruction of large numbers of Indians by war and famine.

**76. Influence of the Indians Upon the Whites.**—The influence of the Indians upon the whites, especially from the time of the early settlements to the Revolution, was considerable. They often saved struggling settlers from starvation by furnishing them food, and they taught the whites how to cultivate Indian corn. But, as we shall see in later chapters of this book, the principal influence of the Indians upon the whites was through the numerous Indian wars, which helped the colonists to know one another better, and taught them what they most needed to learn—the advantage of union. In fighting against a common danger the colonies were brought into closer sympathy with one another. Let us briefly refer to two of those wars, the Pequot War and King Philip's War, both of which were fought before the beginning of the Intercolonial Wars.

Indian wars  
taught the colonies the advantage of union.



## CHAPTER VIII

### EARLY INDIAN WARS

**77. The Pequot War (1637).**—The leading cause of each of the Indian wars in New England was the same—the feeling on the part of the Indians that the whites were **Leading cause of getting possession of the lands, and would early Indian wars.** in time drive the Red Men away from their hunting grounds. The Indians did not at first understand that sales of land meant their giving it up entirely. But even when they understood the nature of land sales, they thought the whites had taken advantage of them.

When the people from Massachusetts settled in Connecticut in 1636 they found themselves neighbors to a strong, ferocious tribe of Indians, called Pequots, living in the eastern part of the State. These Indians attacked the little settlement of Wethersfield, where they killed a number of persons. Captain John Mason, with ninety men from the towns of Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor, started in pursuit. The party came to anchor in Narragansett Bay about three weeks after leaving Hartford. Mason marched westward across Rhode Island, and at the end of two days halted the expedition just north of the present town of Stonington. Before daybreak next morning he and his men surprised the Indian fort, and destroyed nearly all the Indians in it, consisting of from 400 to 600 men, women, and children. The war resulted in the destruction of the Pequot tribe, and so awed the Indians in that part of the country that there was no more trouble with them for about forty years. Then came King Philip's War, which lasted two years and was much more extensive than the Pequot War.

**.78. King Philip's War (1675-1676).**—King Philip, chief of the Wampanoags, a Rhode Island tribe, was a leader of much ability. He united the New England Indians from Maine to the Hudson River in a league whose aim was to destroy all the whites in New England. The war broke out

King Philip's  
purpose.

#### ATTACK ON THE PEQUOT FORT.

fought, and finally ended with the death of King Philip, who was shot while trying to escape capture at Mount Hope (Bristol), Rhode Island, which was his home. The remnant of his tribe were either killed or sold into slavery, and the power of the New England Indians was completely broken. The war was a severe strain

Results of King  
Philip's War.

upon the New England colonists. Six hundred of them were killed and thirteen of their towns were destroyed. It cost the colonists a large sum of money and imposed heavy burdens upon them in the way of taxation.

But the Indians having the greatest influence upon colonial interests were the Iroquois. These we have already mentioned in their relation with the Dutch, and we shall now speak of their immediate influence upon French and English interests.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Why were the canoe and the snow-shoe of great value to the Indian? What was his religious belief? Tell what you can about communal living; about the Mound Builders.
2. Why did the absence of such animals as horses and oxen retard the progress of the Indians? Discuss the influence of the Indians upon the whites.
3. What were the causes and results of the Pequot War? of King Philip's War? Impersonating King Philip, write an account of the wrongs you suffered at the hands of the whites.
4. Subject for debate: Resolved that the Indians have been unjustly treated by the white people.
5. If you rightly study the facts about the Indians, you will be prepared to understand the Indian problem which the American people are now trying to solve. As in the case of all other problems of to-day, we study the past that we may learn how to interpret the present. Even the Indian question has two sides. Read the first chapter of Parkman's *Conspiracy of Pontiac*; also Longfellow's *Hiawatha*.

## CHAPTER IX

### FRENCH EXPLORATIONS

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, I. and II.; **Wright's** Children's Stories in American History; **Drake's** Making of the Great West; **Drake's** Making of New England; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History; **Richardson's** History of Our Country.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Parkman's** La Salle and the Discovery of the Great West; **Parkman's** Pioneers of France in the New World; **Winsor's** Narrative and Critical History, IV.; **Bancroft's** United States, II.; **Hinsdale's** Old Northwest; **Hildreth's** United States, II.; **Montgomery's** English History.

FICTION: **Catherwood's** Romance of Dollard; **Catherwood's** Story of Tonty.

**79. The French Discover and Explore the St. Lawrence.**—By reason of the discoveries of Verrazano (1524) France laid claim to the Atlantic coast between Cape Fear, North Carolina, and Newfoundland. Ten years later Jacques Cartier discovered the St. Lawrence and sailed up the river as far as an Indian village on the present site of Montreal. He returned in 1540 and in the name of King Francis I. took possession of Canada, as the Indians called the country. Immediately attempts were made to colonize, but they were unsuccessful. In 1603, the French again attempted settlement in the region extending from New York harbor to Cape Breton, called Acadia,<sup>1</sup> and again they failed.

But these failures only shed the greater lustre about the name of Samuel de Champlain, the "Father of New France." When he first penetrated the St. Lawrence val-

<sup>1</sup> Acadia was afterward restricted in meaning to its present boundaries.

ley he was impressed with its great beauty and its valuable resources, for it was rich in forests and furs. Next **Champlain makes the first permanent French settlement in Canada.** to the gold and silver, the fur trade furnished the best means of securing the coveted wealth which the New World offered. Champlain was a man of culture and refinement, earnest, patriotic, and religious. He wished to extend the glory of France and the Catholic Church. Moreover, he saw that the St. Lawrence valley, and not Acadia, was the promising field for France in the New World. In 1608, he made the first permanent French settlement in Canada, at Quebec. The following year he discovered the lake which bears his name.

**80. Champlain and the Iroquois.**—It was a curious coincidence that two years after the settlement of Jamestown, Hudson should have sailed up the

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.

Hudson River and Champlain should have explored Lake Champlain (1609). These two events had a large influence on American history. The Dutch on the Hudson and the Iroquois in the Mohawk River valley stood in the way of French success in America. The story containing the reasons for French failure is full of interest, and we will now begin to read it.

When Champlain settled at Quebec in 1608, he found that the neighboring tribes of Algonquin Indians were bitter enemies of the Mohawks, one of the Five Nations, or Iroquois, in New York. It was hard for him to keep out of their deadly feud, and he decided to take the side of the Algonquins because their lands were nearer to him. Ac-

**Champlain and Henry Hudson.**

cordingly, he joined them in a battle with the Mohawks near Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain, and shot some of the latter with his gun. As the Mohawks had never before heard the report of a gun they were overcome with superstitious terror and defeated. The Frenchman enabled the Algonquins to triumph over the Mohawks, but that shot was fatal to the future success of the French in America. The Iroquois were from that day the unrelenting enemies of the French colonists, and did all they could to prevent them from carrying out their plans of exploration and trade.

**Champlain makes the Iroquois enemies of the French.**

**81. The French Reach the Mississippi Valley.**—It is important to remember that this battle of Ticonderoga took place in 1609, when only a handful of Englishmen were at Jamestown. The French had control of the St. Lawrence, one of the three great water-ways to the interior of North America. If they could get control of the Mississippi valley and the Hudson-Mohawk River route, they would hold the other two, and North America would be within their grasp. The distance from the St. Lawrence to the Mississippi was not great. One route lay through Lake Ontario and Lake Erie, by portage into French Creek, through the Alleghany and Ohio Rivers into the Mississippi. Another lay through the same lakes into the Maumee and by portage into the Wabash, and through the Ohio into the Mississippi. But the ever-watchful Iroquois, whose territory stretched along the shore of Lake Erie, blocked the way, and baffled the French here. The latter were obliged to seek a route farther north, which was much longer and more difficult. Slowly and patiently they worked their way up the Ottawa River into Georgian Bay, through Lake Huron, Lake Michigan, across into the Illinois River, and from there into the Mississippi.

**The three great water-ways.**

**The Iroquois force the French to seek a long and difficult route.**

The Jesuit missionaries bore a large part in this toilsome work of exploration. These brave men were eager to Christianize the Indians. They built mission stations and in their zeal braved many dangers. Not only did they

gain converts to their faith, but with rare intelligence they made important explorations and discoveries. It was one of their number, Marquette, who succeeded in reaching the Mississippi. Attended by Joliet, he sailed, in 1673, as far down the Mississippi as the mouth of the Arkansas. This was two years before King Philip's War and three years before Bacon's Rebellion.

**82. La Salle Plants the Arms of France at the Mouth of the Mississippi.**—But the most valuable explorations

were made by the daring and tireless La Salle. He was an earnest Catholic, and was full of plans for his own success and ambitious for the success of France. In 1666, at the age of twenty-three he came out to Canada, filled with the passion of his age, the desire to discover a water route to India. Not much is known of his early explorations, but it is supposed that he discovered the Ohio River and partially explored it.

LA SALLE.

In 1679, he set out on an expedition to explore the Mississippi. By this time he had given up the idea of a water route to India. His great ambition

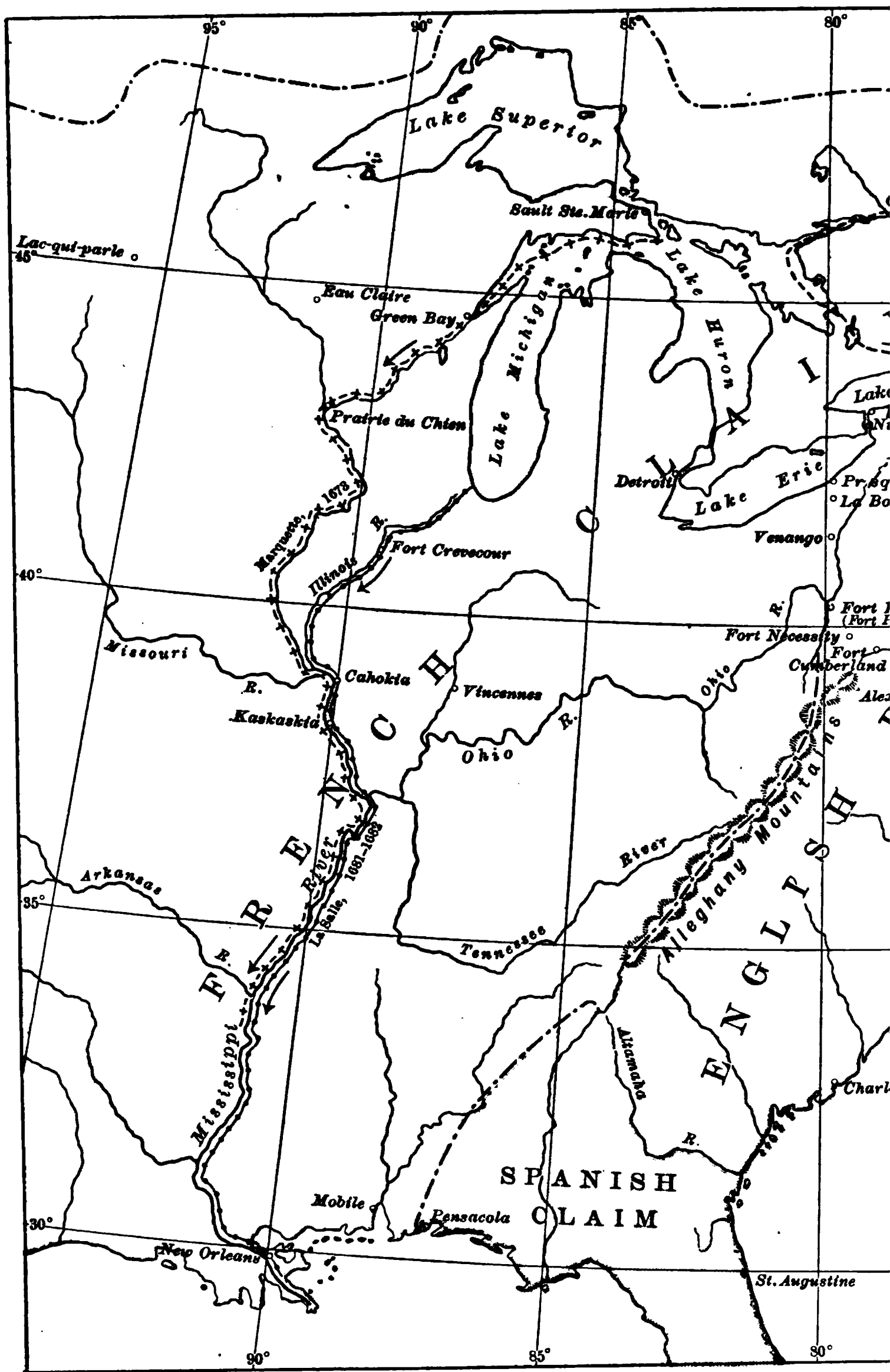
was to reach the mouth of the Mississippi and secure the valley for France. Having built the *Griffin*, a small boat, on the Niagara River, he sailed in it through Lakes Erie and Huron and landed on the shore of Lake Michigan. He then sent back his boat for supplies, but he never heard from it again. This was only one

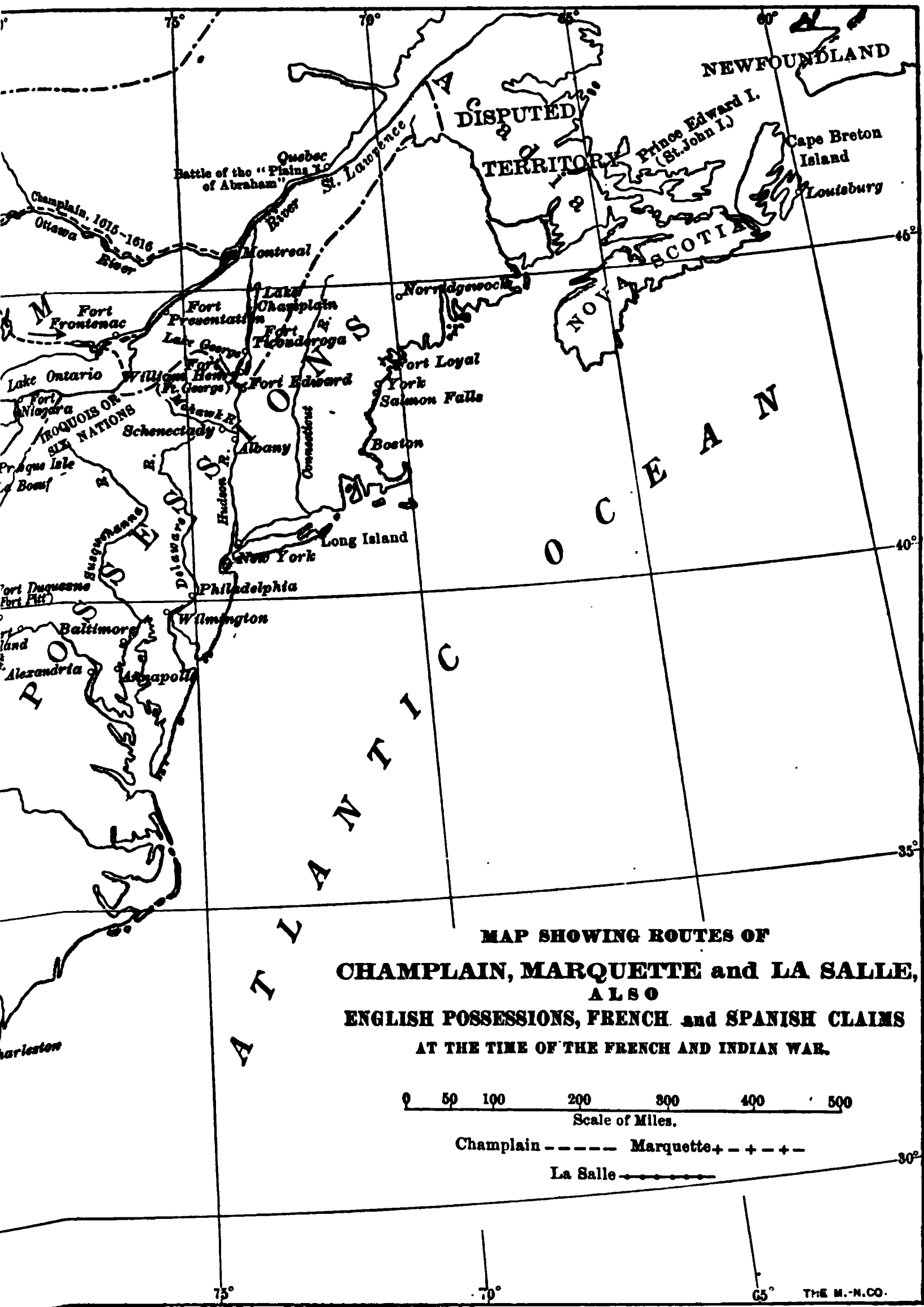
La Salle reaches the mouth of the Mississippi.

of the many trials and disappointments in his troubled life. A little later he reached the Illinois River, and, sailing about half way down, built a fort afterward fitly named Crevecoeur (Heartbreak). In 1682 he found the Mississippi and explored it to its mouth.











There, according to French custom, he planted the French arms and claimed all the country through which the river and its tributaries flowed. He called the country Louisiana in honor of the French King, Louis XIV. This was the year in which Penn was laying the foundations of Philadelphia.

**83. Attempt to Plant a Colony at the Mouth of the Mississippi.**—La Salle's aims were two-fold: (1) To establish military and trade centres at various points and (2) to plant a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi River. In this way he hoped to get control of the fur trade for France. He had built many forts. He now returned to France to get people for his colony. He succeeded in getting men for this new scheme, but in sailing for the mouth of the Mississippi he missed it and landed several hundred miles to the west, at Matagorda Bay. Trials and difficulties grew thick about him until, at the end of two years, he started overland to get assistance from Canada. While he and his wretched followers were wandering through the dense forests he was waylaid and shot dead by some of the men of his own company (1687). He had not accomplished his full purpose, but in exploring the Ohio and the Mississippi, and in building forts in the unoccupied territory, he had done a great work for his country.

La Salle's two aims.

What La Salle did.

**84. On Account of La Salle's Exploration the Mississippi Valley Becomes a Part of New France.**—The planting of French arms at the mouth of the Mississippi was a very significant event in American history. It was the declaration to the world that France laid claim to the whole Mississippi valley from the Rocky to the Alleghany Mountains. Spain had failed to follow up her discovery of the Mississippi by making the country known to the world or by colonizing it. It had been the dream of La Salle to unite this immense and valuable territory with the St. Lawrence valley, making a vast empire which would crowd out the English. The English had planted their colonies on the Atlantic sea-

La Salle's dream.

coast, and he wished to keep them shut in behind the Alleghanies forever. The Mississippi and St. Lawrence valleys would form the New France of America, with the seat of government removed to the Mississippi.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. You have been studying colonial history from the earliest settlements to 1689. Before that date, each colony largely went its own way, with but little interest in any other. After that date, the colonies were gradually drawn nearer together by the necessity of uniting for a better defence against common enemies. One of these common enemies was the French and the Indians, and another the royal and proprietary governors.
2. What was done for France by Verrazano? by Cartier? by Champlain? You cannot too carefully note the results of Champlain's mistake (1609) in making enemies of the Iroquois.
3. Trace carefully on the map the various water-ways by which the French could reach the Mississippi valley. What part did the Jesuit missionaries bear in the toilsome work of exploration?
4. Describe the work of La Salle. What were his aims? Notice what he did in 1682, only seven years before the great landmark 1689. What were the results of his work? Write an essay on his explorations.
5. Learn all you can about the Iroquois Indians, as their influence upon colonial history was remarkable. You will find a good account of them in the first chapter of Parkman's *Conspiracy of Pontiac*.

## CHAPTER X

### THE LAST FRENCH WAR

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, III.; **Wright's** Children's Stories of American History; **Sloane's** French War and the Revolution; **Cooke's** Stories of the Old Dominion; **Coffin's** Old Times in the Colonies; **Fiske's** War of Independence; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Hart's** Formation of the Union.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Winsor's** Narrative and Critical History, V. and VI.; **Parkman's** Montcalm and Wolfe; **Parkman's** Conspiracy of Pontiac; **Parkman's** Old Régime in Canada; **Bancroft's** United States, II.; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History, I.; **Hinsdale's** Old Northwest; **Frothingham's** Rise of the Republic; **Rossiter Johnson's** Old French War; **Scudder's** George Washington; **Franklin's** Autobiography.

FICTION: **Cooper's** Last of the Mohicans; **Thackeray's** Virginians; **Henty's** With Wolfe in Canada; **Munroe's** At War with Pontiac.

POETRY: **Longfellow's** Evangeline (the Acadians).

**85. England and France Struggle for Control in America (1689-1763).**—These events in the Mississippi valley occurred just before 1689. In 1688 James **Wars between Eng-** II., the last Stuart king, was driven out of **land and France** England and found refuge in the court of **(1689-1763).** France. There France took up his cause, and England and France began a series of wars which did not end until 1763. While these wars were going on in Europe, there was fighting between the French and English colonies in America.

The Iroquois stood in the way of French success, for the French sought the fur trade, and the Iroquois largely controlled it in the region of the Great Lakes. **The Iroquois and the fur trade.** But since the day that Champlain had joined the Algonquins and helped them defeat the Iroquois, the French had been persistently hindered and harassed by

these powerful tribes in the Mohawk valley. It will be remembered that the English, when they conquered New Netherland, inherited from the Dutch the good-will and friendly alliance of these Indians.

Both the French and the English encouraged their Indian allies to make attacks upon frontier settlements during the years that France and England were at war. The various wars in the colonies were called **The Intercolonial Wars.** colonial Wars.<sup>1</sup> The last one is the most interesting one to us. It is known as the Last French War<sup>2</sup> in America and the Seven Years' War in Europe (1756-1763).

**86. Causes of the Last French War.**—Both England and France claimed the territory between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi. England claimed it by the discovery of the Cabots and by Indian treaty, and France by reason of exploration. France had done much more than England to make this region known, but had not occupied the country. When, therefore, the English colonies, which had been taking root on the Atlantic coast, had spread as far west as the eastern base of the Alleghanies, a struggle for possession was inevitable.

By 1750 the French had built a line of sixty forts by way of the Great Lakes, from the St. Lawrence to the

<sup>1</sup> The first three of the Intercolonial Wars, named after the English sovereign reigning at the time, were as follows: King William's War (1689-1697), Queen Anne's War (1702-1713), and King George's War (1744-1748). During the last one the New England colonists, led by Colonel Pepperrell, captured Louisburg, a great fortress on Cape Breton Island. The French had thought that this stronghold could withstand any attack, and were therefore amazed at the success of the New England farmers and fishermen. At the end of the war, however, England gave up Louisburg to France.

<sup>2</sup> To develop union among the English colonies, there were needed such common interests as the Intercolonial Wars furnished. Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New York united in King William's War; South Carolina, New England, New York, and New Jersey organized separate expeditions against the French and Indians in Queen Anne's War; the northern colonies engaged in King George's War; and in the Last French War all the colonies stood side by side in a solid array against the French and Indians. This war was national, and led the provincial to begin to think of himself as an American.

mouth of the Mississippi. Great skill was shown in locating these forts at points of military importance. In many cases they afterward became great business and trade centres. Detroit, Chicago, Nat-  
French forts and colonies.  
chez, and St. Louis mark the sites of some of these forts. The French had planted colonies also at Mobile and New Orleans early in the eighteenth century. Thus far they had outgeneraled the English in establishing a claim to such a vast extent of territory, for the English colonists had

## QUEBEC IN 1730.

been so busy with their own affairs that they had thought very little of the land lying west of the mountains. But at last they had waked up and were ready to make a stubborn fight if necessary.

French and English traders had come into collision in the disputed territory, and both the French and the English appreciated the need of immediate action. About the same time that the French governor was once more trying to make friends with the Iroquois<sup>1</sup> Indians, and urging the home government to send colonists to the Ohio valley, the

<sup>1</sup> The Iroquois were the great barrier between the French and the disputed territory. During this war the Iroquois were neutral.



Ohio Company was formed by some gentlemen in Virginia. This company received from the king, on condition of settlement, a grant of 600,000 acres of land between the Great Kanawha and Monongahela Rivers. Lawrence Washington had a large interest in the Ohio Company, and his younger brother George was employed as surveyor. The Ohio Company at once began to send explorers into the disputed region, and at the same time the French were taking formal possession by sinking lead plates with inscriptions at the mouths of the streams.

To get ahead of the English the French built a line of forts on the direct route to the Ohio.<sup>1</sup> Governor Dinwiddie sent George Washington, then adjutant-general of the Virginia militia, to inform the French commander<sup>2</sup> that he was building on English territory, and would do well to depart peaceably. Washington, at this time, was twenty-one years old and over six feet tall. Cool-headed and fearless, with seven companions, all on pack-horses, he started from Williamsburg, Va., on his perilous journey late in October, 1753. About the middle of January, 1754, he returned with the refusal of the French commander to withdraw.

As the juncture of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers was the "Gateway of the West," a fort here would control the entrance to the Ohio valley. Both nations had their eyes upon this important site. The English reached it first, but were driven off by a larger force of French, who

<sup>1</sup> These forts included Presque Isle, Le Bœuf, and Venango on the Alleghany.

<sup>2</sup> To reach Fort Le Bœuf, situated only fifteen miles from Lake Erie, Washington had to travel five hundred miles through the wilderness. By the time he was ready to start back from Fort Venango, it was Christmas. The pack-horses were so weak that Washington and a single companion pressed forward on foot. They had many narrow escapes from death. A treacherous Indian guide, who was not three rods in advance, turned suddenly and shot at Washington, but missed him. Washington took the Indian's gun away and let him go. On reaching the Alleghany River, Washington and his companion found it full of floating ice. With nothing but a hatchet, they made a raft and began crossing the river. Shortly afterward Washington was struck by a piece of floating ice and knocked into the water. Darkness falling upon them before they could reach the opposite side of the river, they spent the night on an island, where they nearly froze to death.

put up a fort and called it Fort Du Quesne. Washington, who was on his way from Virginia to occupy the new fort, was met by the unsuccessful party of English. He pushed

#### WASHINGTON'S JOURNEY TO THE FRENCH FORTS.

on to Great Meadows (Pennsylvania), and there learned that the French were marching toward him. Advancing with the aid of an Indian guide and forty men, he met a French party in a dark glen near by, and exchanged shots with it. The French leader and most of his men were killed. This encounter began the war. Washington returned to Great Meadows

The fighting begins at Great Meadows.

and threw up intrenchments which he called Fort Necessity. Here he was defeated by the French and obliged to retire (July, 1754). This handful of men with their youthful leader had fired the shot which set in motion European armies. The war which followed was but little less important in its issues than the Revolution. Let us now follow it in some of its most important engagements.

**87. Plan of the War.**—The English plan in 1755, and the general plan for the war, was four-fold. An expedition was to be sent against Acadia; a second against Crown Point, a French fort on Lake Champlain, which controlled the route to Canada from the south; a third was to move through the Mohawk valley and capture Fort Niagara, the key to the Great Lakes; and a fourth, the most important, under the leadership of General Braddock, had for its object the capture of Fort Du Quesne, the "Gateway of the West."

**88. Braddock's Defeat (1755).**—In 1755, General Braddock was sent over to take command of the English forces in America. He was a brave soldier with much experience, but he knew nothing of fighting the Indians in woodland warfare. Self-confident and headstrong, he was quite unwilling to take advice from Washington or Franklin,<sup>1</sup> who both warned him against Indian ambuscades. He trusted all things to his English regulars. The colonial troops were to his mind very inferior, the colonial officers inexperienced, and he regarded them with contempt. With 2,000 men Braddock started from Alexandria, Virginia, toward Fort Du Quesne.<sup>2</sup> His purpose was to capture this fort and then to march

<sup>1</sup> Benjamin Franklin was at this time forty-nine years old. He had been for many years a member of the Pennsylvania Assembly and was now Postmaster-general for America.

<sup>2</sup> Braddock was in great need of horses and wagons, which for a long time he was not able to secure. At Frederick, Maryland, he was met by Benjamin Franklin, who used his powerful influence to procure from Pennsylvania farmers one hundred and fifty wagons, six hundred draft-horses, and fifteen hundred pack-horses. Franklin promised to see that the farmers were paid for their horses and wagons, and he kept his word.

north along the Alleghany River, capture the line of forts upon its banks, and join the other forces at Niagara. In marching his troops, he insisted upon the same order and precision as in the open fields of Europe, and would listen to no suggestions of avoiding risks from ambush. Finally, when within eight miles of the fort, the fears of the despised American militia were realized. Braddock's army marched into an ambush. The attack came from an unseen foe, who shot down by scores the surprised English soldiers. The regulars tried to fight in ranks, but in doing so were the more easily struck down by the Indians firing from behind trees. Braddock made a brave effort to bear up against the foe. Four horses were killed under him, and he was on the fifth when he received a mortal wound. Washington, one of Braddock's staff, had three horses shot under him, and four bullets passed through his clothes.

**The ambush and the battle.**

Finally, after suffering severely, the regulars fled in shameful rout. The brave Virginians, led by Washington, fought behind trees, in true Indian fashion, and saved the army from utter ruin. Out of Braddock's army of 2,000, 700 men and three-fourths of the officers were killed. Such was the dismal failure of Braddock's expedition. The miserable remnant of his army retreated, and the Indians laid waste the settlements in western Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania.

**Dismal failure of Braddock's expedition.**

**89. Removal of the Acadians (1755).—**During the same summer that Braddock was defeated, the people of Acadia were removed from their homes. Acadia was included in what is now Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. It was settled by the French early in the seventeenth century, and about one hundred years later (1710) was captured by the English. For forty-five years it had been under English rule. But the simple-minded, ignorant peasantry continued to speak the French language and to take sides with the French in every struggle with the English. In this way they did much in-

**The Acadians take sides with the French.**

jury to the English cause. Accordingly, in 1755, some troops from New England landed in Acadia and told the inhabitants they must promise to support the English king or they would be sent out of the country. More than 5,000

**Their removal  
necessary.**

of them refused, and they were torn from their homes and scattered among the colonies from Massachusetts to Georgia. A large number of them found their way to Louisiana, where many of their descendants

may be found to-day. This removal caused much hardship, but it seemed to be a military necessity.

**90. Montcalm and French Successes.**—There had been fighting in the colonies for about two years before war was declared between England and France in 1756. The first two years of fighting in the colonies found the French successful almost everywhere.

WILLIAM PITT.

The English government sent to America very weak and inefficient generals. These men, like Braddock, were unwilling to take any ad-

**Weak English  
generals.**

vice from colonial officers and looked down upon colonial troops. Moreover, they so managed the various armies that there was not united and harmonious action. The French, on the contrary, were ably handled by Montcalm, who so massed his forces at important points that, during these two years, he kept the English out of the disputed territory, and hemmed them

in behind the Alleghanies. At the close of 1757 the outlook for England was gloomy.

**91. William Pitt and English Successes.**—At this critical time William Pitt became the head of affairs in England. Clear-headed and great-hearted, he was a true hero. He loved England as fondly as his own life, and was willing to rise or fall with her. He said, "I can save England," and he did save England. His faith in himself and his country filled the people with hope and confidence. He appointed strong and able officers for the troops in America. He put the colonial officers and troops on an equal footing with the English, and pushed forward the various armies in energetic, united action. The spirit of Pitt was everywhere. In quick succession Louisburg, Fort Frontenac, Fort Du Quesne, Fort Niagara, and other French strongholds fell into the hands of the English.

**92. Wolfe and the Capture of Quebec (September 18, 1759).**—Pitt showed great wisdom in appointing General Wolfe to take command of an expedition against Quebec, the most important place now remaining in possession of the French.<sup>1</sup> General Wolfe, then in his thirty-third year, had a feeble body but a fearless soul. As brigadier-general at Louisburg he had gained high praise for energy and boldness. Pitt believed in this brave young general, and therefore placed him at the head of an army of 10,000 men for the capture of Quebec. The men so idolized Wolfe that they would gladly follow him to victory or death.

General Wolfe.

Quebec was situated on steep and lofty cliffs overlooking the St. Lawrence, and was protected by a strong fortress. This fortress was the strongest in America, and the key to Canada. Wolfe and his army tried in vain for three months to find a weak spot where they might make a successful attack, but failure met them on every hand. The English troops were discouraged, and even the brave Wolfe began to lose hope, but in spite

Quebec.

<sup>1</sup> Crown Point and Ticonderoga were captured by the English under Amherst in the summer of 1759 (the last of July).

of sickness and intense bodily suffering he resolved to make one more attempt to take Quebec.

At last his searching eyes caught sight of a pathway up the rugged sides of the cliffs along the river bank, some

#### GENERAL WOLFE.

distance above the city. Here was an opportunity not to be neglected. One dark night Wolfe's army floated quietly down the river in boats, and landed at the foot of the rocky heights. The brave soldiers, with immense difficulty, pulled themselves and their cannon up the steep ascent. Reaching the top, they quickly over-





powered the guard, which was too much astonished to make resistance. In the morning, Wolfe's men were drawn up in line of battle on the Plains of Abraham, less than a mile from the walls of Quebec. Montcalm, astonished at what the English had done, would not wait for an attack, but at once led his army out on the open plain. The fighting was terrible, and the French could not stand up against the withering fire of the English. Wolfe led in a furious charge and, although twice pierced with bullets, refused to give

up until he received a mortal wound. It was hard for him to

**Wolfe's victory and death.** die as long as the issue was in doubt,

but when, in his last moments, he heard the shout of victory, he said, "Now, God be praised. I will die in peace." Montcalm was also mortally wounded, and in the hour of death was equally heroic. When told that he could not live more than ten or twelve hours, he exclaimed, "Thank God, I shall not live to see Quebec surrendered." A few days

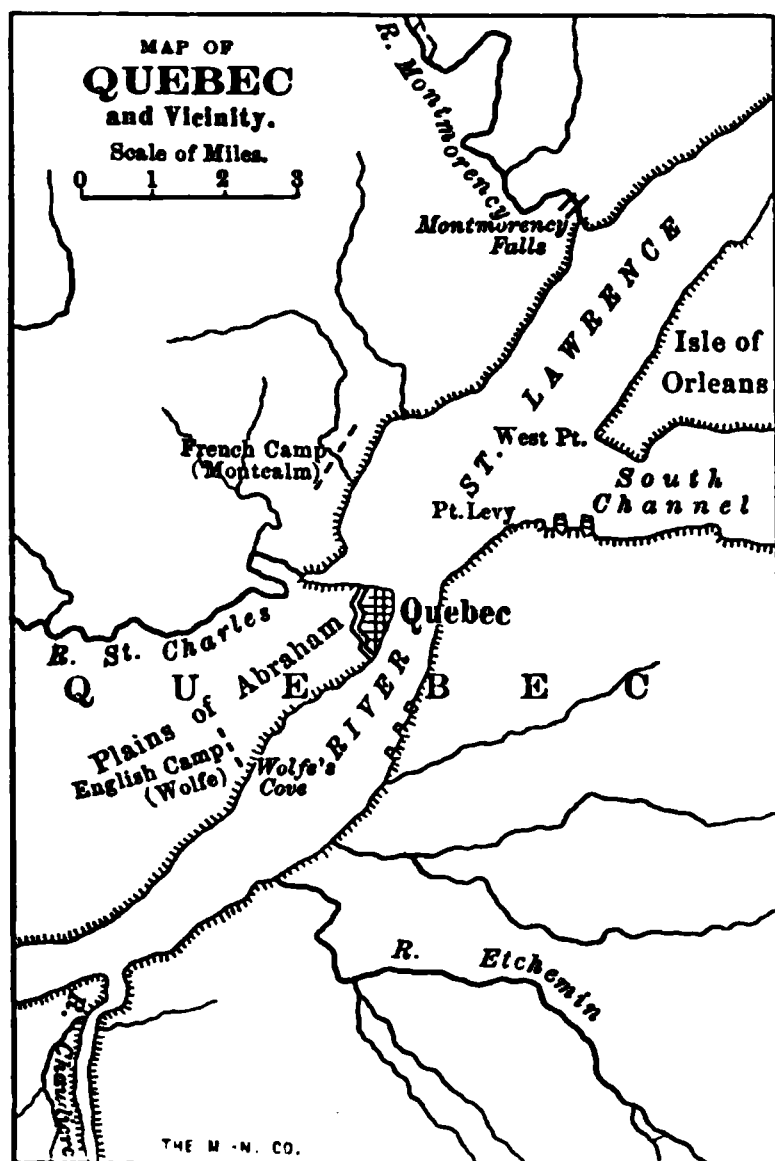
**MONTCALM.**

later Quebec passed from French into English hands (September 18, 1759).

**93. The Treaty of Peace (1763).**—With the fall of Quebec the last stronghold of the French in America passed into the hands of the English. The following year Montreal surrendered, and the colony of New France ceased to exist. Although the war was over in America, it still continued for three years in Europe, and Spain joined France against England. It was finally closed by the treaty of Paris, signed in 1763. By this treaty France ceded to Spain all the territory lying between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains; also the town of New Orleans, which controlled the navigation of the Mississippi. To England she gave Canada and all her territory east of

the Mississippi.<sup>1</sup> Spain gave Florida to England in exchange for Havana, which the English had captured during the war. The English had driven out of North America successively the Dutch (1664) and the French (1763). England and Spain alone remained. Thenceforward these two had control in North America.

**94. Other Results of the War.**—But there were other far-reaching results of the Last French War which largely affected the future of the English colonies: (1) Up to this



time there had been little of common interest among them. But all were engaged in this struggle, and they fought side by side. Thus the war taught them to know and respect each other, gave them a mutual interest, and prepared them for union. (2) They were made to realize their own strength and to see that their military ability was quite equal to that of the English soldiers. (3) The war was a preparatory school for the Revolution. Such officers as Marion, Stark, Putnam, and Washington received a military training of great value.

(4) Although in fighting the French in America, England felt that she had been protecting the colonies, the colonies felt that they had been helping England in establishing English against French authority. This attitude explains their growing sense of power and independence which led, after the removal of the French, to their resistance against British interference and their final separation from the British crown.

<sup>1</sup> France retained for fishing stations two small islands, St. Pierre and Miquelon, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

## NOTE

*The Conspiracy of Pontiac.*—When, at the close of the Last French War, England tried to take possession of the territory west of the Alleghanies and north of the Ohio, trouble with the Indians in that region at once arose. The French, embittered by their loss of this territory, stirred up the Indians against the English, and the conspiracy of Pontiac was the outcome. This able and daring chief of the Ottawas organized a widespread movement for the purpose of destroying all the English settlers west of the Alleghanies. Having won over to his scheme many tribes, he succeeded in capturing eight out of twelve forts, whose garrisons he put to death. This fierce and bloody war lasted two years and ended in the complete failure of Pontiac.

## TO THE PUPIL

1. What was the leading cause of the Last French War? What did the Ohio Company set out to do? What journey did Washington make and with what results? Write an account of this journey.
2. How did the war begin? In outlining the plan of the war use the map freely.
3. What do you think of Braddock and of the causes of his defeat? Was the removal of the Acadians just? Give reasons for your answer.
4. Account for French successes in the earlier years of the war. What had William Pitt to do with English successes later?
5. What do you admire in the character of General Wolfe? For many interesting facts about the personality of this heroic man, see Parkman's *Montcalm and Wolfe*.
6. Imagine yourself to have been one of Wolfe's soldiers and write an account in the first person of scaling the Heights of Abraham and of the battle on the following day.
7. What were the results of the war? Make two brief outlines, one containing the advantages the French had in America and the other containing the advantages the English had.
8. Subject for debate: Resolved that the French had a just claim to the Ohio valley.
9. Subject for essay: Cooper's *Last of the Mohicans*.
10. To aid you in an intelligent review from the beginning of the book, you can supplement the chronological chart suggested at the end of Chapter VI. by adding a fourth parallel line for the principal events connected with French exploration and colonization. Such a review will help you to understand clearly the nature of the struggle, mainly on the part of four European countries, to get control of North America. By 1763 England had come out ahead in this struggle.
11. As you may know, Francis Parkman is the standard historian on the relations between the English and the French colonies in America. Read his *Montcalm and Wolfe* and Longfellow's *Evangeline*.

## CHAPTER XI

### LIFE IN THE COLONIES AT THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS

REFERENCES: **Drake's** Making of New England; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Barnes's** Popular History of the United States; **Sanford's** History of Connecticut; **Thwaites's** Colonies; **Scudder's** Men and Manners in America One Hundred Years Ago; **Eggleston's** Household History.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Earle's** Customs and Fashions in Old New England; **Earle's** Sabbath in Puritan New England; **Earle's** Costume of Colonial Times; **Weeden's** Economic and Social History of New England; **Earle's** Margaret Winthrop; **Irving's** Knickerbocker's History of New York; **Irving's** Sketch Book.

95. **The Colonies in General.** — At the close of the French and Indian Wars, in 1763, the colonies mainly occupied a strip of land lying along the Atlantic coast and stretching all the way from Maine to Florida. There were thirteen of these original colonies, which, by reason of difference in soil, climate, and other natural as well as social and economic conditions, may be divided into three groups: the New England group, or New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut; the Middle group, or New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware; and the Southern group, or Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. The population was about two million souls,<sup>1</sup> one-fourth of whom were slaves. The people lived mainly along the sea-coast and large rivers, although a few settlements stretched back into the forests. As many of the people were engaged in farming there were

**The three groups of colonies.**  
**Population and large towns.**

<sup>1</sup> The population of New York City in 1890 was 1,515,301; in 1897, Greater New York had a population of about 3,200,000.

few large towns. Philadelphia, with a population of about 25,000, was the largest town; Boston was not far behind; and New York contained 10,000 or 12,000 people.

Money being scarce, trade was mainly by barter. There was much comfort and prosperity and some wealth, but there was great need of labor to develop the resources of the West, which was now under the control of the English and open to settlement.

#### THE NEW ENGLAND GROUP OF COLONIES

**96. Occupations of the People.**—By reason of the poor, rocky soil of New England, agriculture yielded a meagre return for a great deal of hard labor. Farming on a small scale was extensive, but much more important sources of wealth were the cod and whale fisheries. By 1763 New England had built up a flourishing trade with the West India Islands. Cargoes of dried fish from New England were exchanged in these islands for sugar, molasses, and slaves. Large forests furnished excellent material for shipbuilding. Boston alone had six hundred vessels engaged in foreign commerce and a thousand in the fisheries and trade along the coast. All this fishing and trading developed a hardy and expert class of sailors, which later furnished excellent material for our navy.

**97. Religion and Church Worship.**—Religion came first with the Puritan. The minister was usually the leading man in the community, and he did much to form public opinion in political as well as religious matters.

The churches were plain within and without. They were not heated, even in the coldest weather. But for all this, everybody was expected to attend, absence without good excuse being punishable by a fine. The minister sometimes preached in overcoat and mittens. Women carried heated stones in their muffs, and, later, handstoves took the place of the stones. When going to church the men sometimes carried their muskets and left sentinels outside to watch against sudden attack from the

The fisheries and the trade with the West India Islands.

Church attendance.



Indians. People were carefully seated according to their social position, the men sitting on one side of the church and the women on the other. As the minister often preached two or three hours, the congregation at times naturally grew tired and sleepy. But the tithing man was always present with his long rod of authority. This rod had a piece of brass on one end and a hare's foot on the other. If a woman went to sleep she was gently touched with the hare's foot, but if an unfortunate boy

PURITANS GOING TO CHURCH.

nodded or otherwise failed in reverent attention, he was less gently rapped on the head with the hard end of the rod.

**98. The Salem Witchcraft (1692).**—It has often been said that the gloomy religious life of the Puritans led to that strange delusion known as the Salem Witchcraft. As a matter of fact, the belief in witchcraft in 1692 was not confined to the Puritans, for such a belief was almost universal. The witchcraft craze in Massachusetts started in Salem Village (now Danvers) a short distance from Salem. A half dozen girls and young women, from ten to twenty years old, became almost insane over the subject of witchcraft. They mewed like cats, barked like dogs, and went

into fits, declaring that certain persons, in league with the devil, bit them, pinched them, or in some way tortured them. On the testimony of these silly girls hundreds of innocent people were thrown into prison on the charge of witchcraft. Before the frenzy had spent itself, nineteen people were hanged, including a clergyman, and one old man eighty years of age was pressed to death with heavy weights. But when, after six months, some of the magistrates and even the governor's wife, were accused, the people realized their folly and stopped punishing for witchcraft.

**99. Education.**—Education stood next to religion, and, from the Puritan stand-point, was almost a part of religion. The Puritans therefore established a system of public education soon after reaching New England. Every town was required to have a school, and before 1650 each New England colony, except Rhode Island, had passed laws enforcing some degree of education. Everywhere there was training in reading and writing. As a consequence, public education was so general that there were few people

#### THE PILLORY.

who could not read and write. As early as 1636 Harvard College was established at Cambridge, Mass., and in 1701 Yale College at New Haven, Conn.

**100. Crimes and Punishments.**—Laws were severe and few crimes were committed. Many offences were punishable by death, and all kinds of punishments were inflicted in the most public way. Stocks, pillories, ducking-stools, and whipping-posts could usually be found in every village of any size. The pillory was a wooden frame, so constructed



as to hold fast the head and hands of the offender. The  
**The stocks and** stocks held fast the offender's feet only. In  
**the pillory.** some cases he was confined in a cage and ex-  
posed to the public gaze ; in others, he was branded with  
the initial letter of

was simple.

A WANTON GOSPELLER.

Cider and

rum were favorite drinks, used often as we use tea and coffee now.

The best room and the kitchen were the principal rooms in the house. The most noticeable thing in the kitchen

**The old-time**  
**fireplace.**

was the fireplace. It would accommodate a backlog five or six feet long and two or three feet in diameter, and was large enough for roasting an en-

tire sheep. As there were no stoves all cooking was done here. By such firesides the mother and daughters would sit during the long winter evenings with their knitting, spinning, or quilting, while the father read his Bible or smoked his pipe. As the fire blazed, cider-drinking, nut-cracking, and story-telling helped to while away the evening hours.

In general, however, life was neither bright nor cheerful, as the Puritans were shy of most kinds of enjoyment. But the young people were not without simple amusements, like house-raising, dancing and corn-husking parties, and social gatherings for spinning, quilting, and apple-paring. On these occasions there was much genuine fun. Christmas was not observed because the Puritans did not like the Church of England, which made much of the observance of Christmas. Their chief holiday was Thanksgiving Day, which they celebrated, as now, in the autumn. This was made the occasion for family reunions. At the Thanksgiving dinner the table was loaded with chicken, turkey, nuts, plum-puddings, mince-pies, pumpkin-pies, and many other toothsome varieties of food. Weddings were festive occasions. The friends and neighbors were generally entertained at the bride's home, the wedding feast often lasting several days. Funerals were very expensive. Gifts, such as scarfs, gloves, and rings were generously distributed to the guests, and an elaborate feast of meats and drinks was regarded as an essential feature of the occasion.

**Amusements.**

**The Thanksgiving reunion.**

**Weddings and funerals.**

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Prepare yourself to write five minutes on any one of the following topics: Occupations of the people, church worship, education, crimes and punishments, the old-time fireplace, and amusements.
2. Imagine yourself to be a New England boy or girl in colonial days and write a story of your experiences. Such work will greatly aid you in reviving the past.
3. What do you like in the manners and customs of Early New England? Read Earle's Customs and Fashions in Old New England.

## THE SOUTHERN GROUP OF COLONIES

**102. Occupations of the People.**—In the Southern colonies, a rich soil was general, rivers made excellent highways, and the climate was well suited to agriculture. The plantations were scattered along the rivers, sometimes many miles apart, with thickly wooded stretches of land between. Each planter in Virginia had his own wharf, from which his produce was carried to England, and to which manufactured goods of every sort were brought in exchange. The planter needed but little that he did not obtain on his plantation or at his wharf. His slaves were not only cultivators of the soil, but they included skilled workmen, such as millers, tailors, carpenters, and shoemakers. Under such an independent system of life, towns were not needed, and before the Revolution there were only a few towns of any size in Virginia.

**103. Education.**—The facilities for common school education were poor. Governor Berkeley said (1670), “I thank God there are no free schools, nor printing, and I hope we shall not have them these hundred years.” The scattered condition of the population did not favor the establishment of good common schools. The rich planters had tutors at home for their children and often sent their sons to Europe to be educated, but the schools for the masses were so few that the poorer people generally grew up in ignorance. The wealthy planters could live without work and formed a leisure class. Many of them owned fine libraries.

Although Virginia had been settled as early as 1607, the most important additions were made to her population in the time of the Commonwealth (1649–1660). During this time hundreds of the king’s followers, or cavaliers, came to Virginia. These men were usually from the higher ranks of English society, and had been prominent in public life in England. Their descendants in Virginia naturally inherited their

The plantation and the planter.

Berkeley opposes free schools.

The cavaliers and political leaders in Virginia.

political tendencies and included the ancestors of George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, James Madison, James Monroe, Patrick Henry, the Lees, and the Randolphs. We need not be surprised, then, that Virginia furnished more

#### COLONIAL RELICS.

leaders in the Revolution than any other colony and afterward became the "Mother of Presidents."

**104. Life and Manners.**—The mansion of the planter, built of wood or brick, was two stories high, with a spacious veranda and a wide hallway.

*The mansion and the slave quarters.*

Close by the mansion were the slave quarters, consisting of wooden cabins surrounded by gardens and poultry yards. These negro quarters, on a large plantation, made a small village, and all about them could be seen swarms of negro children.

Planters on the large plantations

*Manner of life of the planters.*

lived in wasteful extravagance, with choice dogs, fine horses,

OLD SPINNING-WHEEL.

and a coach-and-six for great occasions. They were fond of such sports as horse-racing and fox-hunting, and were so

generous and hospitable that the doors of their mansions were always open to respectable travellers. Though, as we have seen, Thanksgiving was the feast-day of the year in New England, Christmas was celebrated in a festive manner in the South, when everything was gay and bright in the planter's house. A great dinner was followed in the evening by dancing to the music of the harpsichord and the violin.

**Christmas a festive occasion.**

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Find points of difference between the people in New England and in the South in respect to occupations, education, and life and manners.
2. Write an essay on life in Virginia just before the Revolution. Read Scudder's *George Washington*.

### THE MIDDLE GROUP OF COLONIES

**105. The People and Their Occupation.**—The people in the New England and Southern groups of colonies were largely English, but this was by no means true of New York, Pennsylvania, and the other Middle colonies. Here the population represented many of the countries of Europe. Trade and agriculture were of about equal importance in New York. The fur trade claimed most attention in New York and Pennsylvania. Besides furs, the principal exports were grain and flour. The principal port for foreign trade was then, as now, New York, whose merchants were busy and prosperous, employing many ships in their extensive commerce with England, the West Indies, and other parts of the world. Most manufactured goods came from England and the continent of Europe. As in New England, the spinning-wheel and loom took their place in the domestic economy. The ship-building industry and the saw-mill were of necessity early developed, and the Dutch wind-mill became a striking feature of the landscape. Outside of New York agriculture was the most extensive industry.

**A mixed population in New York and Pennsylvania.**

**Trade, agriculture, and manufacturing.**

**106. Education.**—While the Dutch were in control, common schools were well supported in New York, but under the English they were not in a flourishing condition. The Episcopalians founded King's College, now Columbia University, New York, in 1754. Although in New Jersey and Pennsylvania, outside of a few larger towns, but little was done to provide for general education, the Presbyterians founded Princeton College, New Jersey, in 1746; and Benjamin Franklin founded the University of Pennsylvania at Philadelphia, in 1749.

**107. Crimes and Punishments.**—Crime was not widely prevalent in the Middle colonies, although piracy had a

#### OLD DUTCH COSTUMES.

most demoralizing influence. Hanging, whipping, and the pillory were forms of punishment frequently practised under the public gaze, as was the case in New England.

**108. Life and Manners Among the Dutch.**—The Dutch house had a pointed gable roof with a weather-vane on top and a porch in front of the house, where the family sat during summer evenings to enjoy the air. There were great wide fireplaces with The Dutch house. seats for reading or sewing. The walls were without paper, but many pictures in small frames hung upon them. The

Dutch women were noted for their neatness and for their excellent housekeeping. They scrubbed the floors and sprinkled them with sand every day. The

**Neat housekeeping.**

men were slow and easy-going, but they were honest, thrifty, and industrious. They were fond of smoking and liked story-telling and good eating, the Dutch housekeepers being noted for their skill in cooking doughnuts, crullers, and various kinds of cakes. The Dutch introduced "Santa Claus" and "St. Nicholas" at Christmas time, and New Year's visiting. Among them a fu-

**Funeral customs.**

neral was a most expensive affair. Not only did they distribute to the guests gloves,

A NEW YORK HOUSE BUILT IN 1668.

scarfs, and rings, as was the custom in New England, but to each friend a bottle of wine. In Albany the funeral expenses in one instance were \$20,000.

The towns were situated mostly about the mouth of the Hudson, and from there the settlements extended through the Hudson valley to Albany and then followed the Mohawk valley. The patroons lived on their vast estates in grand and richly furnished houses facing the

**Life among the patroons.**

Hudson. They had about them many servants and rented to numerous tenants the farms into which their estates were divided. These great estates, lying on the rivers where goods could be easily landed and cargoes sent off, did away with the necessity of trade centres or towns.

The people were more social and fond of merry-making than the New Englanders. Their most noted holidays

were Christmas, New Year's, St. Valentine's Day, Easter, and May Day. In the country, spinning-bees, house-raising, corn-huskings, and dancing parties were favorite amusements; in towns, horse-racing, cock-fighting, balls, and picnics. There was little luxury, but much quiet contentment with the simple ways of living.

**Social life of the people.**

### TO THE PUPIL

1. What points of difference do you find between the people of the Middle colonies and those of New England? Those of the South?
2. Write a short account of life and manners among the Dutch, adding as many facts as you can to those given in the text.
3. The Legend of Sleepy Hollow, in Irving's Sketch Book, is delightful reading.

### MODES OF TRAVEL AND COMMUNICATION

**109. Modes of Travel.**—It was difficult for the colonies to know and understand each other because their means of communication were so restricted. The usual mode of travel on land was on foot or horseback; and not only were the roads poor, but very few of the rivers had bridges. People living near the rivers journeyed much by row-boats, and those along the coast made great use of sloops. The trip by water from New York to Philadelphia, with a fair wind, required three days.

A wagon ran twice a week from New York to Philadelphia, and, in 1766, a stage-coach was put on which made the trip in two days. This stage, greatly shortening the time, was called a "flying machine." To go from Boston to New York required four days; to go from Philadelphia to New York required two. When the coach was ready, the driver gave notice by sounding a horn and then, with a crack of the whip, away it went on its slow and toilsome journey, during which it was no uncommon thing for the travellers to be compelled to alight and help pry the coach-wheels out of the mire.

**The old stage-coach.**



Mails were carried mostly on horseback, and people depended mainly on letters for news. Newspapers did not at this time tell much about local or colonial news. They were full of advertisements and news from Europe. The first newspaper was the *Boston News Letter* (1704). At the close of the Last French War there were from thirty to forty newspapers in the whole country.

THE STAGE FROM NEW YORK TO PHILADELPHIA.

## CHAPTER XII

### • GROWTH TOWARD UNION IN THE COLONIES

REFERENCES : **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States; **Fisher's** Civil Government in the United States; **Thwaites's** Colonies; **Fiske's** Colonial Era; **Bancroft's** United States, II.

OUTSIDE READINGS : **Frothingham's** Rise of the Republic; **Eggleston's** Household History; **Macy's** Our Government; **Franklin's** Plan of Union (Old South Leaflets).

**110. Colonial Government.**—The various colonial governments were modelled after the English and were therefore much alike in form. Each colony had its governor and a law-making body consisting of the Council,<sup>1</sup> and the Assembly. The Council was the governor's body of advisers. They aided the governor in executing his duties, and generally took part in making laws. The Assembly was elected by the people and was therefore the stronghold of their rights. It alone could levy taxes, and in this way it controlled the public money.

**The governor, the council, and the assembly.**

But the manner of choosing the governor made all the difference in the amount of freedom which each colony enjoyed. In 1763 there were three political groups<sup>2</sup> of colonies. The first, containing Rhode Island and Connecticut, may rightly be called the *republican*, or self-governing, group, because the people elected the governor; the second, containing Pennsylvania,

**The three kinds of colonies.**

<sup>1</sup> The members of the council were chosen in various ways : by the king, as in Virginia ; by the proprietary governor, as in Pennsylvania ; by the legislature, as in Massachusetts ; or by the people, as in Connecticut.

<sup>2</sup> These political groups should not be confused with the groups named in par. 94.

Delaware, and Maryland, may be called the *proprietary* group, because the proprietors appointed the governor; and the third, containing the remaining eight colonies, may be called the *royal* group, because the king of England appointed the governor.

### III. Republican, Proprietary, and Royal Colonies.—

Connecticut and Rhode Island had very liberal charters and governed themselves without any interference from the mother-country. They were, even at this early period,

**Struggle between the royal and proprietary governors and the assemblies.** little republics. In the royal and proprietary colonies there was an almost continual struggle going on between the governors and the colonial assemblies. The points at issue were

sometimes petty, sometimes serious, and the discussions were often bitter. In New York, for instance, the burning question was whether the governor should receive a fixed salary (1745–1755). The members of the assembly objected, for they feared that the governor might thus become independent of the people. They believed a fixed salary would be in the nature of a tax by the crown, and true to the instincts of their forefathers, they declared that no taxes should be levied without the consent of the people. In all

**No taxation without representation.** the proprietary and royal colonies long and bitter conflicts were waged over raising money for public defence, especially during the Inter-colonial Wars (1689–1763). As the real source of power in any government is the authority that lays the taxes, the assemblies usually came out ahead.

The results were twofold: (1) The people received valuable political training, and (2) they learned that they had a common interest in contending against the personal rule of the king of England. The attempt to enforce personal

**Two results of the struggle.** rule, or royal prerogative, as it was called, is most familiar in the case of Berkeley in Virginia and Andros in Massachusetts, who did much to arouse the spirit of opposition in the two leading colonies. These colonies were afterward the first to break out in open rebellion against English authority.

**112. Need of Union Among the Colonies.**—The great need of the thirteen colonies was union. We have seen how the feeling of common danger from Indian Wars, and later from the various wars with the French, drew the colonists together. The common grievances of the assemblies

against their royal and proprietary governors united the people still more closely, when the latter realized that their liberties were endangered by the British crown.

The royal governors appreciated the need of union, and they naturally sought the advantage of the crown. They urged union as a means of checking the people's power. As representatives of the king they wished (1) to get control

of colonial trade, and (2) to take the right of taxation out of the hands of the colonial assemblies. For the people, under the various colonial governments, had acquired much more power than the king wished them to have. For instance, the different assemblies, in their narrow, provincial spirit, would not act together, and were slow to enlist soldiers, build forts, or send armies into the field, where their own territory was in no danger of attack. As a result, there was little united effort to ward off a great danger such as threatened the colonies in the Last French War and in Pontiac's conspiracy. This lack of union explains the purpose of James II. in appointing Andros governor of New England, New York, and New Jersey. He supposed he would strengthen the Northern colonies by uniting them under one government that could act with energy and promptness, but, as we have seen, he failed.

**Why the royal governors wished union.**

**Weakness from lack of union.**

The colonies sought union, in so far as they sought it at all, for an entirely different purpose—to ward off the offensive restrictions and impositions of England and to extend and increase the rights of the people.

**Why the colonies sought union.**

From the beginning of the English settlements in America, a democratic spirit was developed by the situation and life of the colonists. But Benjamin Franklin<sup>1</sup> saw that something more than a spirit of democracy or self-govern-

<sup>1</sup> Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston in 1706 and died in 1790. His father, a soap-boiler and tallow-chandler, had seventeen children, of whom Benjamin was the youngest son. At ten years of age the lad was set to work in his father's shop, but was dissatisfied with the business. Then he tried printing with his brother, but suffered from harsh treatment. Finally, at the age of seventeen he ran away from home to seek his fortune. One Sunday morning he landed in Philadelphia, cold, friendless, and with only a single dollar in his pocket.

In 1732, he began to publish Poor Richard's Almanac, which he continued to publish for twenty years. Full of witty maxims which people could apply with profit to every-day living, it became extremely popular and had an immense sale. Franklin became rich and devoted himself to science. By simple experimenting with a kite, he discovered that lightning is nothing more than discharges of electricity. He invented a kind of open stove which is in use at the present time. At the close of the Revolution he was associated with John Adams and John Jay in securing a treaty of peace with England.

ment was needed to make a strong people. He saw that they needed a central authority to lay taxes for their mutual defence. Clearly understanding this need, Franklin proposed his famous plan of Union at the Albany Convention <sup>1</sup> (1754). According to this plan each colony **Franklin's plan of union.** was to elect representatives to a Grand Council, similar to our present National Congress. This Grand Council was to have the power of levying taxes upon the people for raising and maintaining armies and otherwise providing for the defence of the colonies. Moreover, like our present Congress, this Council was to exercise supreme authority in questions affecting all the colonies alike. This was known as the Albany plan of Union.

The king of England did not like it, because he feared it might encourage the colonies to form a union in which the people would exercise too much power. The colonists did not like it <sup>2</sup> because they were unwilling to give up the right of taxation by their colonial assemblies. **Reasons for its failure.** Franklin's plan of union failed, but it was of great value because it led the people to think seriously about the advantages of union.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. How did the Council differ from the Assembly?
2. What were the three political groups of colonies? What was the distinguishing feature of each group?
3. Discuss the nature of the struggle between the various assemblies on the one side and the royal and proprietary governors on the other. What were the results? In this connection, review the struggle between Governor Berkeley and the people of Virginia and that between Governor Andros and the people of New England. If you get clear ideas about these struggles, you will better understand the causes of the Revolution.

<sup>1</sup> Only seven colonies were represented. This Convention was called to form a closer alliance with the Six Nations.

<sup>2</sup> The plan was presented to the several legislatures and they all rejected it because they did not strongly feel the need of union.

4. Why was there need of union among the colonies? What attempts at union had been made? Why did the royal governors wish union among the colonies? On what grounds did the colonies seek union? What was Franklin's Plan of Union? Why did it fail and what were its results?

## CHRONOLOGY

1524. FIRST FRENCH EXPEDITION TO AMERICA UNDER VERRAZANO.  
 1528. PAMPHILO DE NARVAEZ LANDS IN FLORIDA.  
 1531-33. PIZARRO CONQUERS PERU.  
 1534. CARTIER SAILS TO THE GULF OF ST. LAWRENCE.  
 1539. DE SOTO LANDS IN FLORIDA.  
 1540. CORONADO'S EXPEDITION IN SEARCH OF CIBOLA.  
 1541. DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER.  
 1562. COLIGNY'S FIRST COLONY SENT TO FLORIDA UNDER RIBAULT.  
 1565. FOUNDING OF ST. AUGUSTINE.  
 1576. MARTIN FROBISHER DISCOVERS THE STRAIT SINCE CALLED BY HIS NAME.  
 1579. DRAKE ON THE CALIFORNIA COAST.  
 1584. SIR WALTER RALEIGH'S FIRST EXPEDITION.  
 1585. RALEIGH'S FIRST COLONY.  
 1587. RALEIGH'S SECOND COLONY.  
 1603. FIRST VOYAGE OF SAMUEL CHAMPLAIN TO AMERICA.  
 1606. PATENT GRANTED TO THE VIRGINIA COMPANIES.  
 1607. FIRST PERMANENT SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA AT JAMESTOWN.  
 1608. FOUNDING OF QUEBEC BY SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.  
 1609. THE DISCOVERY OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN.  
       HENRY HUDSON DISCOVERS THE HUDSON RIVER.  
 1611. SIR THOMAS DALE, GOVERNOR OF VIRGINIA.  
 1619. FIRST CARGO OF SLAVES BROUGHT TO JAMESTOWN.  
       FIRST LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY OF VIRGINIA MEETS IN JAMESTOWN.  
 1620. THE PILGRIMS LAND AT PLYMOUTH.  
 • 1623. SETTLEMENT OF NEW HAMPSHIRE AT PORTSMOUTH AND DOVER.  
 1630. SETTLEMENT OF BOSTON AND NEIGHBORING TOWNS.  
 1634. SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.  
 1635. PERMANENT SETTLEMENT OF CONNECTICUT BY EMIGRANTS FROM MASSACHUSETTS BAY.  
 1636. PROVIDENCE FOUNDED BY ROGER WILLIAMS.  
 1637. THE PEQUOT WAR.  
 1643. THE CONFEDERATION OF NEW ENGLAND COLONIES FORMED.  
 1663. CHARTER OF RHODE ISLAND AND PROVIDENCE PLANTATIONS GRANTED BY CHARLES II.  
       FIRST GRANT OF CAROLINA.  
 1664. GRANT OF NEW NETHERLAND TO THE DUKE OF YORK, AND ITS SURRENDER TO THE ENGLISH.—NAMED NEW YORK.  
       GOVERNMENT OF NORTH CAROLINA ESTABLISHED.  
       GRANT OF NEW JERSEY TO BERKELEY AND CARTERET.  
 1665. SECOND GRANT OF CAROLINA.  
       ARRIVAL OF PHILIP CARTERET AS GOVERNOR OF NEW JERSEY.—ELIZABETH FOUNDED.  
 1673. MARQUETTE EXPLORES THE MISSISSIPPI.

1675. OUTBREAK OF KING PHILIP'S WAR IN NEW ENGLAND.  
1676. BACON'S REBELLION IN VIRGINIA.  
1679. NEW HAMPSHIRE MADE AN INDEPENDENT ROYAL PROVINCE.  
1680. HENNEPIN'S VOYAGE ON THE MISSISSIPPI.  
1681. THE GRANT OF PENNSYLVANIA SIGNED.—EMIGRATION BEGUN.  
1682. THE FRIENDS BUY EAST JERSEY.  
PENN SAILS FOR AMERICA.  
PHILADELPHIA FOUNDED. •  
PENN'S INDIAN TREATY.  
LA SALLE'S VOYAGE ON THE MISSISSIPPI.  
1685. LA SALLE'S COLONY FOUNDED IN TEXAS.  
1686. ANDROS GOVERNOR-GENERAL OF NEW ENGLAND.  
1687. ANDROS ATTEMPTS TO SEIZE THE CONNECTICUT CHARTER.  
1689. ARREST OF ANDROS AT BOSTON.  
1692. OUTBREAK OF THE WITCHCRAFT PANIC AT SALEM, MASS.  
1700. IBERVILLE ESTABLISHES A SETTLEMENT AT POVERTY POINT, LA.  
1702. BEGINNING OF QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.  
1715. FIVE NATIONS BECOME SIX BY ADDITION OF THE TUSCARORAS.  
1733. OGLETHORPE'S COLONY SETTLES IN GEORGIA.  
SUGAR AND MOLASSES ACT.  
1744. BEGINNING OF KING GEORGE'S WAR.  
1745. CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG.  
1748. OHIO COMPANY FORMED.  
LOUISBURG RESTORED TO FRANCE.  
1754. COLONIAL CONGRESS AT ALBANY, AND FRANKLIN'S PLAN OF UNION.  
1755. BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT.  
BANISHMENT OF THE ACADIANS.  
1756. FORT OSWEGO SURRENDERED TO THE FRENCH.  
BEGINNING OF THE LAST FRENCH WAR.  
1757. MASSACRE OF FORT WILLIAM HENRY.  
1758. DEFEAT OF ABERCROMBIE AT FORT TICONDEROGA.  
RECAPTURE OF LOUISBURG.  
1759. FORT TICONDEROGA TAKEN BY AMHERST.  
CAPTURE OF FORT NIAGARA BY THE ENGLISH.  
WOLFE CAPTURES QUEBEC.  
1761. ATTEMPT TO ENFORCE WRITS OF ASSISTANCE IN MASSACHUSETTS.  
1763. PONTIAC'S WAR.  
TREATY OF PARIS



# The Revolution, the Confederation, and the Federal Union

## CHAPTER XIII

### THE REVOLUTION

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, III. and IV.; **Andrews's** United States, I.; **Fiske's** War of Independence; **Sloane's** French War and the Revolution; **Hart's** Formation of the Union; **Channing's** United States; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Coffin's** Boys of '76; **Barnes's** Popular History of the United States; **Cooke's** Stories of the Old Dominion; **Hale's** Stories of Massachusetts.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Winsor's** Narrative and Critical History, VI. and VII.; **Bancroft's** United States, III.; **Fiske's** American Revolution; **Hildreth's** United States, II. and III.; **Lossing's** Field Book of the Revolution; **Lecky's** England in the Eighteenth Century, III.; **Frothingham's** Rise of the Republic; **Goldwin Smith's** United States; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History, II.; **Hale's** Franklin in France; **Roosevelt's** Winning the West, II.; **Greene's** Historical View of the American Revolution; **Hinsdale's** Old Northwest; **Ellet's** Domestic History of the Revolution; **Green's** History of the English People, IV.; **Drake's** Burgoyne's Invasion; **Abbot's** Blue Jackets of '76; **Headley's** Washington and His Generals; **Brown's** Mercy Warren; **Wharton's** Martha Washington; **Hosmer's** Samuel Adams; **Henry's** Patrick Henry; **Morse's** John Adams; **Scudder's** George Washington; **Hale's** George Washington; **Abbot's** Paul Jones; **Sparks's** Life of Arnold; **Arnold's** Life of Arnold; **Lossing's** Two Spies.

FICTION: **Cooper's** Lionel Lincoln; **Henty's** True to the Old Flag; **Cooper's** Spy; **Harte's** Thankful Blossom; **Cooper's** Pilot; **Simms's** Partisan; **Mitchell's** Hugh Wynne.

POETRY: **Holmes's** Grandmother's Story of Bunker Hill Battle; Independence Bell; **Bryant's** Seventy-six; **Bryant's** Song of Marion's Men.

### *The Causes of the Revolution*

**113. England Tries to Control American Commerce.**—In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries European countries planted colonies as a means of increasing their

own trade. In accordance with this theory, England valued her American colonies according to the wealth she gained from them. To secure control of colonial trade, therefore, Parliament began in 1651, thirty-one years after the landing of the Pilgrims, to pass the famous Navigation Laws and Acts of Trade. These laws required, (1) that all trade between the colonies should be carried on in ships built in England or in the colonies; (2) that the colonies should not export such colonial products as sugar, tobacco, iron, furs, and lumber to any part of the world except England or some English colony; (3) that all European goods should be bought in England and brought over to the colonies on English vessels; (4) that the colonies should not manufacture any article that could be manufactured in England.

**The Navigation Laws and Acts of Trade.**

The carrying out of these laws would injure the colonists in the following ways: (1) A profitable trade with the Dutch would be cut off at a single stroke; (2) whatever colonial products the English manufacturer needed he could buy of the colonies at his own price; (3) as the colonists were compelled to buy European goods in England, they had to pay whatever English merchants charged, or not buy at all; (4) while the law providing that all European goods should be imported in English ships would put money into the pockets of the English ship-owner, it would almost ruin the ship-building industry in the colonies, and throw thousands of sailors out of employment.

**These laws injure the colonies in four ways.**

**114. The Sugar Act and Smuggling.**—In 1733 the famous Sugar Act was passed to protect the English West India sugar islands. By this act a prohibitory duty was laid upon the sugar and molasses imported into the colonies from the French islands in the West Indies. The principal exports of New England were lumber and fish. The inferior qualities of fish were carried to the French islands and exchanged with profit for sugar and molasses. There was thus a double advantage to New England in this trade:

(1) The French would buy fish which were not salable elsewhere; (2) they were willing to sell at a low price their sugar and molasses. On the other hand, the New Englanders made the sugar and molasses into rum, part of which they consumed at home, and the remainder they took to Africa, where they exchanged it for slaves to be sold to the Southern colonies. All this trade was extremely profitable for New England, and was one of the principal sources of wealth. New Eng-

Advantages of  
trading with  
the French West  
Indies.

land merchants saw that if the Sugar Act should be enforced the profits of their West India trade must be greatly diminished. Financial ruin threatened them. They had to choose between that and smuggling. They chose smuggling, because they believed the law was an unjust interference with the natural rights of free-born Englishmen.

JAMES OTIS.

### 115. James Otis Defends New England Merchants

**Against Writs of Assistance.**—As long as England allowed this smuggling to go on all went well with the colonies. But after the Last French War, the English Government decided to put a stop to this contraband trade. England was greatly in debt. Money had to be raised, and it was thought that by enforcing the Navigation and Trade Laws the profits of colonial trade would be turned over to

English merchants. Legal papers called Writs of Assistance were issued (1761). They were general search-warrants, which empowered officers to go into any warehouse or private dwelling in search of contraband goods. With these odious papers in hand, custom-house officers could at any time enter a ware-

England issues  
Writs of Assist-  
ance.

house or a private dwelling, and ransack it from garret to cellar. In this way many thousand dollars' worth of goods were seized and confiscated.

The people were furious. James Otis, of Massachusetts, defended the colonial merchants in a test case. He made a great speech, in which he earnestly contended that the colonists were not bound to obey any law not made by their own representatives. The keynote of his speech was "Taxation without representation is tyranny," and it sounded from Massachusetts to Georgia.

Otis declares that  
"Taxation without representation is tyranny."

**116. Parliament Passes the Stamp Act.**—We have just seen how England, in protecting her merchants, ship-owners, and manufacturers, had indirectly<sup>1</sup> taxed the colonies. In thus taxing them England regarded the colonies as trading companies whose main purpose, from her standpoint, was to enrich the mother country. The colonies had submitted to such indirect taxation of their trade and industries because (1) it was usual, the world over, for colonies to have their trade thus taxed by their mother-country; (2) the English navy protected the commerce of the colonies; and (3) the Trade Laws were not strictly enforced.

The colonies submit to indirect taxation for three reasons.

But in 1764 the English Government decided to levy a *direct* tax upon them. As we have seen, England, by reason of the expensive Intercolonial Wars (1689–1763) was greatly in debt. The king's representative in the ministry, Lord Grenville, maintained that this debt was incurred in the defence of the colonies. He said that it was now time that the colonies should pay their share of their defence. Grenville seemed to forget that the colonies *had* paid their share, and were themselves heavily in

<sup>1</sup> A tax levied directly on a person or property is a direct tax. One levied on trade is an indirect tax. When a man pays a tax on his house, his horse and carriage, or any other form of property, he pays a direct tax. When a merchant imports goods upon which a duty has been laid by the government, he pays this duty to the government through the custom-house. Such a duty is called an indirect tax. The taxes for the support of our national government are usually indirect.

debt. He seemed to forget, also, that all these wars were fought quite as much to protect the English trade as to defend the colonies. Now that the French were driven out, a standing army of from 10,000 to 20,000 men was to be kept up in America for the purpose, among other things, of protecting the colonies from the Indians. A standing army, it was argued, would prevent a repetition of an Indian uprising, such as Pontiac's conspiracy. Moreover, if such a permanent standing army was to be maintained in the colonies for their defence, it seemed fair to Grenville and to the king that the colonies should share in the expense.

The colonies to be required to help to maintain a standing army in America.

During the Intercolonial Wars the various colonies paid their share of expense by raising money in response to requisition made by the king's agents. Colonies slow in paying taxes during the Intercolonial Wars.

#### A ROYAL STAMP.

But they were very slow about it. It was difficult to get any legislature to vote money for soldiers and supplies unless the danger threatened its own colony. Such a system was weak and lame, and it prevented prompt and united action. Some more effective plan of taxation seemed not only desirable but imperative. The Stamp Act offered such a scheme, and it became a law in March,<sup>1</sup> 1765.

**117. How the Stamp Act Was Received in America.**—This act required the colonies to use stamped paper for newspapers, almanacs, pamphlets, advertisements, and all kinds of legal documents. These stamps cost all the way from six cents to thirty dollars each. Grenville thought this tax would be fair because it would fall upon all alike.

The Stamp Act.

<sup>1</sup> It is certain that up to this time, as later during the Revolution (1775-1783), and the critical period (1783-1789), the American people suffered greatly for lack of some central taxing power. England's purpose was to supply this lack by a system of direct taxation furnished in the Stamp Act.

But he found that the Stamp Act aroused a storm of angry opposition throughout the colonies.<sup>1</sup> Organizations called "Sons of Liberty" were formed. Merchants banded together to import no more goods from England until the Stamp Act should be repealed. They urged the necessity of manufacturing in the colonies. They decided to stop eating mutton, that they need more wool for making. The day the Act went into effect made a day of mourning. Bells tolled, flags

its effects upon  
the colonists.

<sup>1</sup> At Portsmouth, New Hampshire, the people bore to an open grave a coffin with this inscription: "Liberty, aged CXLV years." The solemn procession marched to the beating of muffled drums. On reaching the grave the people listened to a funeral oration over Liberty, which was supposed to be lying dead, but just as they were lowering the coffin someone cried, "There are signs of life!" The

#### FANEUIL HALL, "THE CRADLE OF LIBERTY."<sup>2</sup>

coffin was eagerly raised and "Liberty Revived" was inscribed upon it. At once the people shouted themselves hoarse because Liberty was once more alive.

<sup>2</sup> The brave women did their share, also. They formed organizations called "Daughters of Liberty," and agreed to buy no more goods imported from England. They formed "Spinning Societies," and wove cloth for the men to wear.

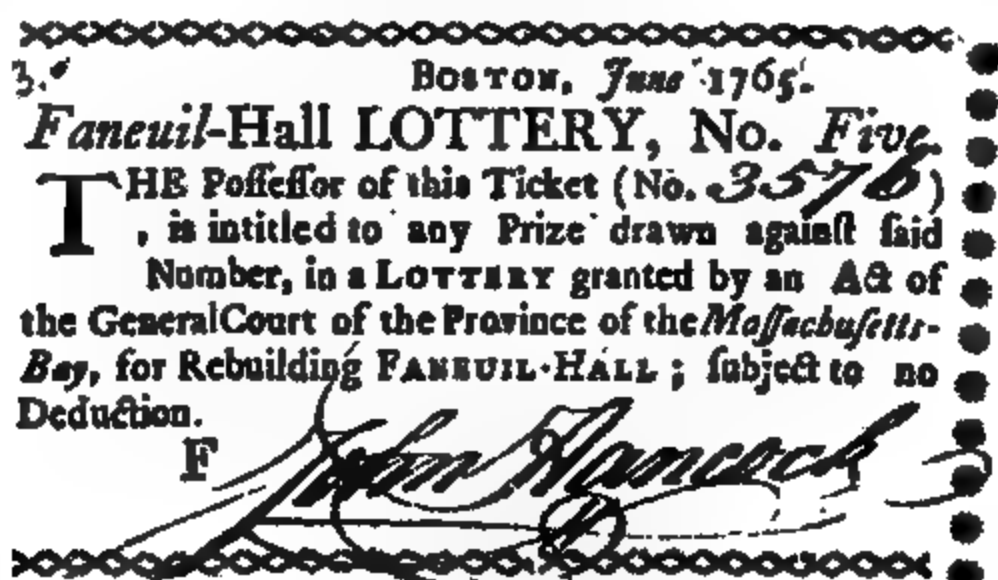
<sup>3</sup> Faneuil Hall was built in 1742 by a Boston merchant named Peter Faneuil, and presented by him to the town of Boston. The first floor was to be used as a market-house; the second as a town hall. Just before the Revolution, so many public meetings were held in Faneuil Hall that it was proudly called "The Cradle of Liberty." In "The Cradle of Liberty" the people met, day after day, in 1773 (see par. 127) to decide upon some plan of action about the tea in Boston Harbor. The last of these meetings was so large that it had to be held in the Old South Church.

ered, and business houses were closed to indicate that liberty was dead.

**118. Patrick Henry Introduces the Virginia Resolutions.**—In May the Virginia Legislature met at Williamsburg. It included the most eminent men of Virginia, and they were anxious to act wisely. In the midst of the gen-

Patrick Henry's  
famous resolu-  
tions

eral doubt and perplexity, Patrick Henry<sup>1</sup> arose and introduced his famous resolutions. In these he declared that the "General Assembly of the colony had the sole right and power of laying taxes in the colony." An exciting debate followed. George



A RELIC OF FANEUIL HALL.

Washington was present and Thomas Jefferson stood at the door earnestly listening. He tells us later that the discus-

sion was "most bloody." The opposition only and speech. fired the passion of Henry, and in a burst of wrathful eloquence he ended his speech in words never to be forgotten: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third"—"Treason!

<sup>1</sup> He was at this time just twenty-nine, tall in figure, but stooping, with a grim expression, small, blue eyes which had a peculiar twinkle, and wore a brown wig without powder, a "peach-blossom coat," leather knee-breeches, and yarn stockings. He had ridden to Williamsburg on "a lean horse," and carried his papers in a pair of saddle-bags. . . . As Henry came out of the Capitol a man of the crowd slapped him on the shoulder and cried:

"Stick to us, old fellow, or we are gone."—COOKE'S VIRGINIA.

Treason!" wildly shouted some of the members. The orator paused a moment and then calmly added, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it." The excitement caused by this speech travelled like wildfire through the colonies. Massachusetts and Virginia had declared themselves and were ready to join hands in open resistance.

### 119. The Stamp Act Congress (1765).

—The English Government made a great mistake in passing the Stamp Act. The

*England's mistake in passing the Stamp Act.*

enforcement of the Sugar Act affected the Middle and Southern colonies so little that they doubtless would not have joined New England in resistance to Parliament on this issue

"I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me death!"



alone. But in the Stamp Act a grievance was presented which affected all the colonies alike. It furnished them a common ground for resistance and a common purpose for united action. Accordingly, the passing of the Stamp Act had a most important and significant result in strengthening the union of the colonies. In June Massachusetts sent out a call for a general congress to discuss the situation and agree upon some plan of action. Representatives from nine of the colonies met at New York in October and passed resolutions similar to those of Virginia. They sent a memorial



to the king acknowledging his sovereignty, and a remonstrance to Parliament declaring it had no right to tax them. This congress should have been a warning to George III.

**120. Repeal of the Stamp Act (1766).—**But the most effective action of the colonists was their non-importation agreements. One-third of England's trade was with the colonies. In 1772 it amounted to \$30,000,000. Non-importation, therefore, caused a serious loss to English merchants, and they eagerly begged Parliament to repeal the Stamp Act. The debate in Parliament over the repeal showed that many English statesmen stoutly defended the colonies in their opposition to the direct taxation without representation. Said William Pitt, in a stirring speech in the House of Commons: "Sir, I rejoice that America has resisted! Three millions of people so dead to all the feelings of liberty as voluntarily to submit to be slaves would have been fit instruments to make slaves of all the rest." Parliament voted to repeal the act, but declared its *right* to *bind* the colonies in all cases. It was this very *right* to tax an unrepresented people that the colonies called in question.

**121. Taxation Without Representation in America.—**The colonists claimed that as freeborn Englishmen in America they had, granted to them in their charters, the same rights and privileges as freeborn Englishmen in the mother-country. The only difference between the man of Kent (England) and the man of Massachusetts was in the authority that taxed him. The government in Kent consisted of the king and Parliament; the government in Massachusetts of the king and the colonial assembly. The king could exercise no more power in Massachusetts than in Kent, while the taxing power in Kent was Parliament and in Massachusetts was the colonial assembly. This was the position taken by the Whig<sup>1</sup> party in America, not by all the colonists.

<sup>1</sup> The Whigs were those who opposed the king's schemes of taxing the Americans without their consent. The supporters of the king, who at this time included a large part of the American people, were called Loyalists, or Tories.

**122. Taxation Without Representation in England.**—We cannot understand the real meaning of the Revolution in America without looking into a similar struggle that was at the same time going on in England. Some Americans did not oppose England and some Englishmen did not join hands against America. It was in each country the same kind of struggle—a struggle between hostile principles. There was taxation without representation in England, as well as in America, and many Englishmen, like William Pitt, were as much opposed to it there as men like Samuel Adams and Patrick Henry were opposed to it in America. William Pitt and his followers represented the true feeling of the English people toward America.

At this time Parliament did not fairly represent the people of England. Great towns like Manchester, Liverpool, Birmingham, and Leeds were not represented at all, and members were returned for boroughs that had no existence except in name. Such boroughs were called rotten boroughs; or pocket boroughs, which were owned by the great families. Long after Old Sarum, a noted rotten borough, had no population, a member, representing its owner, was returned to the House of Commons. In a population of 8,000,000 only about 160,000, or one-tenth of the men of voting age in England, could vote.<sup>1</sup> A few great families controlled the House of Commons. Certainly the mass of Englishmen could justly complain of taxation without representation. Among them was the great William Pitt, who urged upon the people the justice of parliamentary reform, with a fair and full representation of the English people in the House of Commons.

The English people not fairly represented in Parliament.

**123. George III. and Personal Government.**—"George, be King," said George the Third's mother when he was

<sup>1</sup> In our own country the people are fairly and equally represented in the national House of Representatives. The unit of representation, or the number of people entitled to one representative since the last census of 1890, has been 173,901. This means that the number of representatives in Congress from any State may be found by dividing its population by 173,901. For example, Pennsylvania has 30 representatives and Delaware but one. But every State, large or small, has two members in the Senate.

crowned. That advice pleased the young ruler, who was then only twenty-two years old. His controlling purpose was to establish personal government in England. His desire for arbitrary power, together with his narrowness and bigotry, had much influence in bringing on the Revolution. He cared little for the rights

The views of  
George III.

of the people. The more power they had the less he would enjoy. By the corrupt use of money he succeeded in controlling the elections. His desire was to make Parliament represent him and a few great families that were in the political ring with him. He maintained his influence largely through boss-like methods, keeping his followers under control by the use of an immense cor-

#### KING GEORGE III.

ruption fund. As long as a large number of small boroughs remained under the control of his friends, the king could maintain his tyrannical hold upon the government.

But if the Americans should succeed in their struggle for "No taxation without representation," there was little doubt that in time Englishmen would succeed in a similar struggle for parliamentary reform, or "No taxation without representation in England." If the Americans were not repressed, their success would make certain the failure of the king's pet scheme of personal government. King George, therefore,

Why the king  
wished to tax the  
Americans.

was deeply chagrined when the Stamp Act was repealed. He could not let the matter rest here, however, but the next year (1767) he again tried to force new taxes upon America. We shall see how well he succeeded.

**124. The New Taxes of 1767.**—In 1767 Townshend, acting as the king's tool, induced Parliament to levy new port duties on a few articles, including glass, lead, paper, and tea. The colonies had objected to a stamp tax because it was a direct tax. As these new taxes were indirect, Townshend and King George thought the Americans might not refuse to pay them. But in this they wholly misunderstood the temper and feeling of the American people. The new taxes were opposed quite as violently as the Stamp Act had been.

We can easily understand the feelings of the colonists when we see the purpose of the taxes. The Sugar Act (see par. 114), was to be strictly enforced by commissioners who were to use the hated Writs of Assistance in searching for smuggled goods. The money raised by these taxes was to be used not only to pay the colonial governors, judges, and crown attorneys, and thus make all these officials independent of the people, but also to maintain a small English army in the colonies. The remainder, if there should be any, was to be used in pensioning men of influence. This last was in reality a corruption fund to bribe men to become the king's tools. Thus we see that the colonists themselves were to pay the taxes which should keep their governors and judges independent of them.

**Purpose of the  
new taxes.**

When we recall the bitter struggle between the people and the royal governors over this question of allowing a fixed salary, we can easily realize why this measure was so unpopular. Then, too, in paying this tax the people were supporting a standing army whose very presence was plainly intended to enforce the personal rule of the king. In a word, the people were to pay taxes whose real purpose was to deprive them of the rights of freeborn citizens.

**Bitter opposition  
to the new taxes.**

Massachusetts led in the opposition. She sent a circu-

lar letter to the other colonies for the purpose of securing some united plan of action against the Townshend Acts.

**Results.** The result was that the colonies again agreed to import no more goods from England, and they thus greatly injured English ship-owners and merchants. In the next two years English imports to New England fell off one-half, and to New York five-sixths.

**125. The Redcoats<sup>1</sup> and the "Boston Massacre" (1770).**—King George at length decided to send troops to America to enforce the revenue laws. In the autumn of 1768 they arrived in Boston. Their presence was regarded as a menace, and was a constant source of annoyance. Quarrels between them and the people were of frequent occurrence; and finally one evening in March, 1770, the crisis came in a disturbance which took place in State Street in front of what was then the Custom House but is now the old State House. The soldiers fired upon the people, killing three and wounding many others. This was called the "Boston Massacre." The next day an immense town meeting was held, and the people, through Samuel Adams as spokesman, demanded that the troops should be removed. They were withdrawn to an island in the harbor.

**126. Committees of Correspondence (1772-1773).**—The need of united action among the towns of Massachusetts was now pressing. It was hard to tell what new danger might at any hour fall upon the people. So Samuel Adams proposed, in town meeting, that committees of correspondence should be appointed in the towns. His plan was carried out (1772). In the following year Dabney Carr of Virginia suggested committees of correspondence for the various colonies. When these committees were organized the colonies rapidly drew closer and closer together in their sympathies. This was a bold step, which led later, as we shall see, to the Continental Congress and open war.

**127. Samuel Adams<sup>2</sup> and the "Boston Tea Party" (1773).**—The new duties were no more successful than the Stamp

<sup>1</sup> The English soldiers wore red uniforms. They were therefore called Redcoats.

<sup>2</sup> Samuel Adams has been called the "Father of the Revolution." He was dis-

Act had been, for again colonial merchants refused to import English goods. Again English merchants begged for

THE "BOSTON MASSACRE."

*From an engraving by Paul Revere.*

a repeal. But the stupid king could not understand the Americans. Thus far he had failed. He now resorted to

tinguished for his courage and perseverance and for his ability as a leader of men. Like Jefferson, he was full of sympathy for the toiling masses, and easily won their confidence. In 1774, General Gage offered him money and official advancement if he would give his influence and services to the king. Although Samuel Adams was poor, yet true to himself and to his countrymen, he scorned the offer. He was the first American to advocate independence of England, and was one of the foremost leaders that prepared the people to adopt the Declaration of Independence.

a trick by which he hoped to induce the colonists to pay a small tax levied by Parliament. He took off all the new taxes except the one on tea. "There must be one tax to keep the right to tax," he said. The tax on tea was to be only threepence a pound in America, instead of sixpence, as in England. This not only enabled the colonists to buy tea cheaper  
 George Third's  
 trick in levying  
 the tax on tea.  
 .. .. .  
 ht by  
 i, but  
 could  
 lonists  
 dland.  
 to im-

The East India Company decided to ship cargoes to such important ports as Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and Charleston. When the tea arrived the people in New York and Philadelphia refused to let it land, and the people in Charleston stored it in damp cellars, where it spoiled. In Boston the people were determined to send it back, but Governor Hutchinson refused to let this  
 Taxed tea sent to  
 America.

be done. For nineteen days the struggle continued. On the nineteenth day the excitement in Boston was intense. If the cargo of tea should remain in the harbor till the twentieth day the law permitted it to be landed. All day long the town meeting continued in Boston. Seven thousand men crowded the Old South Church<sup>1</sup> and the streets outside.

At nightfall a messenger brought word from the governor that he would not permit the tea to be returned to England. At once Samuel Adams, moderator of the meeting, arose and said: "This meeting can do nothing more to save the country." As if this were the signal, a warwhoop was heard, and forty or fifty men, disguised as Indians, proceeded down the street toward Griffin's Wharf.<sup>2</sup> Boarding the tea-ships they ripped open every chest, and spilled the tea into the harbor. A large party of people stood by while the "Indians" were emptying the chests, but everyone was quiet and orderly. This was the famous "Boston Tea Party," at which some of the best people of Boston were present (1773).

**128. Boston Punished for its Tea Party.**—King George was very angry at these high-handed proceedings. In order to punish the Boston people for what they had done, Parliament passed the Boston Port Bill, which closed the port of Boston to all trade until the town should pay for the tea that had been destroyed. Another law, known as the Massachusetts Act, annulled the charter, and took away free government from the people. A military governor, General Gage, like the Stuart governor Andros, was appointed to stand for the tyranny of an arbitrary king. Surely George III. and his followers little realized the love of self-government in these stubborn, unruly colonists!

**129. The Colonies Unite in Support of Massachusetts.**—The English Government determined to make an

<sup>1</sup> The Old South Church is still standing on Washington Street, at the corner of Milk.

<sup>2</sup> A tablet on Atlantic Avenue now marks the spot where the Tea Party reached the wharf.



example of Boston, and hoped in this way to frighten the other colonies into submission. Contrary to the expectation of the Government, the effect of the oppressive measures was to unite the colonies in sympathetic support of the Massachusetts people. Through the committees of correspondence the colonies could now act together more promptly than ever before. Provisions were sent from every direction to the suffering people in Boston. Help came from even the far-away Carolinas. Patrick Henry<sup>1</sup> angrily cried: "We must fight. I repeat it, **"We must fight."** sir; we must fight. I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me death."

The excitement was everywhere intense. United action was a necessity. The Continental Congress, meeting in **The Continental Congress.** Carpenters' Hall, Philadelphia, was the outcome (September 5, 1774). All the colonies except Georgia<sup>2</sup> were represented. This Congress declared the colonies had a right to govern themselves and levy their own taxes. It further declared that, should England attempt to force Massachusetts to submission, the other colonies would join Massachusetts in forcible resistance.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Name four requirements of the Navigation Laws and the Acts of Trade. In what four ways did these laws injure the colonists?
2. What advantages did New England merchants have in trading with the French islands in the West Indies? Do you think these merchants were right in smuggling? Give reasons for your answer. How were the Writs of Assistance connected with smuggling?
3. What is the difference between a direct and an indirect tax? Why had the colonies submitted to indirect taxation?
4. What was the object of the English Government in levying the stamp tax? From the English stand-point, give reasons why it was just that such a tax should be imposed upon the Americans.

<sup>1</sup> This great speech by the famous orator of the Revolution was made in "Old St. John's Church," Richmond, Va. This church is still standing.

<sup>2</sup> Georgia people were in sympathy with the Congress, but her royal governor prevented the appointment of delegates.



dissolved. John Hancock was its president and Samuel Adams was its leading spirit. It prepared for war. Twenty thousand men were ordered to be ready, at a minute's notice, to march to any point of danger. They were called "minute-men."

**The Provincial Congress and the "Minute-men."**

In April General Gage received orders from England to arrest John Hancock and Samuel Adams and send them to England to be tried for treason. About the same time the governor heard that the minute-men had collected some military stores at Concord, twenty miles from Boston. As Hancock and Adams were staying with a friend in Lexington, Gage decided to send out troops for the purpose of arresting them and at the same time destroying the military stores at Concord. About midnight eight hundred English soldiers started from Boston. But the minute-men were on the watch. Dr. Joseph Warren<sup>1</sup> sent Paul Revere and William Dawes<sup>2</sup> to warn his two friends and to spread the alarm, "The regulars are coming!"

**English troops sent to Lexington and Concord.**

Early next morning (April 19, 1775), when the English troops reached Lexington, Hancock and Adams had made their escape, and a party of minute-men were drawn up on Lexington Common. Soon the English fired upon them, killing seven of their number, and then passed on to Concord. Here they destroyed the small part of the military stores which the Americans had not had time to conceal.

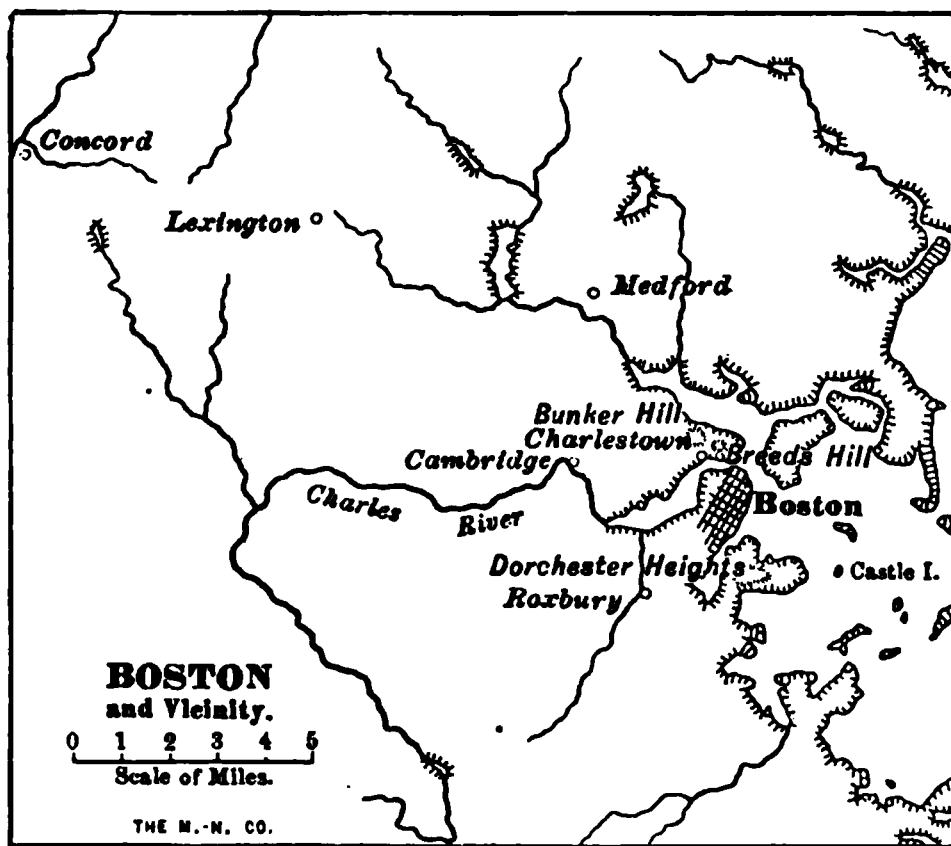
<sup>1</sup> Dr. Joseph Warren was a prominent patriot leader and a warm friend of Samuel Adams. Referring to the British soldiers he said: "Those fellows say we won't fight. By heavens, I hope I shall die up to my knees in blood." He was killed at Bunker Hill.

<sup>2</sup> William Dawes rode on horseback by way of Roxbury. Paul Revere went over from Boston to Charlestown in a boat and there awaited a signal which was given by a lantern hung in the belfry of the Old North Church. At eleven o'clock on that beautiful moonlight night he mounted his horse. Speeding his way through Medford he barely escaped capture by some British officers. From Lexington, where his warning saved Hancock and Adams from capture, he pressed on toward Concord, in company with Dr. Samuel Prescott and William Dawes. Between Lexington and Concord some British officers captured Dawes and Revere, took them back to Lexington, and there released them. Paul Revere's ride is graphically described in Longfellow's famous poem, but some of the details are not historically accurate.

Again they found minute-men, in ever-increasing numbers, angrily facing them. At the old Concord Bridge the fight began in earnest, and men fell on each side. From every direction the minute-men came flocking in and the English were forced to retreat, loading and firing as they marched.

**The fight at  
Concord Bridge.**

From behind rocks and trees, fences and barns, the minute-men shot the tired soldiers. On the English soldiers pushed, but they had to leave the dead and dying scattered along the road. At Lexington they met reinforcements sent from Boston. But for these fresh troops all of the eight hundred men sent out to Concord would have been captured. As it was, the whole force of about 2,000 men fled in confusion



from Lexington to Boston, barely saving themselves from capture. The British lost about three hundred men; the Americans, about one hundred. The British were glad to find shelter in Boston, around which in a few days were gathered 16,000 Americans. It was a good beginning for the patriot army.

**Retreat of the  
English to Boston.**

**131. The Colonies Unite for Resistance.**—On May 10 (1775) there was a second meeting of the Continental Congress at Philadelphia. John Hancock, of Massachusetts, was chosen president. The colonies voted to unite in resisting England, and for that purpose to raise an army of 20,000 men, whose expenses were to be paid by the united colonies. George Washington was appointed commander-in-chief of the Continental army.

**The second meet-  
ing of the Conti-  
nental Congress.**

While Congress was passing these war measures New England was actually engaged in pushing the war. Sixteen thousand yeoman troops were already besieging Boston, and on the day that Congress met, Ethan Allen from Vermont and Benedict Arnold from Connecticut led a force which surprised and captured Ticonderoga, thus securing an important fort. Two days later Crown Point was taken. With these forts they secured two hundred and twenty cannon and other military supplies. The Americans now had control of the line of communication between New York and Canada. They vainly hoped Canada would join them in their struggle. In November, 1775, they captured St. John's and Montreal. On December 30th Montgomery and Arnold made a gallant attack upon Quebec, but were driven back. Montgomery was killed and Arnold wounded. It was plain that the colonies meant to fight and that the war had already begun.

**132. Battle of Bunker Hill (June 17, 1775).—**In the meantime the English troops had been increased to 10,000, and Howe had been sent over to take the place of Gage as their commander. The English general saw the importance of occupying the heights in Charlestown known as Bunker Hill and Breed's Hill. If the Americans should secure them it would be very difficult for the British troops to remain in Boston. But the English were not quick enough. About the middle of the night preceding June 17th, 1,500 Americans, led by Colonel Prescott and aided later by General Putnam and General Warren, began throwing up breastworks on Breed's Hill. All night they toiled, and in the morning the British were surprised to find that the Americans had got ahead of them in occupying this important position.

Later in the day Howe, at the head of about 2,500 men, tried to drive the Americans out of their intrenchments. The British supposed the Americans would not stand an attack, but in this they were mistaken. As the English troops marched up the hill the Americans bravely waited









gained a moral victory because their brave fighting inspired the people with courage and hope. When Washington heard that the raw American troops stood fire he said: "The liberties of the country are safe." It was a glad day for the American colonies.

**133. Washington Drives the British out of Boston.—**About two weeks after the battle of Bunker Hill Washing-

THE CRAIGIE HOUSE, WASHINGTON'S HEADQUARTERS AT CAMBRIDGE (AFTER-  
WARD THE RESIDENCE OF LONGFELLOW).

ton arrived at Cambridge and formally took command of the American army (July 3), under the famous elm still standing near Harvard University. His army was in no condition for fighting. The men were in every way without proper equipment. Only a limited number had muskets, and very few had bayonets. Besides, there was a great scarcity of cannon and powder. Of course, under such conditions, Washington could not attack the enemy.



hired Hessian<sup>1</sup> soldiers to make war upon them. About this time Thomas Paine published *Common Sense*—a pamphlet which urged many reasons why America should separate from England. The fact that war already existed had weakened the bond of union, and Paine's arguments led many to look with favor upon the idea of independence.

Virginia took a leading part by instructing her delegates in Congress to vote for independence. This action on the part of Virginia had its due influence upon the other colonies. The Stamp Act, the Boston Port Bill, and the other unpopular measures of the King and Parliament, had drawn the colonies much closer together. They were beginning not only to realize the value of united action but to have a feeling of self-confidence leading to a desire for

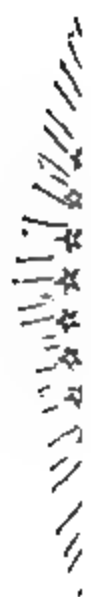
SAMUEL ADAMS.

independence. On June 7, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, introduced a resolution "that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States."<sup>2</sup> This resolution was seconded by John Adams of Massa-

<sup>1</sup> The Hessians were so called because they came from Hesse-Cassel in Germany. Thirty thousand Hessians were hired during the war, 18,000 of whom were engaged the first year. Twelve thousand lost their lives during the war. The cost to the king was \$22,000,000. The English Government was driven to hire Hessian troops because (at this time) the war was so unpopular in England that it was not easy to secure English volunteers to fight in America.

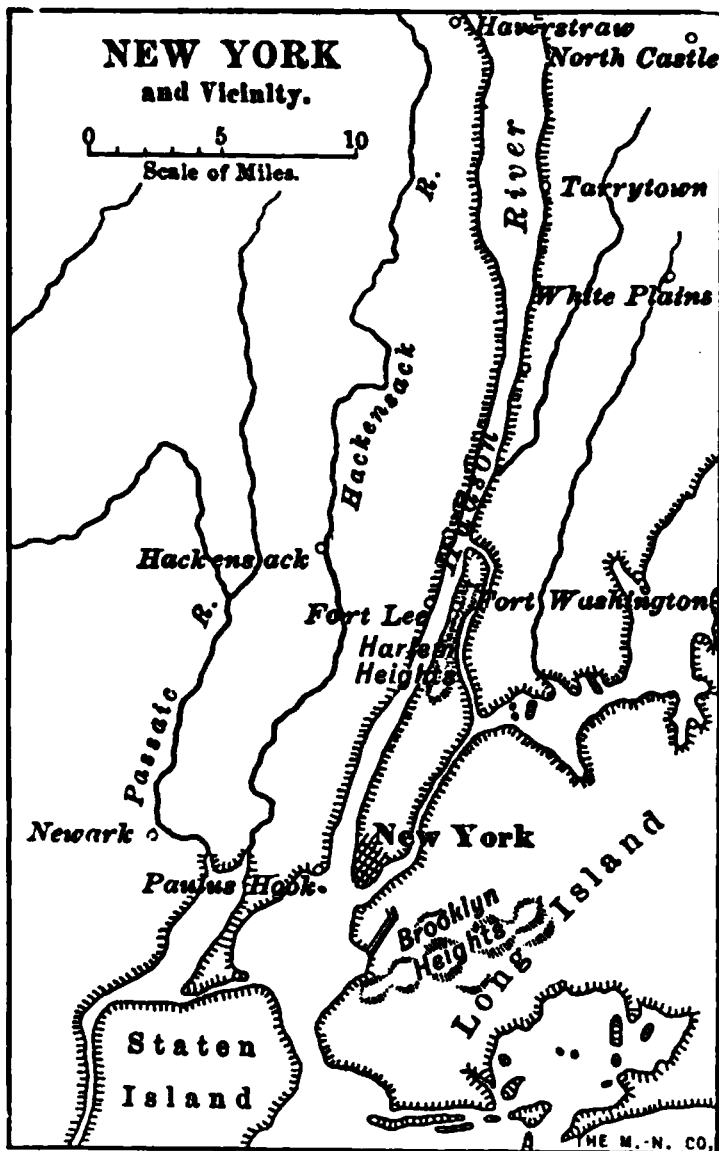
<sup>2</sup> The colonies, with the approval of Congress, began to form State governments in 1775. The change from a colonial to a State form of government was slight. In Connecticut and Rhode Island, where the people had been governing themselves







**States and the Hudson River.**—The British<sup>1</sup> had failed in their attempts to crush the Revolution in New England. They had found the opposition there so stubborn that they had been driven out of Boston. Their next move was to try to get control of the Hudson River and the Middle States.



There were several reasons why this movement attracted the British.

**Reasons why the English wished to secure the Hudson River and the Middle States.** In this region, on account of the mixed character of the population, the people were not so united and earnest in their desire for independence as in New England. A large part of the inhabitants were Tories,<sup>2</sup> whose influence, it was thought, would be of much service to the British. The Hudson River was of great military importance, because, along with Lakes George and Champlain, it made a natural highway<sup>3</sup> between New York and Canada.

If the British could secure this river, they could cut off New England from the other States. British forces concentrated in New England would soon conquer it, and they would then make short work of the rest of America. In a word, British control of the Hudson meant certain defeat for the Americans.

<sup>1</sup> On June 28 the British fleet attacked Fort Moultrie, in Charleston Harbor, South Carolina. Colonel Moultrie commanded the fort. His men returned the British fire with a precision which was surprising in untried gunners. The fleet retired, and South Carolina and Georgia were safe for three years.

<sup>2</sup> Everywhere in America Tory sentiment was strongest among the non-English elements of the people.

<sup>3</sup> Water routes were especially valuable then, because there were no railroads for the transportation of armies and military supplies.



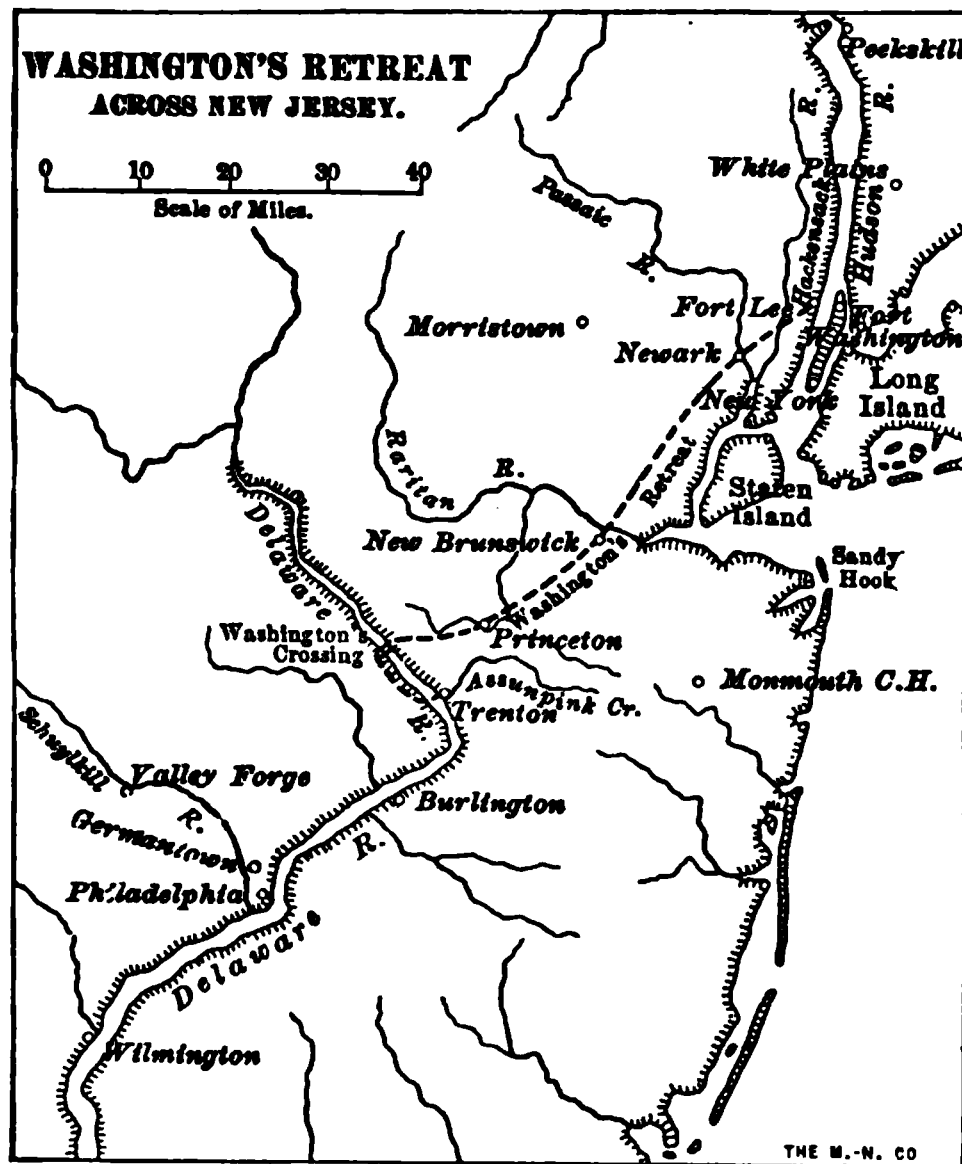


Howe, with the aid of his fleet, tried to prevent Washington's escape by cutting off his retreat, but Washington was too alert for him. After more or less fighting near the

Hudson River, north of New York, Washington left General Charles Lee with one-half the army at North Castle while he crossed over to New Jersey. The British captured Forts Lee and Washington, and 3,000 men. This was a terrible loss at a

time when everything seemed to be going against the American cause.

But even worse things were to follow. In order to prevent the British from carrying out their plan of taking Philadelphia, Washington put his troops between that city and the British army. Needing every available soldier, he sent Lee orders to join him. Lee did not move. Again and again



Washington urged upon Lee the importance of joining their forces, but he remained at North Castle. He was

was quite willing to risk his life by going as a spy into Howe's camp on Long Island. Hale succeeded in getting much valuable information about the enemy's fortifications, and was on his way back to the American army when he was captured and taken before General Howe. The latter promptly ordered him to be hanged on the next (Sunday) morning. During the night Hale asked for a clergyman and a Bible. Both were denied him. He wrote to his mother and to his betrothed, but the letters were torn in pieces before his eyes by the hard-hearted jailer. The last brave words of the martyr-spy were these: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

jealous of Washington, and, being second in command, he wished Washington to fail in order that he himself, by promotion, might become commander-in-chief. This disobedience and jealousy put Washington in a critical position. **Lee's disobedience and jealousy.**

To save his army from capture he was again forced to retreat—this time across New Jersey. On his line of march he broke down bridges and destroyed supplies which the British hoped to secure for their army. Often the rear-guard was just leaving a burning bridge when the advance of the British could be seen approaching. Washington's retreat was so skilful that the British spent nineteen days (November 19 to December 8) in marching a little over sixty miles. But his losses by desertion were great and his army seemed to be melting away. When he reached the Delaware River he had only about 3,000 soldiers. Having previously sent on men to secure the boats for nearly one hundred miles along the river, he got his little army across just in time to escape the British, who arrived on the evening of the same day. **Washington's army melting away.**

**138. Battle of Trenton.**—These were indeed “dark and dismal” days. In the retreat across New Jersey the Americans suffered greatly. Many were without shoes and they could be tracked by crimson foot-prints upon the snow. The friends of the patriot cause, both in England and in America, thought the Americans hopelessly beaten. There was doubt and gloom everywhere. The British generals thought the war was near its close, and Cornwallis was packing up to return to England; for as soon as the Delaware should become frozen over the British intended to march across and seize Philadelphia, the “rebel” capital. It would then be useless for him to remain longer in America. **Dark outlook of the American cause.**

But Washington was not without hope. He noted with satisfaction the mistake the British were making in carelessly separating their army into several divisions and scattering them at various points in New Jersey. In the meantime Charles Lee had been **Washington's plans.**

captured. His troops, now under Sullivan, had joined Washington, so that the entire army numbered 6,000. Washington at once planned to attack the body of Hessians stationed at Trenton.

The attack was made on Christmas night with 2,400 picked men. They began crossing the river early in the evening. Great blocks of ice, floating down the swift current, made the crossing slow and difficult. Massachusetts fishermen skilfully directed the boats, but it was four o'clock in the morning before the soldiers were ready to take up their line of march. A furious storm of snow and sleet beat in their faces as they plodded on toward Trenton, **A glorious victory at Trenton.** nine miles away. By daybreak they had completely surprised the Hessians and, after a brief struggle, had captured the whole force of more than 1,000 men. By one bold stroke Washington had changed defeat into victory and had inspired the patriot Americans with new hope.

Cornwallis, filled with amazement, decided to remain a little longer in America. Leaving a rear-guard at Princeton to protect his supplies, he speedily advanced with a superior force against Washington. At nightfall January 2, 1777, only a small creek separated the two armies, just south of Trenton. "At last," said Cornwallis, "we have run down the old fox and we will bag him in the morning." But **Battle of Princeton.** Washington outgeneralled him. During the night he not only escaped, but marched around Cornwallis, defeated his rear-guard at Princeton, captured five hundred prisoners, and then withdrew in safety to the heights about Morristown, where he went into winter quarters.

**139. Robert Morris Furnishes Money for the Army.—** After the battle of Trenton Washington was in sore straits with his army. Many of the soldiers' terms of service were about to expire, and these men were eager to get to their homes. Washington knew that good money would hold them over for a few weeks. He wrote in haste, therefore, to his friend Robert

**Great need of money for the soldiers.**

WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.  
*After the painting by Lentze.*



Morris, a rich merchant and banker of Philadelphia, for \$50,000 in hard cash. Morris promptly responded. Before light on New Year's morning he went knocking from door to door to secure the money from among his friends. By noon the sum was made up and on its way to Washington. The army was saved and Washington was able to bring to an end a brilliantly executed campaign. Again during Greene's campaign in the Carolinas (1780) and during Washington's about Yorktown (1781), Morris came to the rescue of the army. His ample fortune was a silent power which none the less truly than the military genius of Washington made American independence possible.

**The noble task of Robert Morris.**

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. Review the New England Confederacy, Franklin's Plan of Union, the Stamp Act Congress, and the Continental Congress. How do you account for the rapid growth of a desire on the part of the colonists for Independence? In this connection, find out all you can about the Hessians.
2. Explain the leading part taken by Virginia and Massachusetts in securing the adoption of the Declaration of Independence. Review Berkeley in Virginia and Andros in Massachusetts.
3. What were the Americans fighting for before the adoption of the Declaration of Independence? What, after it?
4. Why did the British wish to secure control of the Hudson River and the Middle States? Can you give any reason why the Tories were more numerous in this part of the country than in New England?
5. What plans did Washington make for the defence of New York?
6. Are you constantly using a map to aid you in forming vivid pictures?
7. What had Charles Lee to do with Washington's retreat across New Jersey? After chasing Washington across New Jersey, what mistake did the British make? How did Washington take advantage of this? You may well closely follow Washington at this time. What service did Robert Morris render the American cause?
8. Read the account of the battle of Trenton in Coffin's Boys of '76.

## THE STRUGGLE FOR THE HUDSON RIVER AND THE MIDDLE STATES IN 1777

**140. The British Plan to get Control of the Hudson in 1777.**—By the capture of New York the British held the lower part of the Hudson. Their plan for 1777, like that for 1776, was to get entire control of this river. The plan was three-fold: (1) Burgoyne was to come down from Canada by way of Lake Champlain;<sup>1</sup> (2) St. Leger was to sail up the St. Lawrence into Lake Ontario and, landing at Oswego, was to come down the Mohawk Valley; (3) and Howe, with the main army, was to go up the Hudson from New York. All three of these divisions were to meet at Albany. The plan looks simple. It will be interesting to see how the blundering of the British led to failure.

**141. Burgoyne's Brilliant Beginning.**—Burgoyne, with an army of 10,000 men, including Canadians and Indians, captured Crown Point (June 26). Ten days later he forced the Americans to evacuate Fort Ticonderoga and hastily to retreat southward. Burgoyne was now confident of easy victory. King George clapped his hands and shouted, "I have beat them! I have beat all the Americans!" The English people thought the war would soon be over. The Americans were everywhere disheartened. Four days more (July 10) found Burgoyne's army at Skenesboro (now Whitehall), about twenty miles distant in a direct line from Fort Edward.

**142. Some of Burgoyne's Difficulties.**—But in crossing the carrying-place between Lake Champlain and the Hudson serious difficulties stood in his way. The country was swampy and heavily wooded. General Schuyler, who was in command of the Americans, felled trees across the roads and destroyed over forty bridges. These obstructions

<sup>1</sup> In 1776 Carleton had led a similar expedition. With 12,000 troops he started from Canada to secure control of the water route to the mouth of the Hudson. Although stubbornly opposed by Arnold on Lake Champlain, he captured Crown Point; but finding Ticonderoga strongly fortified he withdrew without attacking that fort.

greatly delayed Burgoyne. The British advanced only about a mile a day until they reached Fort Edward (July 30). As Burgoyne's supplies had to be sent to him from Canada, the farther he advanced the more difficult it was to feed his army. To keep his line of communication guarded it was necessary to leave troops in his rear. Every mile of advance thus compelled him to weaken his attacking force.

**143. Burgoyne's Indian Allies.**—Burgoyne's Indian allies were a source of more weakness than strength to his army. They murdered and scalped peaceful inhabitants every day.<sup>1</sup> These barbarous cruelties aroused the

#### GENERAL JOHN BURGOYNE

tenant in Burgoyne's army. Jones, having prevailed upon Miss McCrea to come within the British lines and marry him, sent a party of Indians under the half-breed Duluth to act as her guard. She was staying at the house of Mrs. McNeil, only a few hundred yards from Fort Edward. Before Duluth's party could reach Mrs. McNeil's house, however, another party of Indians under the Wyandotte Panther arrived and carried off Miss McCrea. Both parties of Indians met at a spring between Fort Edward and Glens Falls, and Duluth declared his right to take charge of the young lady. In the heated dispute which followed the Panther shot dead the unfortunate Miss McCrea. This is the version of the McCrea story as told by W. L. Stone in the "Cyclopædia of American Biography."

<sup>1</sup> Near Fort Edward they killed Jane McCrea, a fascinating young woman who was engaged to be married to David Jones, an American loyalist serving as lieu-



hottest indignation among the people, hundreds of whom eagerly offered their services to the American commander.

**144. Bennington and Supplies.**—While encamped at Fort Edward in August, Burgoyne's army stood greatly in need of horses and supplies. News came that at Bennington, a little village in Vermont at the foot of the Green Mountains, the Americans had collected several hundred horses, as well as food supplies and ammunition. Burgoyne was as much in need of horses to draw his cannon as of food to feed his troops. Besides, he was told that there were many Tories in the Green Mountains who would, with a little encouragement, flock to the British army. To win over the people to the British cause was no small part of the purpose of the expedition to Bennington.

Accordingly, about 1,000 Hessians were sent to Bennington, where nearly all of them were killed or captured by a body of militia under Colonel John Stark. Burgoyne's army was badly crippled by this disaster. Instead of bringing recruits to the British the expedition to Bennington only served to make the feeling of the Green Mountain farmers more bitter against the English Government. Great numbers of them speedily hastened to join the American army.

**145. Failure of St. Leger.**—Fortune seemed to be against Burgoyne. St. Leger, it was hoped, would gather about his standard many of the Iroquois, or Six Nations, and large numbers of Tories in western and central New York. In due time he made his way to Oswego, and from there to Fort Stanwix. St. Leger laid siege to the fort. Arnold, with a body of troops, pressed forward to its relief. He sent a messenger ahead to report that a large force would soon attack the British. Panic-stricken, the Indians at once hurried away and were soon followed by St. Leger himself (August 22). Burgoyne could no longer look for aid in this direction. His only remaining hope was in receiving reinforcements from Howe.

Where Howe was and what his army was doing we will now consider.

**146. Why Howe Failed to Unite with Burgoyne.—**  
If Howe had gone up the Hudson and joined Burgoyne at the time planned, the latter's invasion would no doubt have

Philadelphia than to get control of the Hudson. Hence he advised sending a force to take that city, which the British general called the "rebel capital." **Lee's advice to Howe.** Howe might thus speedily bring Pennsylvania under subjection to England, while Burgoyne and St. Leger would easily subdue New York. To his own confusion and to the confusion of the British cause Howe followed Lee's advice.

**147. Howe's Advance Toward Philadelphia.**—Howe opened the campaign (June 12) by an effort to draw Washington from his strong position among the hills around Morristown into a general engagement. But Washington was too wary to allow himself to be caught napping. After spending two or three weeks in vain attempts to provoke Washington to come out from his strongholds and fight in the open field, Howe withdrew, tired out with his fruitless manoeuvres.

Even though Howe's army numbered 18,000 men he dared not risk a march across New Jersey with Washington and an army of 8,000 in his rear. So on the last day of June he gave up his plan of marching across New Jersey to Philadelphia and withdrew his army to Staten Island.

**He sails to Elkton.** He then sailed southward, in order to reach Philadelphia by way of the Chesapeake. When he reached Elkton, the head of the Chesapeake (August 25), he had been two months on the way. It was a precious two months to the American cause, as we shall now see.

**148. Battle of the Brandywine.**<sup>1</sup>—Howe had no sooner landed, than he found his watchful foe ready to dispute his

<sup>1</sup> When La Fayette heard that the Americans had declared their independence of England he was eager to cross the Atlantic and aid them. He was not yet twenty years of age and had just married a beautiful woman of rank and fortune. She was only eighteen years old and enjoyed the tender love of her husband. But he was willing to leave behind him wife, family, and friends. Accordingly, he sailed in his own vessel for this country and reached the coast of South Carolina in April, 1777.

Congress made him major-general in the Continental army, where he rendered excellent service. He fought his first battle at Brandywine, and here was wounded in the leg. He freely spent his own money for clothing and equipping the soldiers under his command. From their first meeting a warm friendship sprang up be-



advance upon Philadelphia. Washington decided to make a stand at Brandywine Creek, where he met Howe in battle (September 11). The British greatly outnumbered the

Washington's  
skilful retreat.

Americans and defeated them.<sup>1</sup> But Washington withdrew in good order and handled his troops with such skill as to keep Howe two weeks in marching to Philadelphia, only twenty-six miles from the battlefield. It was on September 26, when the British general

marched into this city, a week after the first battle of Saratoga, and altogether too late to send troops to co-operate with the unfortunate Burgoyne, three hundred miles away. In delaying Howe, Washington had made Burgoyne's capture certain. People did not understand the meaning of Washington's masterful strategy, but his policy of delaying Howe had been fatal to the success of the British plan to secure control of the Hudson.

LA FAYETTE.

**149. Burgoyne's Surrender.**—While Howe was on his way to Philadelphia, Burgoyne was passing through a trying experience in the North. On sailing away from New York Howe left Clinton in command there. In vain Burgoyne sent messenger after messenger to Clinton, asking for reinforcements. Without Clinton's aid success was very doubtful, for the Americans were increasing daily and were threatening to cut off Burgoyne's line of com-

tween La Fayette and Washington. After the war was over La Fayette twice visited the United States. The first visit he made in 1784 on Washington's invitation; the second, in 1824, when he laid the corner stone of Bunker Hill monument on the spot where the brave Warren had fallen in 1775.

<sup>1</sup> Washington had weakened his army by sending picked troops to aid the army of the North.

proved to have been the first to hoist the flag at sea.

<sup>1</sup> These commissioners were Benjamin Franklin, Arthur Lee, and Silas Deane.

France had secretly sent to the Americans much aid in the form of money and ship-loads of ammunition and clothing.

But after Burgoyne's surrender it was evident that the Americans were fighting England with success. France, England's traditional enemy, was then ready to aid them openly. She therefore entered into a treaty of alliance with the United States, agreeing to send over a fleet and an army of 4,000 men. England promptly declared war against France. She also

**Results of the  
American treaty  
with France.**

changed her policy toward the Americans. She repealed the tea duty, the Boston Port Bill, and all the other hated measures that had driven the colonies to take up arms against the king. She promised that there should be no more taxation without representation. But it was too late. The Americans would now agree to nothing short of independence.

**BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.**

**151. The Suffering at Valley Forge.**—Even after losing Philadelphia, Washington had the courage to attack the

British at Germantown. Although he made a well-planned attack, on account of a fog he suffered defeat. He then withdrew his army and went into winter quarters at Valley Forge. This was a strong position among the hills, about twenty miles northwest of Philadelphia, on the Schuylkill River. But the winter was a terrible one for the army.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A beautiful story is told of Washington at Valley Forge. When "Friend Potts" was near the camp one day he heard an earnest voice. On approaching he saw Washington on his knees, his cheeks wet with tears, praying to God for help and guidance. When the farmer returned to his home he said to his wife: "George Washington will succeed! George Washington will succeed! The Americans will secure their independence!" "What makes thee think so, Isaac?" inquired his wife. "I have heard him pray, Hannah, out in the woods to-day, and the Lord will surely hear his prayer. He will, Hannah; thee may rest assured He will."

officers won the lasting gratitude of patriot Americans.



who had joined the American cause. He was made inspector-general, and he transformed the ragged regiments into a well-disciplined army.

**152. The Conway Cabal.**—Petty politics and personal jealousy in Congress did much at this time and at other times, to prevent the successful handling of Washington's enemies and their petty scheming. the troops by Washington. Weak and vain men, such as Gates and Charles Lee, did all they could to destroy Washington's influence and drive him from his position as commander-in-chief. As Gates had, by his political scheming, succeeded in getting Congress to appoint him, in place of the noble Schuyler, as head of the Northern army, in 1777, so now he was busily scheming for the downfall of Washington that he might himself become the head of all the American armies. As one of the leaders in this shameful plot was Conway, it was called the Conway Cabal. The taunt was openly made that while Gates had captured Burgoyne at Saratoga, Washington had been defeated by Howe on the Brandywine. But when people understood the meanness of all this plotting, they were indignant. Washington appeared all the more noble in contrast with these selfish men, and his popularity was even greater than before.

**153. The British Evacuate Philadelphia (June 18, 1778).** When the British learned that a French fleet was coming over to aid the Americans, they feared it might go up the Delaware and, co-operating with Washington, capture their troops in Philadelphia. So Clinton, who had succeeded Howe in the chief command, was at once ordered to hasten away from Philadelphia and reinforce the army in New York. With 17,000 men, the British general began his march across New Jersey. Washington started in pursuit of Clinton, overtook him at Monmouth, and attacked him there (June 28). But, owing to the treachery of Charles Lee,<sup>1</sup> Washington failed to

<sup>1</sup> For his shameful retreat and disobedience of orders Lee was tried by court-martial. He was suspended from his command for one year. Later he was expelled from the army.



**155. Weakness and Difficulties of the Americans.—**

The United States was equally unable to engage in extensive military operations. The country was very weak in point of wealth and population. The principal industries were farming, fishing, ship-building, and commerce, and these, especially the last three, had naturally been much interfered with by the war. The Continental Congress

**The Continental Congress has little power.**

had but little authority, and steadily lost influence until it commanded but little respect. It could not enlist a soldier or build a fort, because it had no power to levy taxes. In course of time the States paid little heed to the requisitions for money which Congress made upon them. Under such circumstances Congress had great difficulty in raising money enough to carry on the war.

Although Congress had no money and no means of getting any, it could issue paper promises, and this it did in immense quantities. These paper promises were called

**Continental currency.**

Continental currency, and, like all promises, they were valuable only in so far as people had confidence in the ability of the government to redeem them. As people lost respect for Congress, this paper currency fell in value. Before the close of 1779 the coin value of this Continental currency was only two cents on the dollar, and in the early part of the following year its coin value was nothing at all. "Not worth a Continental" recalls the money trials of the Revolution.

**156. Use of Indians by the English.—**The difficulties of the situation were enhanced by the hostility of the original owners of the soil. We have seen how Burgoyne employed Indians to help him. It was a part of the plan of the English to get all the aid they could from the Iroquois in New York and from the Indians west of the Alleghanies. These powerful tribes, furnished with arms, ammunition, provisions, and sometimes with British leaders, were a serious annoyance to the people on the frontier.

The struggle between the backwoodsmen and the red men was of great importance. The English Government

to America and that the American flag floated over the fort there.

**158. Clark Secures Control of the Northwest.**—Hearing of Clark's success, Hamilton, who was at Detroit, at once prepared to march against him. As soon as possible the expedition started from Detroit toward Vincennes. In four or five weeks Hamilton captured Vincennes and threatened to advance upon Clark. When the news reached the Illinois towns there was great alarm. Clark's situation was now critical. With scarcely more than one hundred men he was too far away to secure reinforcements from Virginia. Hamilton had five hundred men, including Indians, and could easily get reinforcements from his red friends.

In the midst of the excitement Clark got news that Hamilton had postponed further operations for the winter, and was holding Vincennes with only eighty men in the garrison. Although it was mid-winter, Clark promptly decided to march across the country and attack Hamilton at Vincennes, two hundred and forty miles away. He started from Kaskaskia (February 7, 1779). It was a fearful march of sixteen days, five of them spent in wading over the drowned lands of the Wabash.

The water was often three or four feet deep and sometimes reached the men's chins. The weather was bitterly cold. During the last six days of the march the men, drenched and half-frozen, had no regular meals, and were wholly without food for two days. But Clark pressed steadily forward. On reaching Vincennes he attacked the fort with such vigor that he forced Hamilton to surrender (February 24, 1779). He had done a heroic piece of work. In capturing Vincennes, Clark and his brave backwoodsmen finished the conquest of the territory in the Northwest and opened all this vast region to American settlers. The importance of this conquest will be appreciated when we see its effects upon the treaty of peace at the close of the Revolution.

**159. The American Navy.**—Up to this time all the fighting, so far as we have seen, had been on land, but there was



nel and thoroughly frightened the people as he sailed along the coasts of England and Scotland threatening the towns. At length, through the help of Franklin and the French king, he was placed in command of a small squadron. His flag-ship was called the *Bonhomme Richard*. Sailing along the eastern coast of England he saw several English merchant-

men convoyed by two men-of-war. At seven o'clock in the evening (September 23, 1779) his

ship attacked the larger of the two, the *Serapis*. A desperate fight followed. During the action the firing on the *Richard* slackened. The English commander shouted to Jones, "Have you struck?" Jones promptly answered, "I have not begun to fight." The two vessels coming in touch, he lashed them together with his own hands and for two hours

JOHN PAUL JONES.

longer continued the deadly struggle. At last some of Jones's men, from the main-yard of the *Richard*, dropped hand grenades among the English sailors. One of these caused an explosion of a powder chest. This demoralized the English crew, and their commander struck his colors. Jones had lost and killed and wounded one hundred and sixteen men, and the *Richard* was sinking. It was a tremendous struggle and a great victory, and it caused the name of John Paul Jones to be spoken of with gratitude throughout America.

THE *BONHOMME RICHARD* AND THE *SERAPIS*.





there was little fighting anywhere in America in 1778 and 1779. The British had captured Savannah in 1778, but it

was not until the spring of 1780, that they began the serious work of conquering the South. General Lincoln was in command of the American army in the South, and was stationed at Charleston. Clinton, coming down from New York with a large force, succeeded in penning him in this place and forcing his surrender (May 12), with about 3,000 Continental troops. Well satisfied with this beginning, Clinton returned to New York, and left Cornwallis in command of the British forces in the South.

**Lincoln surrenders to Clinton at Charleston.**

After Lincoln's surrender at Charleston, Congress sent General Gates down to take command of the American troops. Gates, whose head had been turned by his capture of Burgoyne at Saratoga, went south confident of success. He reached the army on July 19, and at once planned to make an advance upon Camden. This was the most important place in South Carolina, because all the principal roads, leading from the North and from the coast, centred here. He was met by Cornwallis (August 16), and badly defeated. This was the second American army destroyed in the South within three months.

**Defeat of Gates at Camden.**

Gates rode off the battle-field in such confusion of mind that he did not stop until he was more than sixty miles from Camden. In utter disgrace he retired from the army, to be heard of no more during the war. As Gates was leaving his Virginia plantation to take command of the army in South Carolina, his friend Charles Lee had said to him: "Take care that your Northern laurels do not change to Southern willows." But Gates was bound to fail. He was too self-satisfied to listen to any advice, even that of his officers.

**Gates in disgrace.**

**164. Battle of King's Mountain.**—Cornwallis now advanced into North Carolina. At the same time he sent 1,200 men, mostly American Tories, under the dashing Ferguson, to enlist Tories in the mountainous regions of South Carolina. Hearing of this movement, a body of American backwoodsmen hastily gathered, and attacked Ferguson at



King's Mountain (October 7) before he could receive reinforcements. His position was a strong one, but the backwoodsmen assailed him with great fury on three sides at once, and killed or captured his entire force. Ferguson himself was killed.

This brilliant victory so severely crippled Cornwallis that it has sometimes been called the Bennington of the South. Cornwallis was compelled to return to South Carolina in order to maintain control of the territory in that State.

**165. Partisan Warfare in the South.**—Before returning to New York after the capture of Charleston, Clinton sent **Clinton's unwise proclamation.** small forces into the interior of South Carolina, and, in a proclamation, offered pardon to all who would return to allegiance to England. Those who would not actively aid in restoring the royal government were to be treated as rebels and traitors. This unwise proclamation compelled all citizens to range themselves on one side or the other.

A bitter, bloody, and cruel partisan warfare resulted. Neighbor fought against neighbor, sometimes brother against brother, in this semi-civil war. The most noted partisan leaders on the American side were Marion, Sumter, Pickens, and Lee. Marion's men were without uniforms, without tents, and without pay. They lived **The Swamp Fox.** in the swamps, and were so swift and cunning in their attacks that their leader was known as the Swamp Fox. With a very small force, often less than fifty men, he annoyed beyond measure the British by rescuing prisoners and capturing supply-trains, foraging parties, and outposts. When the American cause looked most gloomy in the South, these brave men, aided by noble women, kept hope alive in patriot hearts.

**166. Arnold in Philadelphia.**—Before we follow Greene and Cornwallis in their final struggle for control in the South, let us turn to an alarming event on the banks of the Hudson. This was Arnold's treason, which offered the British an opportunity to make a third attempt to get con-

tories, and became engaged to a Tory's daughter. **EX.**

travagant living followed, and Arnold was soon heavily in debt.

The State government accusing him of dishonesty, Congress ordered his trial by court-martial. By its ver-

dict he was found guilty of indiscretions, and mildly

Arnold tried by court-martial. sentenced to receive a rep-

rimand from the command-

er-in-chief. As Arnold

had served his country with distinguished bravery, Washington held him

in high esteem, and therefore gave the reproof as

gently as possible. But Arnold was indignant. He

felt that he had been unjustly treated, and he secretly planned revenge.

**167. Arnold Becomes a Traitor.**—Arnold pretend-

ed that on account of his wound, he was not able to

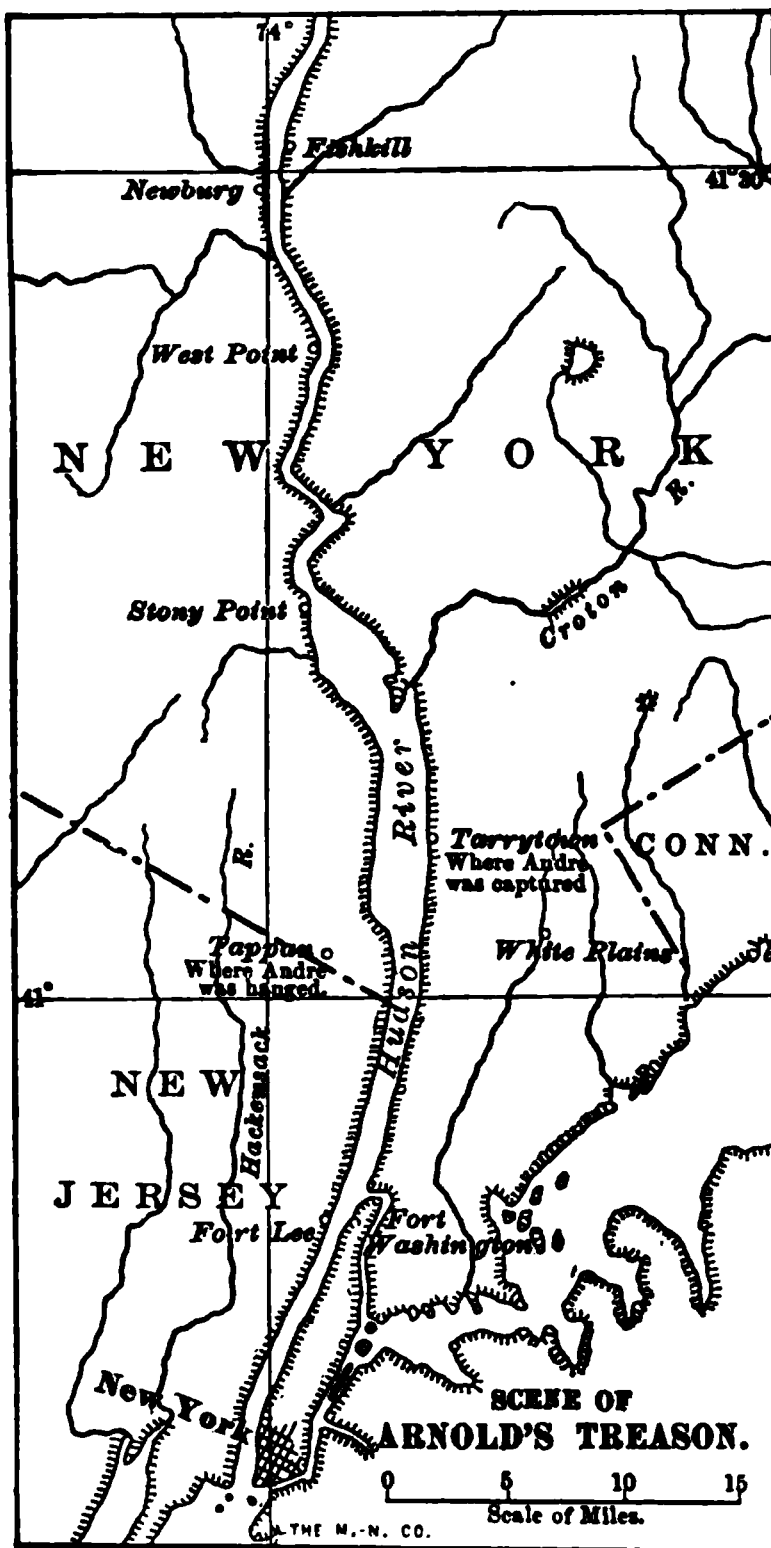
engage in active service, and requested that he

might be placed in command of the important po-

sition of West Point. Wash-

ington, suspecting nothing,

granted Arnold's request. The latter, no doubt, thought the American cause was hopeless. At any rate he was as eager for money as he was for revenge, and soon opened a treasonable correspondence with General Clinton, commanding the British troops in New York. The scheme was that Arnold should so dispose of his forces at West Point that this strong fort might easily fall into the British hands at a time agreed upon for an attack.







men lying in wait for any suspicious persons who might appear. They searched him, and finding the tell-tale papers, retained him as a prisoner. Arnold got the news of the capture in time to escape. André was tried by a fair-minded court-martial and was condemned to be hanged as a spy.

Arnold received for his treason a brigadiership and about \$30,000, but he spent the remainder of his life in dis-

grace, justly despised by Americans and Englishmen alike. He had care-

fully kept in his possession the old uniform in which he made his escape from West Point. Just before his death he called for this and put it on once more. "Let me die," said he, "in this old uniform in which I fought my battles. May God forgive me for ever putting on any other."

169. **Greene and Cornwallis.**—In the meantime the struggle between Greene and Cornwallis in the South

#### GENERAL NATHANIEL GREENE.

was going on. When Gates retired from the command of the armies of the South, General Greene was appointed by Congress to succeed him. On reaching the Carolinas (Decem-

ber 2, 1780) Greene had many difficulties to face. The British, now in control of Georgia and South Carolina, were about to overrun North Carolina also. Their army was in good condition and was led by such able officers as Cornwallis, Tarleton, and Rawdon. Greene's small forces were poorly armed, without pay and

be easy. Greene's radical policy had been very successful.

He had worn out the enemy and forced him to seek the coast for supplies.

Greene at once greatly disturbed Cornwallis's peace of mind by marching back to South Carolina. Again and again Greene was defeated, but he skilfully handled his troops and inflicted severe losses upon the enemy. Before the close of 1781 the British held, in the States south of Virginia, only the two seaports of Charleston and Savannah. Greene was bold, cautious, active, and persevering. He had outgeneralled Cornwallis, the ablest English commander, and shown himself second only to Washington in military genius.

**171. Cornwallis goes to Virginia.**—Cornwallis, disappointed in the South, and regarding Virginia as the great storehouse of the Southern armies, now marched northward to get control of that State. Here he found a considerable force of British sent there to keep the inhabitants from aiding the more southern States. Arnold had set fire to Richmond and had destroyed much property in other parts of Virginia. La Fayette was there with a body of troops to look after the interests of the Americans. When Cornwallis reached Virginia he tried to entrap La Fayette, but the wily young Frenchman was not to be caught.

Cornwallis then withdrew to Yorktown, where he could easily communicate with the English fleet. Clinton had ordered him to be in readiness to send reinforcements to New York in case the expected French fleet should co-operate with Washington in trying to capture that place.

**172.—Cornwallis, Entrapped at Yorktown, Surrenders.**—Up to this time the French army had not been of any real service to the American cause, nor had the French fleet given much *direct* aid. Now, however, both their land forces and their fleet were to help Washington in carrying out a bold plan. The latter, whose army was lying on the Hudson, had been joined the year before Cornwallis went to Yorktown by 6,000 fresh troops from France in command of Rochambeau. Clinton, who

CORNWALLIS'S SURRENDER AT YORKTOWN.



was at the head of the English forces in New York, hearing that a powerful French fleet was on its way with more land forces to America, feared, on its arrival, a combined attack by land and sea.

This had been the original plan, but when Washington learned that the fleet was on its way to the Chesapeake he withdrew from New York and began the execution of a brilliant movement. Leaving a small force on the Hudson he marched the rest of his army four hundred miles to reinforce La Fayette in Virginia and co-operate with the fleet in capturing Cornwallis. So secretly and skilfully did Washington make his plans that he had almost reached Maryland before Clinton found out what was going on.

Washington's  
brilliant  
movement.

Clinton at once sent a fleet to drive the French fleet away. He also sent Arnold to burn New London, Connecticut, hoping thus to draw Washington back. But the English fleet failed in its attack on the French, and Washington was not to be turned aside from his purpose. Rapidly marching to the Chesapeake he embarked his troops at Baltimore and Elkton, and united with La Fayette, who had already been reinforced by a French land force from the fleet. Cornwallis, entirely surrounded, saw but one chance of escape. That was by crossing the York River and making a rapid retreat northward. A violent storm upset his plans.

Cornwallis  
surrenders.

As his army of 8,000 was matched against an army of 16,000, to say nothing of the fleet, a successful resistance was hopeless. Therefore, after a siege of about three weeks he surrendered his army (October 19, 1781).

**173. The End of the War and the Treaty of Peace (1783).**—The Americans everywhere rejoiced. Congress, adjourning in a body, attended church to offer thanksgiving for the great victory. It was plain to Americans and Englishmen that Cornwallis's surrender must end the war. Peace commissioners from both countries were therefore appointed to agree upon a treaty of peace.

The French Government tried hard to confine the Amer-

icans to the region east of the Alleghanies. But the work of George Rogers Clark and other brave Westerners in conquering and settling the vast regions north and south of the Ohio, aided our commissioners in securing for American independence the territory lying between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, and between the Great Lakes and Florida. Florida was ceded back to Spain.

**George Rogers Clark and the West.**

George the Third's plan of personal government in America had failed. The Revolution secured independence in America; it overthrew the personal rule of George the Third in England. In 1784 young William Pitt had become the real head of the English Government, and Parliamentary reform was only a question of time.

**George the Third fails to carry out his plans.**

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Review the attempt on the part of the British, first, to subdue Massachusetts in 1775, and second, to get control of the Hudson River and the Middle States in 1776 and 1777. You will remember that there was but little fighting in 1778 and 1779.
2. Why did the British in 1780 turn their attention to conquering the South? Take note of their first successes there.
3. Explain why the Battle of King's Mountain was important.
4. What was the character of partisan warfare in the South? Look up facts about the Swamp Fox and his men. Subject for essay: Partisan warfare in the South.
5. What were the results of Arnold's trial by court-martial? What reason did he assign for requesting that he might be placed in command of the troops at West Point?
6. How was his treasonable scheme to be carried out? What part did André take in this scheme? Discuss Arnold's disgrace and death. Subject for essay: Arnold the traitor.
7. What were the difficulties of Greene when he succeeded Gates in the South? How did Morgan's brilliant victory at Cowpens play havoc with the plans of Cornwallis?
8. What was the condition of the English army after the Battle of Guilford Court House? What had been Greene's main purpose and how had he carried it out?

9. Why did Cornwallis go to Yorktown? What direct aid did the Americans now receive from the French fleet? Before its arrival what plans of attack upon the British had Washington made? What changes did he make in his plans after the arrival of the fleet?
10. Outline the events leading to the surrender of Cornwallis? What were its results?
11. Study carefully these topics: George Rogers Clark and the West; George the Third fails to carry out his plans.
12. Subject for debate: Resolved that Greene was a better general than Cornwallis. Subject for debate: Resolved that the capture of Burgoyne was a greater achievement than the capture of Cornwallis.
13. Read Simms's Partisan and the chapter on Arnold's treason in Coffin's Boys of '76. Memorize Bryant's Song of Marion's Men.



## CHAPTER XIV

### THE BREAKDOWN OF THE CONFEDERATION AND THE FORMATION OF THE CONSTITUTION (1781-1789)

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, IV.; **Fiske's** Critical Period of American History; **Fiske's** War of Independence; **Channing's** United States; **Hart's** Formation of the Union; **Fiske's** Civil Government.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Frothingham's** Rise of the Republic; **Hale's** Story of Massachusetts; **Johnston's** American Politics; **Hinsdale's** Old Northwest; **Lossing's** Field Book of the Revolution.

**174. Congress During the Revolution.**—When the colonies threw off the yoke of Great Britain it was necessary that they should have some central authority to guide them in establishing their independence. To meet this need they formed the Continental Congress, which assumed many of the duties of such a government. But Congress, as we have seen, labored with great difficulties because it had no power to compel obedience. Early in the Revolution the people had formed State governments. They felt more closely in touch with these and were extremely jealous of any authority interfering with local control. This feeling found marked expression in the Articles of Confederation—a plan of government outlined by a committee which Congress appointed in June, 1776.

**175. Weakness of Congress Under the Confederation.**—Under the Articles of Confederation, which did not go into effect until 1781 (see par. 180), Congress had but little power. It could declare war, but it could not raise or support an army. It could find out the amount of revenue needed for the expenses of carrying on the government, but it could not raise a dollar by taxation. In our own

State. Duties were levied on goods carried from one State

into another. For example, New York laid a duty on chickens, vegetables, and dairy products from New Jersey, and on firewood from Connecticut. New Jersey retaliated by laying a tax of \$1,800 a year upon a lighthouse which New York had erected on the New Jersey shore, and the merchants in Connecticut began to hold meetings for the purpose of stopping all trade with New York.

All such bickerings over inter-State trade made the States more jealous and unfriendly toward one another. And

Congress without power to regulate commerce. it is worthy of notice that all this

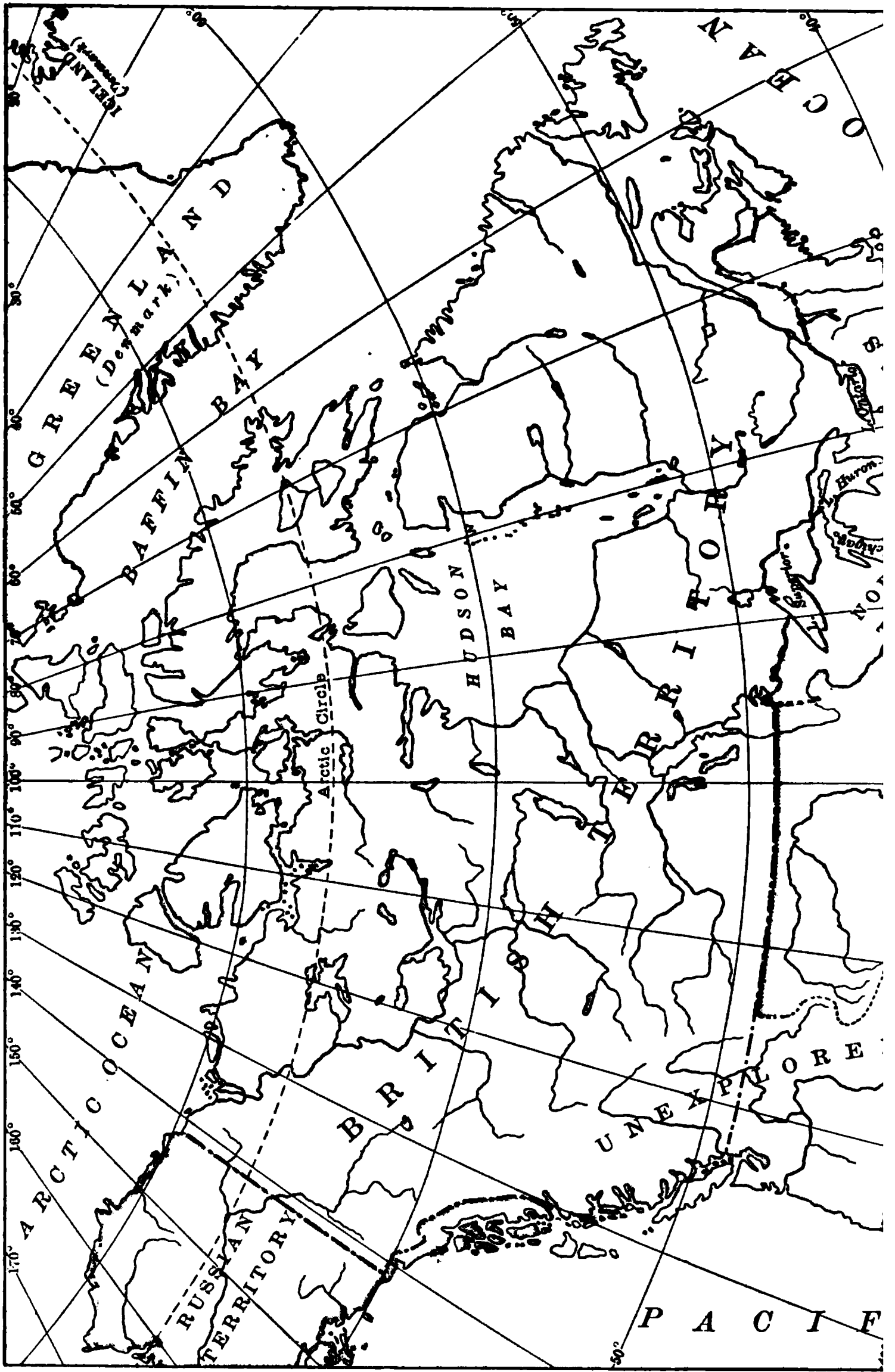
increase of selfishness, the continuation of which could only result in civil war and the political ruin of the Confederation, was brought about by the inability of Congress to regulate commerce. But there were other commercial difficulties of a serious nature.

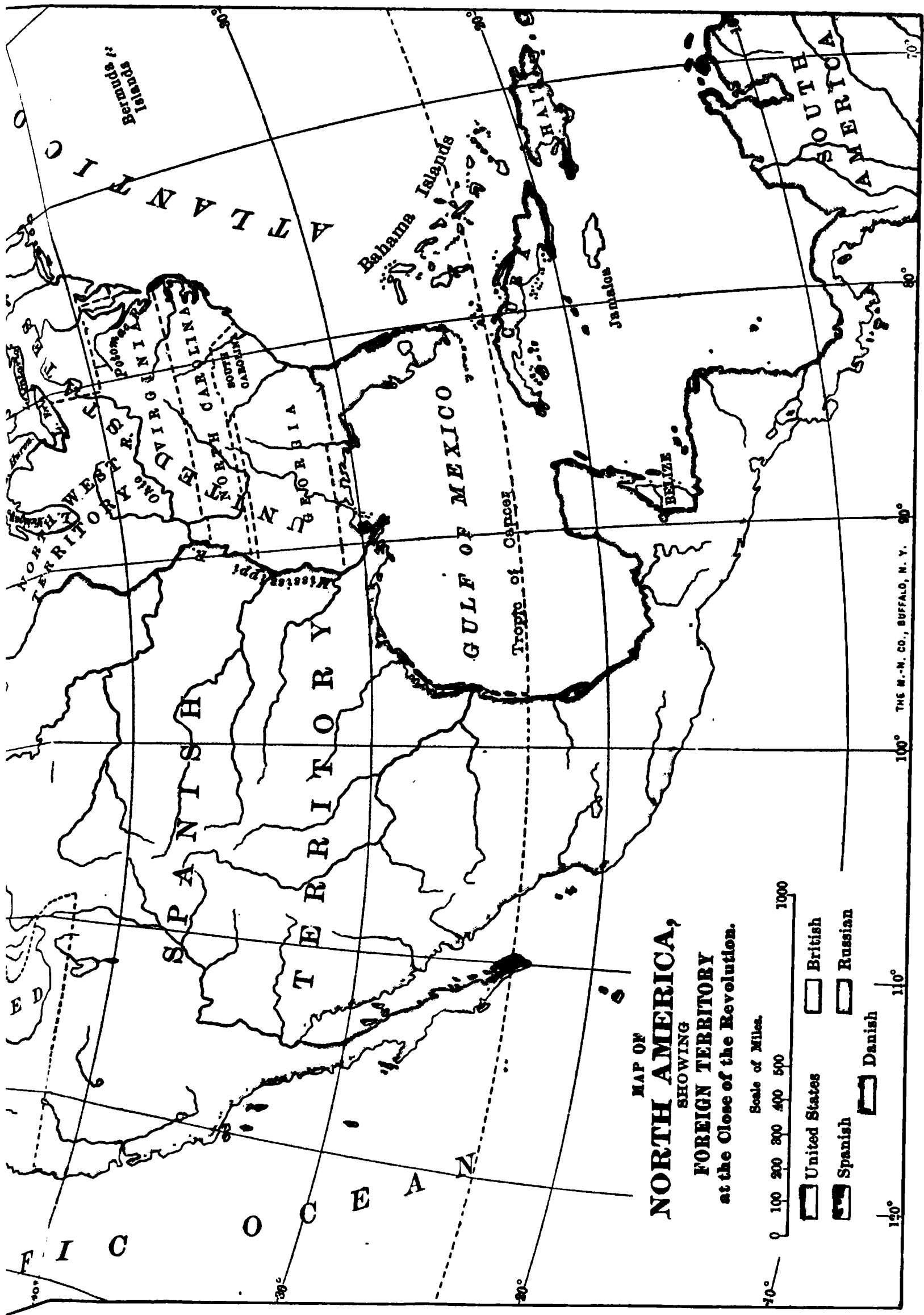
NEW HAMPSHIRE BILL OF FORTY SHILLINGS, 1742.

**178. Financial Difficulties of the Confederation.**—After the Revolution our imports, which had to be paid for in specie, were so much more than our exports, that the country was soon drained of nearly all its gold and silver. Congress was in great need of money, and there was financial distress throughout the country.

**179. Shays's Rebellion.**—Business depression steadily continued to grow worse. People were in debt, their taxes were heavy, and they could not get money for what they had to sell. The consequence was that nearly all the States












MAP OF  
NORTH AMERICA,  
SHOWING  
FOREIGN TERRITORY  
at the Close of the Revolution.

Scale of Miles.  
0 100 200 300 400 500 1000

 United States	 British
 Spanish	 Russian
 Danish	

100° THE M.-N. CO., BUFFALO, N. Y. 90°







abandoned. The four States having yielded their claims, she signed the articles in 1781.

In taking this position Maryland was doing a great service to the whole country. The common possession of the Northwest Territory by the thirteen States helped to hold the States together. They all had an equal interest in this extensive region, whose land

Results of common ownership.

#### THE PRESIDENT'S CHAIR IN THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION.

sales would enable the Confederation to get money enough to pay all its debts.

**181. The Ordinance of 1787.**—The outcome of the dispute concerning this common ownership was the ordinance of 1787, which was the most important measure passed by the Confederation. This ordinance provided for the government of the Northwest Territory, and for dividing it into five States. Education was to be encouraged and there was to be religious freedom. Although runaway slaves were to be returned to their masters, slavery was to be forever prohibited. This ordinance was passed by Congress in 1787, the year of the formation of the Constitution.

**182. Events Leading to the Constitutional Convention.**—The many commercial and financial difficulties ending in



Virginia met to adopt some regulations for the use of this river by the two States (1785). When the Virginia Legislature adopted the commissioners' report, they also voted to invite all the States to send delegates to a convention the following year. This convention was to consider commercial regulations for the whole country. As delegates

**The conference at Annapolis.** from only five States met at this conference, held at Annapolis in 1786, it did not seem worth while to discuss the business for which they were called together. But before adjourning, they recommended that delegates from all the States should meet to consider the Articles of Confederation and make them adequate to the needs of the country.

All the States except Rhode Island appointed some of their ablest men as delegates to the convention, which met in Philadelphia (May 25, 1787), and remained in secret session almost four months. Washington was presiding officer of this convention, which framed the Constitution<sup>1</sup> for the

**The Constitution ratified.** New Federal Union. The adoption of the Constitution required its ratification by nine States. When the ninth State ratified it on June 21, 1788, preparations were immediate<sup>1</sup> made for the organization of the new government.

**183. Supporters and Opponents of the Constitution.—**There was much opposition to the Constitution from men who honestly believed that too much power was given to the national government. These men believed that the States should have most of the power, as under the Confederation. Because they opposed the Federal Constitution they were called Anti-

**The Federalists and the Anti-Federalists.**

<sup>1</sup>*Slavery Compromises in the Constitution.*—In appointing representatives in Congress from each State, some of the Southern States wished all the slaves to be counted. The Northern States opposed the counting of any of the slaves. Finally, it was agreed that in deciding the number of representatives from any slave State three-fifths of the slaves should be counted. The North, or commercial part of the country, wished the national government to have power to regulate commerce, but the South feared this power might be used to prohibit the slave trade. At last it was voted that Congress should have full control of commerce, but that importation of slaves should not be stopped before 1808.



1775. *June 15*, WASHINGTON APPOINTED COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF. *June 17*, BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.  
*November 12*, MONTREAL TAKEN BY MONTGOMERY—ARNOLD'S MARCH TO QUEBEC.  
*December 30*, DANIEL BOONE SETTLES IN KENTUCKY.
1776. *January 1*, UNION FLAG RAISED AT CAMBRIDGE, MASS.  
*February 27*, BATTLE OF MOORE'S CREEK BRIDGE.  
*June*, ARRIVAL OF BRITISH FLEET IN NEW YORK BAY. *June 28*, ATTACK ON FORT SULLIVAN, CHARLESTON, S. C.  
*July 4*, DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE BY CONGRESS.  
*August 27*, BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.  
*September 15*, AMERICANS ABANDON NEW YORK.  
*October 28*, BATTLE OF WHITE PLAINS.  
*November 16*, SURRENDER OF FORT WASHINGTON.  
*December 26*, BATTLE OF TRENTON.
1777. *January 3*, BATTLE OF PRINCETON.  
*June 14*, FLAG OF STARS AND STRIPES ADOPTED BY CONGRESS.  
*July 6*, BURGOYNE CAPTURES TICONDEROGA.  
*August 6*, BATTLE OF ORISKANY. *August 16*, BATTLE OF BENNINGTON.  
*September 11*, BATTLE OF BRANDYWINE.  
*October 4*, BATTLE OF GERMANTOWN. *October 17*, SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE. HOWE OCCUPIES PHILADELPHIA.
1778. CONWAY CABAL.  
 ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE.  
*May*, CLARK'S EXPEDITION TO ILLINOIS.  
*July*, ATTACK ON WYOMING. *June 18*, BRITISH LEAVE PHILADELPHIA.  
*June 28*, BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.  
*July*, ARRIVAL OF FRENCH FLEET UNDER D'ESTAING.  
*December 29*, SAVANNAH TAKEN BY THE BRITISH.
1779. *September 22*, FIGHT BETWEEN THE *BONHOMME RICHARD* AND THE *SERAPIS*. SULLIVAN'S EXPEDITION AGAINST THE IROQUOIS.
1780. *May*, CAPTURE OF CHARLESTON BY THE BRITISH.  
*August 16*, BATTLE OF CAMDEN.  
*September*, ARNOLD'S TREASON.
1781. *January 17*, BATTLE OF COWPENS.  
*March 15*, BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURTHOUSE.  
*September 8*, BATTLE OF EUTAW SPRINGS.  
*October 19*, CORNWALLIS'S SURRENDER AT YORKTOWN.
1782. *November 30*, PRELIMINARY TREATY OF PEACE SIGNED.
1783. *September 3*, FINAL TREATY OF PEACE WITH GREAT BRITAIN SIGNED.  
*November 25*, EVACUATION OF NEW YORK.  
*December 4*, WASHINGTON TAKES LEAVE OF HIS OFFICERS.
1784. JEFFERSON'S NORTHWEST ORDINANCE PROPOSED.
1786. SHAYS'S REBELLION.
1787. NORTHWEST TERRITORY ORGANIZED, AND ORDINANCE ADOPTED.  
*May 25*, CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION MET AT PHILADELPHIA.  
*September 17*, CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES SIGNED BY THE DELEGATES.
1788. *June 21*, CONSTITUTION RATIFIED BY NEW HAMPSHIRE, SECURING ITS ADOPTION.

the first President. He stood for no party, but was the

<sup>1</sup>George Washington, first President of the United States (1789-1797), was born in Westmoreland County, Va., February 22, 1732, and died at Mount Vernon

choice of all the people, and he received the unanimous vote of the Presidential electors.<sup>2</sup> John Adams, of Massa-

#### THE SITE OF WASHINGTON'S BIRTHPLACE.

chusetts, was elected Vice-President. The inauguration had been planned for the first Wednesday in March, but

December 14, 1799. When he was eleven years old his father died, leaving the youth in care of a faithful and devoted mother. While at school George was painstaking and careful with his work, and excelled in such athletic sports as running, leaping, and wrestling. He was so true to himself and to others that he often acted as a judge in deciding disputes between his young friends. In 1759 he married a rich young widow, Mrs. Martha Custis, whose property, added to his own large estates at Mount Vernon, made him a man of much wealth. His bravery, patriotism, and military skill, as shown in the Last French War, led to his being chosen by the Continental Congress as Commander-in-chief of the American troops during the Revolution. By reason of his modesty he shrank from this service, for which he was admirably fitted. He refused to receive any pay during the entire Revolution. It may indeed be truly said that he proved himself indispensable to the success of the Americans in that war. He was a man of commanding presence and dignified manner. His success lay not in intellectual brilliancy, but in a well-balanced judgment, in a belief that right made might, and in a rare power of winning men's confidence.

<sup>2</sup> Under Section I., Article II., of the Constitution, may be found the following:

"Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of *Electors* equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives

travelling was so slow in those days that it was impossible for Congress to meet and count the electoral votes in time

MOUNT VERNON, WASHINGTON'S HOME, FROM THE FRONT.

to have the inauguration before April 30. New York City was the capital of the country.

The inauguration at Federal Hall was very impressive. The oath of office was solemnly taken, and the chancellor of New York, who had given it, then turned to the people and cried, "Long live George Washington, President of the United States!" The cry was taken up by the throng, who, amid their joyous shouts, had escorted Washington from his house in New York to Federal Hall on his way to deliver his first inaugural. The inauguration.

**185. The Number and Distribution of the People.**—According to the census of 1790 the population of the United States was nearly 4,000,000 souls, about one-fifth of whom were negroes. Most of the people resided in the

to which the State may be entitled in the Congress." The people in the various States vote for these Presidential electors. The latter, called when taken together the Electoral College, vote directly for President and Vice-President.



thirteen original States, not more than five per cent. being found west of the Alleghanies. The belt of settlement extended from Maine to Florida, with an average width of two hundred and fifty-five miles. The most densely peopled regions were on the coast of Massachusetts, of southern New England, and of New York. Other well-settled regions included the Hudson River val-

Well-settled  
regions.

WASHINGTON'S RECEPTION ON THE BRIDGE AT TRENTON, N. J., ON HIS WAY  
TO BE INAUGURATED.

ley as far as Albany, the Mohawk valley, the route now followed by the Pennsylvania Railroad from New York across New Jersey to Philadelphia, and the river valleys of eastern Virginia.

Virginia ranked first in population, having 532,000 inhabitants. Massachusetts and Pennsylvania, with about 330,000 each, stood next. There were no large cities. The principal commercial centres were Philadelphia, with about 31,000; New York, with 23,000; Boston, with 15,000; Baltimore, with

Five principal  
commercial  
centres.

daily carry mail in less than six hours from New York to Boston, but in Washington's time a postman carried the

mail on horseback from New York to Boston three times a week in summer and twice in winter. It required six days to make the trip in summer and nine in winter. A pair of saddle-bags sufficed to carry all the mail between these two commercial centres. The postman carried mail from New York to Philadelphia five times a week, and was two days

in making the journey. In regions remote from business

centres  
The post-rider. an old

man was often made post-rider. While his horse jogged leisurely along he would while away the lonely hours in knitting socks and mittens or in opening and reading the letters in the mail-bag.

These clumsy methods of travel and communication kept the people ignorant of those parts of the country which were not near them. The Massa-

POSTAL PROGRESS IN THE UNITED STATES,  
1776-1876.

chusetts citizen knew very little about the citizen of South Carolina, and neither understood the other. Under such conditions there was much foolish prejudice in each State against people in other States, and but little attachment to the Union. We see, therefore, that the patriotism of those days was a State patriotism rather than a national patriotism.

Lack of national  
patriotism.

189. Washington's Formality.—The Federalists in-

March 12<sup>th</sup> 1744/5

Age 13.

Geo Washington

---

Beginning the Eleventh Day of November 1749—

Age 17.

W Washington

---

I am Sir, Y<sup>r</sup> Most Obed. Serv<sup>t</sup>

Age 25.

Fort Loudoun

10<sup>th</sup> Sept<sup>r</sup> 1757

G Washington

---

Y<sup>r</sup> Most affect<sup>d</sup> Brother,

Age 44.

G Washington

New York 29<sup>th</sup> of April 1776.

Four days before his death. Age 67.

---

Mount Vernon G Washington  
December 10<sup>th</sup>  
1799

HOW WASHINGTON SIGNED HIS NAME AT VARIOUS AGES.

cluded much the larger part of the wealthy and commercial classes, and were especially strong in the cities. They

**Aristocratic feelings of the Federalists.**

were aristocratic in their feelings and were inclined to imitate English social and official customs. Believing in a strong central government, they wished the Presidential office to be one of great dignity. Washington had seen something of the pomp and

state of the royal governor's court in Virginia, and it seems to have appealed to his sense of fitness. He therefore surrounded himself with much ceremony. On state occasions he rode in a coach drawn by six horses, and on ordinary occasions in a coach drawn by four horses. When walking on the street he was followed at a respectful distance by a body servant in livery. Every Tuesday afternoon, from three to four, he held at the executive mansion a public recep-

JOHN JAY.

tion, when he appeared in court dress, with powdered hair, Washington at a dress-sword at his side, and a cocked hat public receptions. under his arm. Standing with his right hand behind him, he bowed formally as his guests were presented. Moreover, he allowed his birthday to be celebrated. These things greatly displeased many people, who charged Washington with the desire to become king. They wished the



first find its footing in a firm financial policy. Alexander Hamilton had a wonderful insight and clear understanding in money matters, and he brought his sound judgment to the support of the new government. He knew that the only way of gaining credit is by paying honest debts. He therefore recommended that the

Hamilton's financial policy.

United States assume in full all the debts of the Confederation, both foreign and domestic. In regard to the foreign debt, Congress readily assented. After some discussion, it voted to pay also the domestic debt, or that owed to American citizens.

But Hamilton was a very conservative man. He clung to old principles of government. He wished to establish a government of whose strength the nation need not be ashamed. In his plan for building up the nation's credit, therefore,

ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

he proposed that, besides its own debts, or the debts which had been handed down from the Confederation, the United States should assume the debts of the separate States. The Union would thus establish a supremacy over the separate States. As the State debts were mostly loans from wealthy Americans, these influential citizens would be attached as creditors to the Union. They would become directly interested in building up its financial credit. They would work to make the central government strong by giving it a large taxing power with which to obtain a revenue to pay its debts.

He recommends the payment of the State debts by the United States.

This part of the plan was novel and unexpected, and greatly alarmed the followers of Jefferson. They believed that the States should do a large part of the governing. They dreaded more than all else a strong central government, because they feared it might lead to a monarchy. They accused Hamilton of trying to rob the people of their rights by placing

Jefferson's followers opposed the payment of the State debts.

#### A MOUNTAIN STILL.

them under the rule of a king. Accordingly, the followers of Jefferson opposed the payment of the State debts by the United States, and after a bitter struggle defeated Hamilton's scheme by a narrow majority.

Later, however, in return for an agreement to locate the new capital, Washington, upon the banks of the Potomac, the Jeffersonians conceded the assumption of the State debts to the followers of Hamilton.

Washington made the capital.



The measure proved one of the wisest policies ever adopted. It was a brilliant example of Hamilton's far-seeing statesmanship.

**193. A Tariff Laid on Foreign Trade.**—How to raise the money to pay all these debts was a serious question. At its first session, Congress laid an indirect tax upon vessels and certain kinds of goods coming into this country from foreign ports. This tax, or tariff, was not only for the

purpose of raising a revenue, but also for protecting the young manufactories springing up at various points in the United States. As this

Tax on spirituous liquors. tariff did not yield revenue

enough for the country's need, a direct tax was laid later on spirituous liquors (1794). Direct taxes are not generally popular, and this one was no exception. It was an unpleasant reminder of the Stamp Act. We need not be surprised, therefore, that

ELI WHITNEY.

resistance was offered to this direct tax imposed by the new government.

**194. The Whiskey Rebellion (1794).**—The people of western Pennsylvania lived so far from business centres, which they could reach only by poor roads, that it was very expensive for them to transport their grain to market. There was more profit in making the grain into whiskey, which was much less bulky than the grain from which it was made. As the tax levied upon the whiskey lessened the profit of the farmers, they regarded this tax as unjust. They therefore refused to pay it, and severely handled officers sent by the Government to see that it was enforced. The people rose in arms to resist the law, but Washington promptly sent a body of troops, which easily put down the insurrection.



culture became highly profitable. The general belief had been that slavery would gradually die out all over the country. It did not pay in the North, where there were no large plantations, and in that region it was already disappearing. But now the cotton-growers in the South and the owners of cotton-mills in the North had a selfish interest in the institution. For the owners of cotton-mills, like the planters, made money on the ever-increasing demand for cotton, the price of which had been greatly lessened by the cotton-gin. They all thought that cotton-raising could not be carried on successfully without slave-labor. Hence the demand from this time forward for more and more slaves in the cotton States.

**Results of the  
invention of the  
cotton-gin.**

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Note the fact that Washington was President for two terms, 1789-1797.
2. With your map before you, study carefully the distribution of the people in 1790. Why did the people live mainly along rivers or on the coast?
3. Try to form vivid mental pictures of travel by the old stage-coach. How was the mail carried in 1790? How did the clumsy methods of travel and communication affect the attitude of the people in one State toward the people of another State? On all these topics McMaster's History, I., will repay careful reading.
4. What classes of people were included in the Federalists? Discuss Washington's formality.
5. What is meant by the Cabinet?
6. "Shall the Federal Government be supreme over the States?" What answer did Hamilton give? Jefferson? You may well keep this great question in mind, for it will come up again and again in the subsequent periods of our history. As you will find later, disagreement about the answer led at last to Civil War. What is meant by "strict construction" of the Constitution?
7. What was Hamilton's financial policy? Why did he urge that the United States should assume the debts of the separate States? Why did Jefferson's followers oppose this part of Hamilton's plan?
8. Which do you think was right in his attitude toward the State debts, Hamilton or Jefferson? Give reasons for your answer.

the entire period from 1/09 to the close of the year of

1812 was one of anxiety for the well-wishers of the republic. During all these years the American people were engaged in a struggle similar to the American Revolution. In the earlier struggle they were fighting to become independent of England; in the later they were striving to become independent of Europe. This later period culminated in the War of 1812, which has been rightly called the Second War of Independence. But from the beginning of Washington's administration the struggle over commercial or other difficulties was pressing.

**From 1789 to 1815 the Americans struggle for independence of Europe.**

**197. Influence of the French Revolution upon American Affairs.**—The same year that Washington became President was also the first year of the French Revolution.

**The French Revolution.**

The people of France had been so oppressively taxed and otherwise misgoverned that they were at last ready to resort to violence against the French monarchy. They tore down the gloomy prison called the Bastille and afterward put to death the king and queen. In the "reign of terror" that followed thousands of men and women were guillotined. To add to the confusion, the French Republic was soon at war with neighboring countries. She declared war with England in 1793.

Hamilton and his followers took the side of England; Jefferson and his supporters sympathized with the French revolutionists. As France had helped us in the American

**Washington refuses to aid France.**

Revolution, the French claimed that we ought to help them in their struggle for freedom. At first Washington and the Hamiltonians, with gratitude to France for aid given us in the American Revolution, felt a warm interest; but later, when the revolutionists had resorted to extreme violence to carry out their plans Hamilton began to regard them with great distrust. Besides, Washington agreed with Hamilton in the belief that we were too weak to become involved in European wars, and he therefore issued a proclamation of neutrality.

**198. Citizen Genet Defies Washington.**—The new French Government, the Directory, knowing that many Americans were in sympathy with the French revolution-



**200. Political Parties.**—Originally, as we have seen, those supporting the Constitution were called Federalists, and those opposing it Anti-Federalists. After the Constitution went into effect, the Federalists, under the lead of Alexander Hamilton, favored a strong central government, while the Anti-Federalists, under the lead of Jefferson, wished the States to have most of the powers of government. The Jeffersonians called themselves Republicans, but since Jefferson's followers favored the French revolutionists, the Federalists called them Democrats, after the French Democrats. A little later they became known as Democratic-Republicans. In Andrew Jackson's administration they were called Democrats, and the name has remained till the present time.

**201. The "X Y Z Papers."**

—Our trouble with France

The French angry about the Jay treaty. was by no means settled by the recall of Genet.

JOHN ADAMS.

When the Jay treaty with England was ratified, the

French were so angry that they sent home our minister and recalled their own from the United States. French cruisers openly attacked our merchant vessels. The country was too weak for war, and President Adams<sup>1</sup> wished to avoid one if possible.

<sup>1</sup> John Adams, second President of the United States (1797-1801), was born at Braintree, Massachusetts, in 1735, and died July 4, 1826. After graduating from Harvard he became a lawyer. He was a prominent member of the Continental Congress, and proposed Washington for commander-in-chief of the American troops. Being an eloquent advocate of independence he did much to bring about a political separation from England. He was one of the three commissioners who negotiated a treaty of peace with Great Britain at the close of the Revolution and afterward became the first American minister to England. His honesty and courage won the

The French having promised to receive an embassy with honor, President Adams sent over three envoys, John Marshall, afterward Chief Justice, Charles Pinckney, and Elbridge Gerry, to set things right. Upon their arrival they were not received with respect. They were boldly informed that peace with France could be secured only on two conditions: (1) That a large sum of money should be paid to members of the Directory; and (2) that an additional sum should be loaned to France for carrying on her wars. The papers reporting to Congress these shameful propositions were signed, not by the names of the secret agents representing the French Government, but by the letters X Y Z. Hence they were called the "X Y Z Papers." Pinckney's indignant reply was, "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute," and this became a rallying cry throughout the United States.

Congress organized an army and put Washington at the head of it. In the meantime, the French continued to capture our vessels, and seized a thousand of them. Serious trouble with France. Soon a state of war existed on the sea, where Commodore Truxton defeated and captured two French frigates.<sup>1</sup> These defeats recalled France from her insolent attitude, and when President Adams again sent over envoys, Napoleon Bonaparte, who was then at the head of affairs, made things satisfactory to this country.

**202. Alien and Sedition Laws (1798).**—These difficulties with France stirred the patriotic feelings of our peo-

admiration of his friends, but his obstinacy and lack of tact involved him in many quarrels.

John Adams was inaugurated at Philadelphia, which had taken the place of New York as the seat of government. During his term of office, in 1800, Washington became the capital.

<sup>1</sup> Out of the excitement that thrilled the people the song "Hail, Columbia" sprang. The words were written by a lawyer of Philadelphia, Joseph Hopkinson, and set to the music of the march composed for Washington's inauguration. "Hail, Columbia" was first sung at a theatre in Philadelphia. The applause was tremendous. Men rose to their feet, throwing their hats into the air, and women vigorously waved their handkerchiefs. Again and again the audience called for the noble song until it had been sung nine times. In a few weeks "Hail, Columbia" was sung by thousands of enthusiastic Americans.



ple and for a time strengthened the Federalist party. Its leaders went too far, however, when they passed the Alien and Sedition Laws. Many of the Democratic-Republican newspapers were under the influence of Frenchmen who had come to live in the United States. These men used their papers to make bitter and slanderous attacks upon President Adams and the government. Naturally the Federalists, with their leanings toward a strong central govern-

ment, believed that such attacks weakened the Union by lessening the respect of the people for it. They therefore passed the Alien Law, which gave the President power to send out of the country any foreigner whom he might think dangerous to its peace. The Sedition Law gave him power to fine or imprison any one who might conspire against the government, or publish anything evil against it.

JOHN MARSHALL.

This law violated the first Amendment to the Constitution by interfering with the freedom of the press, and aroused the Democratic-Republicans to a high state of indignation. They said such laws were tyrannical and proved the desire of the Federal leaders for something like a monarchy. The Virginia Resolutions, written by Madison, and the Kentucky Resolutions, written by Jefferson, expressed their dislike of the Alien and Sedition Laws. These Resolutions not only declared the laws to be unconstitutional, but the Kentucky Resolutions went so far as to say that a State might rightfully nullify any act passed by Congress that was not constitutional. Nullifying a law is declaring it not binding, and therefore nullification is a most dangerous doctrine; for if each State should reserve the right to refuse obedience to

*The Virginia and the Kentucky Resolutions (1798-1799).*

any law which in its judgment violates the Constitution, that document would in time be worth as little as the paper it is written on, and the Federal Union would fall to pieces.

**203. Chief Justice Marshall's Influence in Strengthening the Federal Union.**—That this result was not brought about was largely due to the influence of one man. Just before going out of office in 1801, President Adams appointed John Marshall,<sup>1</sup> of Virginia, as Chief Justice of the Supreme Court. He heartily believed in the liberal construction of the Constitution, and for thirty-five years his decisions as Chief Justice of the Supreme Court had great influence in making the general government superior to the States in all questions affecting the common interests of the whole people. It has well been said of him: "He found the Constitution paper, and made it power; he found it a skeleton, and clothed it with flesh and blood."

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Review the significance of the following dates: 1492, 1588, 1689. Now add to these 1789. Why is it significant? Can you think of any reason for the lack of national feeling among the Americans in 1789?
2. Look up the causes of the French Revolution in Coffin's Building the Nation.
3. Why was the entire period from 1789 to 1815 one of trial and anxiety for the Young Republic? Do not forget these dates.
4. Why did the French Revolutionists maintain that we should aid them in their war with England? What did Washington think of aiding them? Was he right or wrong? Give reasons for your answer.
5. What difficulties did we have with England? Why was Jay's treaty unsatisfactory to a large part of the American people? Do you like it or not? Give reasons for your answer.

<sup>1</sup> John Marshall was a great American, and left his impress upon the government as few men have done. His personal appearance was striking. He was tall and slender, with black hair and small eyes. Simple in dress and modest in manner, his warm heart won the truest friendship of those who knew him. With rare grasp of mind and greatness of purpose, he labored to make the Union strong.

6. Review the origin of the Federalist and the Anti-Federalist parties. What were these parties now called? What was the principal difference between them?
7. How did the French indicate their anger about the Jay treaty? Explain clearly the "X Y Z Papers." What recalled France from her insolent attitude toward the Americans? At this time John Adams, our second President, was in office. He served one term, 1797-1801.
8. What facts led the Federalists to pass the Alien and Sedition laws? What were these laws? What were the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions? Mark them well. They were a significant and dangerous step toward the nullification and secession movements of later years.
9. What kind of man was Chief Justice Marshall? Memorize the quotation which well indicates the work of this remarkable man, the greatest chief justice we have ever had.
10. If you will read Martineau's *Peasant and Prince* you will have clear ideas about the leading facts of the French Revolution.

#### SETTLEMENT OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

204. Thomas Jefferson, the Democratic - Republican Leader, becomes President.<sup>1</sup>—Before beginning to discuss the settlement of the Mississippi valley let us consider for a moment a statesman whose greatest act was the purchase of Louisiana, a large part of this valley. That statesman was Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, who became the third President (March 4, 1801).<sup>2</sup> Up to that time the national

<sup>1</sup> Thomas Jefferson, third President of the United States (1801-1809), was born at Shadwell, Virginia, in 1743, and died at Monticello, Virginia, July 4, 1826. At seventeen years of age he entered the College of William and Mary, where he was an earnest student. He afterward became one of the most learned men of his times, being known as the "Sage of Monticello." He was also a daring horseman and an excellent violinist. After graduating from college he studied law and soon exercised a large influence over the politics of his State and his country. He was elected a member of the Continental Congress and, as chairman of the committee to draft the Declaration of Independence, wrote practically all of that remarkable document. At the end of his Presidential term of office he retired to his beautiful home, Monticello, where he spent the remaining years of his life.

<sup>2</sup> The Presidential election for a successor to John Adams caused much bitter feeling between the two political parties. The Federalists cast their votes for John Adams and C. C. Pinckney; the Republicans for Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr. As the two latter each received seventy-three electoral votes neither was



simple in dress and manner and mingle freely with the people. In his "red waistcoat, yarn stockings, and slippers down at the heel," he presented a striking contrast to the courtly appearance of Washington.

On the day of his inauguration he went on foot to the Capitol, in his ordinary dress, escorted by a number of his political friends.<sup>1</sup> It became his custom, when visiting the Capitol, to ride on a horse, which he tied with his own hands before entering. He did not hold weekly receptions, but he entertained hospitably, and allowed persons wishing to see him to call at any time. Though the Federalists did not believe it best for men of all classes and conditions to vote, Jefferson, because of his great faith in the people, was an advocate of universal manhood suffrage. We need not be surprised, then, to learn that he became the idol of the masses.

THOMAS JEFFERSON.

**206. Pioneers in the Mississippi Valley before the Revolution.**—We have seen how Boone, Clarke, Sevier, and Robertson were leaders among the pioneers who went from Virginia and the Carolinas across the mountains before the Revolution and made settlements in Kentucky and Tennessee. Their only roads were the forest-trail and the river; their only means of travel and transportation the pack-horse and the canoe. Daring and full of the spirit of adventure, they relied quite as much upon the rifle as upon the axe and the

The pack-horse  
and the forest-  
trail.

<sup>1</sup> Henry Adams, in Vol. I., pp. 190, 191, of his *History of the United States*, denies the truth of the story that on the day of his inauguration "Jefferson rode on horseback to the Capitol and, after hitching his horse to the palings, went in to take his oath."



**208. The Flatboat and the Ohio River.**—Soon after the ordinance of 1787 was adopted, and the fertile region lying between the Ohio and the Mississippi was opened for settlement, population began to stream westward.

Westward  
emigration.

Yankees from New England, Scotch from New York, and Germans from Pennsylvania formed the

bulk of this second emigration to the West. This wave of migration was greatly accelerated by the use of the flatboat, which could be employed as soon as the Ohio River was reached. By means of the flatboat the settler could carry many more goods than with the pack-horse. He could also travel much more rapidly, especially when going with the current. For this reason it was natural that this westward movement should follow the lines of the

KENTUCKY PIONEERS DESCENDING THE RIVER IN  
A CANOE.

Ohio and the streams flowing into it from the north. Along their banks such towns as Marietta, Cincinnati, and Louisville rapidly sprang up.

**209. Twofold Use of Rivers.**—The rivers were valuable, not only for bringing the new settlers to their homes, but also as highways for their trade. The settlers could not profitably carry their bulky produce, such as corn-

General, fought the French troops with desperate heroism.



Although he was taken prisoner, yellow fever finished the work which he had begun. Many thousand French soldiers perished, and the island was not subdued. The French army for Louisiana detained at San Domingo. The army intended for the support of the colonists in Louisiana never reached New Orleans. War between France and England was again about to break out and Napoleon was too busy in Europe to think of colonizing America.

#### AN OHIO RIVER FLAT-BOAT.

**212. Alarm in the United States.**—When the Americans found that Louisiana had again passed into the hands of France they were alarmed. It was bad enough to have the territory colonized by feeble Spain. It was far worse to have for a neighbor a dangerous rival like France. This feeling was especially prevalent among the settlers west of the Alleghanies. Their alarm was increased when they learned that the Spanish authorities at New Orleans had refused to let them float their products to that town and

1803, for \$15,000,000, the immense Louisiana territory, a

larger area than the United States of that day contained.<sup>1</sup> By this purchase Jefferson was taking much greater liberties with the Constitution than the Federalists had ever done. His action was directly contrary to the teachings of his party. He realized this, but the purchase was so plainly for the interests of the people that he felt justified in making it.

The purchase proved to be the greatest act of his administration and had four important results: (1) It kept France from planting colonies which would be our near neighbors; (2) it prevented England from getting possession of the territory by treaty with France; (3) it gave us the control of the Mississippi River; (4) it added much to the strength of the national government.

**Results of the purchase.**

Singularly enough, Jefferson, the writer of the Kentucky Resolutions, boldly did that for which the Constitution made no express provision. The Federalists declared the purchase to be unconstitutional, and many people opposed it on the ground that we already had territory enough. But the great majority, especially in the West, warmly applauded Jefferson's course.

**Jefferson's bold action.**

**214. Lewis and Clarke's Expedition through the Louisiana Territory to the Pacific (1804-1806).**—Jefferson, wishing to learn the character of the Louisiana country, sent out an expedition of thirty men under Lewis and Clarke to explore it. The party started from St. Louis in 1804, and travelled in boats to the head-waters of the Missouri, nearly three thousand miles from its mouth. Here they procured horses from some Indians, made their way over the mountains, and again taking to boats, floated down the Columbia River<sup>2</sup> to the Pacific. After nearly two years and a half, the party returned with a most interesting account of their

<sup>1</sup> Before 1803 the area of the United States was 827,844 square miles. The Louisiana purchase added 1,171,931 square miles to this area.

<sup>2</sup> In accordance with Jefferson's long cherished desire this expedition was designed *primarily* to explore the Missouri River to its source and then by the easiest route to reach and explore some river flowing into the Pacific Ocean.

experiences. Besides giving the American people some idea of the vast extent and great wealth of the Louisiana purchase, Lewis and Clarke's expedition gave the United States a basis for claiming the Oregon Country some years later.

Results of the expedition.

**215. War with the Barbary States (1801-1815).**—In the year 1801, the attention of the American people was suddenly drawn toward the East. The Barbary States included the petty Moorish powers of Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, on the northern coast of Africa. For some time their pirates had been seriously disturbing Amer-

LEWIS AND CLARKE AT THE COLUMBIA RIVER.  
*From a contemporary engraving.*

ican commerce in the Mediterranean. They captured and destroyed our vessels, confiscated the cargoes, and made slaves of the crews. In many cases large sums were paid to ransom Americans from slavery.

Like the various nations of Europe, the United States had been protecting her commerce by paying tribute to these Barbary States. But the pirates grew continually more aggressive. Tripoli became so insolent that finally the United States declared war against that country (1802). By 1805, Tripoli was forced by our navy to make peace, and to stop interfering with our commerce. For some years the Barbary pirates did not interfere with American vessels, but it was not till 1815 that their attacks were entirely suppressed. The war with these states had two good results: (1) It forced Jefferson to increase the navy; (2) it was a training-school by which our officers and seamen greatly profited in the War of 1812.

War with Tripoli.

Results of war with the Barbary States.

The war with the Barbary States brought the young republic into a more prominent position in the eyes of Europe, and showed that the American spirit would have to be reckoned with. But, important as the results were, they sank into comparative insignificance when placed beside an event which, at the time, attracted no special attention.

**216. Fulton's Steamboat and River Navigation.**—In the year 1807, Robert Fulton, after many trials and difficulties, succeeded in applying steam to boats as a motive power. The outcome of his efforts was the steamboat *Clermont*, a clumsy affair that people ridiculed by calling it "Fulton's Folly." On the day advertised for its trial trip from New York, a large crowd gathered on the river side, expecting to witness a failure. When the boat slowly moved off they began to jeer,

THE *CLERMONT* STEAMING DOWN THE HUDSON RIVER PAST THE CATSKILLS.

but when finally the success of the experiment was no longer in doubt they were equally hearty in their applause. The *Clermont* steamed up the Hudson from New York to

Albany, 150 miles, at the rate of nearly five miles an hour. At once the boat became a wonder to the people, and they came many miles to see it.

#### WESTERN EMIGRANTS ATTACKED BY INDIANS.

Four years later (1811) the first steamboat on Western rivers was launched on the Ohio at Pittsburg. As this strange-looking object passed down the Ohio at what was then regarded as wonderful speed, the people on the riverbanks were filled with awe and fear. The flying sparks, especially at night, and the unusual noise of the wheels, made some of the more ignorant onlookers believe the end of the world was near. This boat was soon followed by others, and the great network of rivers became thick with steam-driven craft, defying wind and current. The steamboat was a great advance upon the flatboat. Western settlers could now more easily and cheaply reach the fertile land in the great valley and send their produce to good markets. The steamboat gave a fresh impulse to Western immigration also. Population increased and many new settlements sprang up.

Use of the steamboat on Western rivers.

**217. Burr's Conspiracy.**—While Vice-President, Aaron Burr—a brilliant and villainous man—killed Alexander Hamilton in a duel, because Hamilton had prevented him

from being made President of the United States, and later from being elected Governor of New York. Having failed to satisfy his political ambition in the East, Burr got together soldiers and adventurers from the Western States, and sailed down the Ohio and the Mississippi to carry out some scheme not yet fully understood. It is thought that his plan was to establish a personal government in the Southwest, possibly including the Spanish possessions in Mexico. In due time he was taken and tried for treason, but was acquitted for lack of evidence. He died many years later, disgraced by his own acts and despised by the American people.

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. How did Jefferson illustrate his republican simplicity? Compare his ideas of formality with those of Washington. Why would the Federalists naturally favor pomp and ceremony on the part of the President?
2. Prepare to write five minutes about any one of the following Western leaders: Boone, Clarke, Sevier, and Robertson. Describe the life of the pioneer settlers.
3. What advantages had the flatboat over the pack-horse? What were the two uses of rivers? With your map before you, outline the roundabout trip the Western settler had to make in trading.
4. Napoleon is one of the most interesting men in all history. Can you not look up some facts about his life and his plans of conquest? Any short French History, like Montgomery's, will give you all you need. Perhaps after you have read such a brief sketch, you will wish to read what you can find about the great general in Henry Adams's brilliant History of the United States.
5. What was Napoleon's scheme to plant colonies in the Mississippi valley? Compare this scheme with La Salle's. In this connection review La Salle's work. In what respect was La Salle like Napoleon?
6. What country owned Louisiana at this time? What had the island of San Domingo and the black general Toussaint L'Ouverture to do with Napoleon's scheme for colonizing the Mississippi valley? Why did the cession of Louisiana to France alarm the people of the United States?
7. What steps did Jefferson take which finally led to the purchase of Louisiana? What were the results of this purchase?

8. Do not fail to get a clear idea of the territory that was included in Louisiana. How many States like your own did its area equal?
9. How did the steamboat aid Western emigration?
10. Find out what you can about Burr's relations with Hamilton. Compare the two men. What was Burr's Conspiracy?
11. In connection with the study of Aaron Burr, read Hale's *Man Without a Country*. The chapter in Shaler's *History of the United States*, Vol. I., on the Mississippi valley, is worth careful reading.

## THE WAR OF 1812, OR THE SECOND WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

**218. England Claims the Right to Search American Vessels and Impress American Seamen.**—England still continued to search our vessels and to impress into her service American seamen. She claimed that English seamen, having once been English subjects, always remained such; or, as the saying ran, "Once an Englishman, always an Englishman." On the other hand, our government claimed that an English-born subject could become an American by naturalization.

There was doubtless cause for annoyance on both sides. Many English seamen, on reaching American ports, easily procured fraudulent naturalization papers, and entered the American service. As a result, an English captain was often embarrassed to find that, after making a port and visiting the town, he had no crew with which to put to sea again. And why was American service preferred? Because better treatment and higher pay were received on American vessels.

The commanders of English war-ships therefore insisted upon searching our vessels and taking off American seamen on the charge that they were deserters. English cruisers hovered about the more important American ports, and in their search for seamen boarded every vessel entering or leaving the harbor. Before the War of 1812 began, nine hundred American vessels had been searched, and more than 4,000 Americans had been impressed into the English service.



These insults and outrages reached their most irritating stage in the attack made on the frigate *Chesapeake* by the British man-of-war *Leopard*, off the coast of Virginia. The English captain made a demand for some English deserters

TAKING DESERTERS FROM THE *CHESAPEAKE*.

who he claimed were on the American frigate. When the American commander protested, the Englishman fired a broadside, killing or wounding twenty-one of the American crew. The *Chesapeake*, not being in a condition to make resistance, surrendered. She was boarded and four of her crew were arrested

The "Leopard"  
fires upon the  
"Chesapeake."

for deserters and taken on board the *Leopard*. One of these was afterward hanged as a deserter and the other three, who were Americans, were released.

The people were deeply excited, and in some quarters there was a clamor for war. But as the country was ill prepared for war, Jefferson could go no farther than to enter a protest, and warn English men-of-war to leave American waters. In return, the British

Results.

Government made a tardy and half-hearted apology, but declared its purpose to continue the impressment of seamen.

**219. England and France Greatly Injure American Commerce (1806-1807).**—England and France, now at war, tried to starve each other into submission. Each country, in her efforts to injure the other's trade, seriously crippled American commerce. During the early years of the war, our vessels had done much of the carrying trade of the world, and our merchants had been growing rich. But in 1806<sup>1</sup> and 1807 England issued her "Orders in Council," which forbade neutral vessels to trade with France or her allies. Napoleon retaliated by issuing his "Decrees," which placed a prohibition upon all neutral trade with England. As nearly all American commerce was with England, France, and their respective allies, these restrictions threatened it with ruin. If an American vessel was bound for an English port she was liable to be seized by the French. If she risked a voyage to a French or other Continental port she was liable to be seized by an English man-of-war. Thus our merchantmen were between two fires. They were pretty certain not to escape both.

England's "Orders in Council" and Napoleon's "Decrees."

**220. Jefferson's Peace Policy and the Embargo (1807).**—With all his greatness, Jefferson was not a model executive in time of serious foreign difficulties demanding firm and vigorous measures. He abhorred war, and believed

<sup>1</sup> "Orders in Council," issued by England in 1806, declared that all the ports between Brest and the Elbe were in a state of blockade. In 1807 a similar order declared all ports blockaded from which the British flag was excluded, and forbade all vessels to trade with France or any of her allies.

that the same results could be accomplished by peaceful means. He thought that by refusing to trade with England and France he could force them to a reasonable and just treatment of the United States. As an expression of his peace policy, he secured the passage of the Embargo Act (December, 1807). This prohibited all American vessels from leaving the United States for foreign ports and foreign vessels from taking cargoes out of American ports.

Jefferson thought that France and England stood in such need of our trade that they would soon come to terms when deprived of it. But they could do without our trade much better than we could do without theirs. Our ships rotted at the wharves. Our commerce was destroyed. New

*Disastrous results of the Embargo, and its repeal.*

JAMES MADISON.

York and New England especially suffered, and business distress became very severe. A few hot-headed men in the Eastern States suggested withdrawing from the Union.<sup>1</sup> The farmers and planters also suffered greatly because they could not export their produce. Many of the Virginia planters, whose principal source of wealth was tobacco, were nearly ruined.

Dissatisfaction was so bitter that Jefferson, after considerable urging, consented to the repeal of the Embargo after a trial of fourteen months. The Non-intercourse Act, allowing American vessels to open trade with all the world except France and England, took the place of the Embargo

*Bitter dissatisfaction leads to the repeal of the Embargo.*

<sup>1</sup> When New England commerce was ruined, the merchants of that part of the country invested their money in manufacturing.

(1809).<sup>1</sup> From these commercial difficulties we may now turn our attention to Indian troubles, supposed to be incited by England.

**221. Tecumseh's Conspiracy (1811).**—The rapid settlement north of the Ohio in the early part of the century made the Indians of that region restless and dissatisfied. General Harrison, who had been appointed Governor of Indiana Territory, bought from some of the tribes a tract of land on the Wabash River. Tecumseh, an able Tecumseh and his plans. Indian chief, objected to the sale. A few tribes, he said, had no right to sell land belonging to the whole Indian race. It is quite likely that he was encouraged by the English in his unfriendly feelings against the Americans, for it is thought that the English supplied the Indians of the Northwest with arms and ammunition. Tecumseh's plan was similar to that of Pontiac. It was to unite the

TECUMSEH.

<sup>1</sup> By act of Congress the Embargo was removed on March 4, the day when Jefferson's term of office expired and Madison succeeded him as President. James Madison, fourth President of the United States (1809-1817), was born in King George County, Virginia, in 1751, and died in 1836. After he was graduated from Princeton, at twenty-one years of age, he studied law. Few men of his time did so much to bring about the Federal Convention of 1787. He was one of the ablest advocates of the Constitution, and was the author of many of its fundamental features. He was associated with Hamilton and Jay in writing the very able papers that appeared in the *Federalist*. After being Jefferson's Secretary of State, he was elected President. Like Jefferson, Madison was a man of scholarly attainments and constructive statesmanship, but was not adapted to the pressing emergencies that must be met by the President of the United States in time of war.

Southern and Northwestern Indians in one great conspiracy, in order to drive the whites back from the frontiers and make the Ohio River a permanent boundary between the red race and the whites.

When General Harrison became aware of Tecumseh's purpose, he marched with a body of troops against the Indian town on the Tippecanoe River, in Indiana.

**Battle of Tippecanoe and its results.**

A battle was fought in which the Indians were defeated. Their power, between the Ohio and Mississippi, was broken forever. It was at last decided that

the Northwest Territory, so long in dispute between the English and the Indians on one side and the Americans on the other, was to remain in possession of the United States. Thus did a single battle dispose of Tecum-

#### DEATH OF TECUMSEH.

*From a contemporary engraving.*

seh's conspiracy. The troubles with England about commerce and the impressment of American seamen were much more serious.

**222. Causes of the War of 1812; Political Parties.**—Congress expressed a willingness to repeal the Non-intercourse Acts (May, 1810), provided France and England would revoke their decrees against American commerce. Napoleon, who had little regard for truth when it stood in

the way of his ambition, then played a trick upon our government in the hope of bringing on war between the United States and England. He informed us that he would revoke his decrees, but at the same time he sent secret orders to the French admiralty to continue seizing our vessels. When the French emperor made this promise, England was requested to do likewise.

**Napoleon's trick.**

She, however, would not consent, because she knew that Napoleon was not acting in good faith. For a time American vessels were allowed to enter French ports without being seized. But when a goodly number were within reach, the French swooped down upon them and confiscated them and their cargoes.

England believed that Americans were favoring France, and therefore vexed and irritated them more than ever before. Her warships lay in wait along the entire eastern coast of the United States and captured many of our merchantmen. Bitterness toward England increased. It seems pretty clear that the United States had as much ground for going to war with the one country as with the other. But we were too weak to go to war with both of them, and the stronger of the two political parties, which had always sympathized with France, wished for war with England rather than with France.

The Federalist party included most of the commercial classes and the wealthy business men of the country. They were strong in New England and were closely allied in trade with England. They believed that the war was needless and wicked. They asserted that in making it the United States was really strengthening Napoleon in his ambitious schemes in Europe. This was true. On the other hand, the Democratic-Republicans were largely made up of the agricultural classes in the South and West. The Westerners in particular cherished bitter memories of England's Indian policy during the Revolution, and were eager for a war with that country. The young leaders, Henry Clay, of Kentucky, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, thought that such a war would result in the speedy conquering of Canada. Later on, as we shall see, the attempt to conquer Canada became a leading feature of the war.

Finally, on June 18, 1812, war was declared, although New England hotly opposed it. This opposition led to

**Increasing trouble  
with England.**

**Attitude of the  
two political parties  
toward war  
with England.**

great difficulty in securing the necessary loans for carrying on the war, because a large part of the money in the country was in the hands of New England business men, who refused to loan it to the government.

War declared.

**223. The British and the American Navies.**—When the war began the United States was not prepared for it. The Democratic-Republicans had never favored a navy. Moreover, Jefferson had been so bent on paying off the national debt that he had used all his influence against building a strong navy. The land forces were without proper equipment, good discipline, or competent officers. England's navy contained about 1,000 vessels, many of them belonging to the largest and most powerful class. It was greater than the combined navies of the rest of the world. To match this, the United States navy contained only twelve war-vessels, none of them large, but all well built and the best of their class. There was small hope that this little navy could do much when fighting against the "Mistress of the Seas." But as soon as war was declared, the American vessels gallantly started out in search of the enemy.

**224. Fight Between the Constitution and the Guerrière (1812).**—The first sea fight of importance was between the *Constitution*, commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, and the English man-of-war *Guerrière*, which were thought to be about equal in fighting strength. Within a half-hour the Americans won a splendid victory. They thoroughly disabled the English vessel, so that she had to be destroyed where she lay at the end of the fight. The *Constitution* was practically unharmed, and lost in killed and wounded only fourteen men. The *Guerrière* lost one hundred. This naval duel took place (August 19, 1812) in less than three months after war was declared. By reason of this and later victories, the people afterward proudly named the *Constitution* "Old Ironsides."

**225. Superiority of Americans in Naval Battles.**—In twenty years of fighting with France, England had lost only five vessels. In about six months of fighting in the

War of 1812 she lost every one of the six vessels that fought with the Americans. Europe was amazed. England was, of course, chagrined; but Americans were carried away with enthusiasm. Their gallantry on the sea showed that they had lost none of the national spirit shown by them in the days of the Revolution. The British officers and seamen were so accustomed to winning victories that they had become careless in their training and discipline. The marvel-

#### CAPTURE OF THE *GUERRIÈRE* BY THE *CONSTITUTION*.

lous success of the Americans was due to better seamanship, more accurate gunnery, and the superior construction of their vessels.

But our victories did not prevent the immense English navy from blockading our coast. Smarting under repeated defeats when she had counted on certain vic-  
 tory, England transferred a good part of her navy to American waters. Whenever one of our war-vessels entered a harbor, several British vessels hovered near to prevent her escaping to sea again. As a

English war vessels blockade our coast.



consequence, during the last half of the war the larger American vessels, shut in by this blockade, could not engage in fighting. But American privateers inflicted great loss on English commerce. During the war about 2,500 British merchant vessels were captured by American privateers. These privateers were New England vessels that were prevented by war from engaging in commerce. But while we were successful on the sea, we were not so successful on land.

**226. War in the Northwest (1812-1813).**—It will be remembered that one of the leading purposes of the war (see par. 222) was to invade and conquer Canada. With this aim in view, General William Hull started from Detroit into Canada. He was soon driven back, and forced to surrender at Detroit with his entire force (August 16, 1812).<sup>1</sup> A little later the English captured Fort Dearborn, now Chicago. Instead of our securing Canada it looked very much as if the British would get control of all the territory north of the Ohio. To prevent this, General Harrison was sent, early in the winter of 1813, to drive the British troops out of Detroit, but his advance force was obliged to surrender at the River Raisin, where the Indians cruelly massacred the wounded prisoners.

**227. Perry Wins a Brilliant Victory on Lake Erie (September 10, 1813).**—Before the English could come into effective control of the Northwest, it was necessary for them to command Lake Erie. To prevent this, Captain Oliver H. Perry, a naval officer twenty-eight years old, was sent there to build and man a fleet. With remarkable energy and perseverance he cut down trees, constructed vessels of green timber, and got together men whom he trained for the severe struggle they were to engage in. Some of his best men were Rhode Island seamen and Kentucky riflemen.

<sup>1</sup> People were indignant at Hull for this surrender and accused him of cowardice. Although he was tried by court-martial and sentenced to be shot, the sentence was never executed. It now seems clear that General Hull was an innocent man.

On September 10, 1813, the British fleet, commanded by Captain Barclay, a veteran officer, hove in sight. There was little difference in the strength of the two fleets. The British had six vessels with sixty-three guns, and the Americans had nine vessels with fifty-four guns; but while the enemy's vessels were larger, their guns were smaller. By concentrating their fire upon Perry's flagship, *Lawrence*, the British completely disabled her. Only Perry and eight of his men were left unharmed. It was a su-

preme moment. Most men would have sur-  
rendered. He boldly entered a rowboat and, standing up, flag in hand, rowed straight for the *Niagara*, another vessel of his fleet. Although the British directed their fire upon the little boat, Perry reached the *Niagara* without injury. He then renewed the battle with great vigor, and in fifteen minutes compelled the English captain to strike his colors.

His bravery.

This was the first time in history that an entire English fleet was captured. It was a brilliant victory. Taking out of his pocket an old letter, Perry wrote on the back of it his celebrated dispatch to General Harrison: "We have met the enemy and they are ours." General Harrison at once attacked and defeated the land forces at the Thames River (October 5, 1813). These two victories put the Americans in entire control of Lake Erie and saved the Northwest.

**228. Threefold Attack of the British in 1814.**—In the Northwest neither side had made any decided gain when invading the other's territory. This was equally true of the fighting farther east, where the Americans failed at Niagara River,<sup>1</sup> and the English at Fort Erie. Having defeated Napoleon in Europe, England now had more soldiers and seamen for the war in the United States. Accordingly, she decided to invade American territory from the north, on the old Burgoyne route, and to enter the Mississippi

<sup>1</sup> Under the lead of General Scott and General Brown, the bloody battles of Chippawa and Lundy's Lane were fought and won just west of Niagara River, on Canadian soil. As the United States troops had to retreat across the Niagara River, these victories were of no immediate advantage.

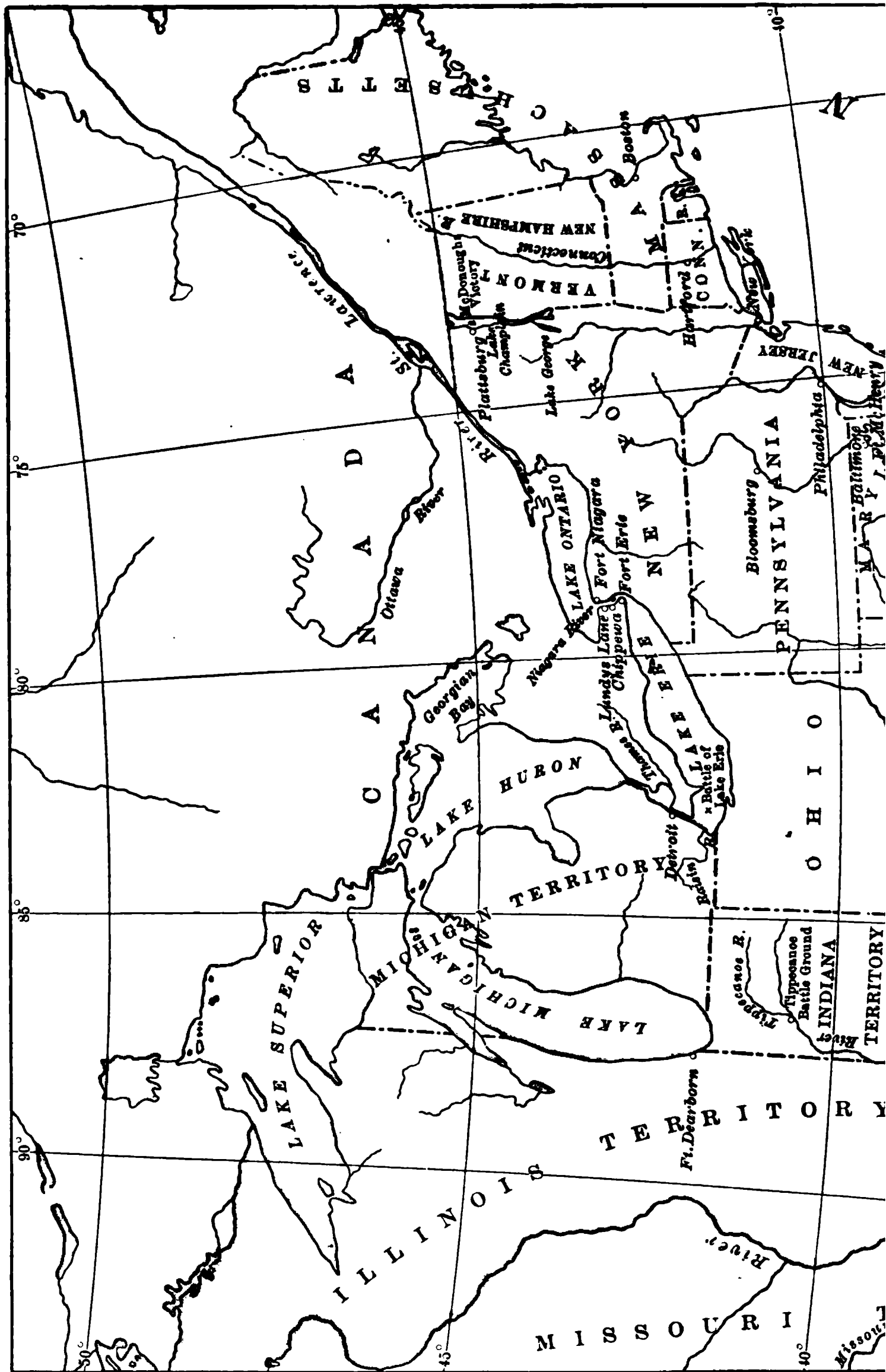
on the south and capture New Orleans. At the same time attacks were to be made at various points along the eastern coast, so as to keep the inhabitants in that quarter in a state of fear and doubt. By making this threefold attack, the English would prevent the Americans from concentrating at any point.

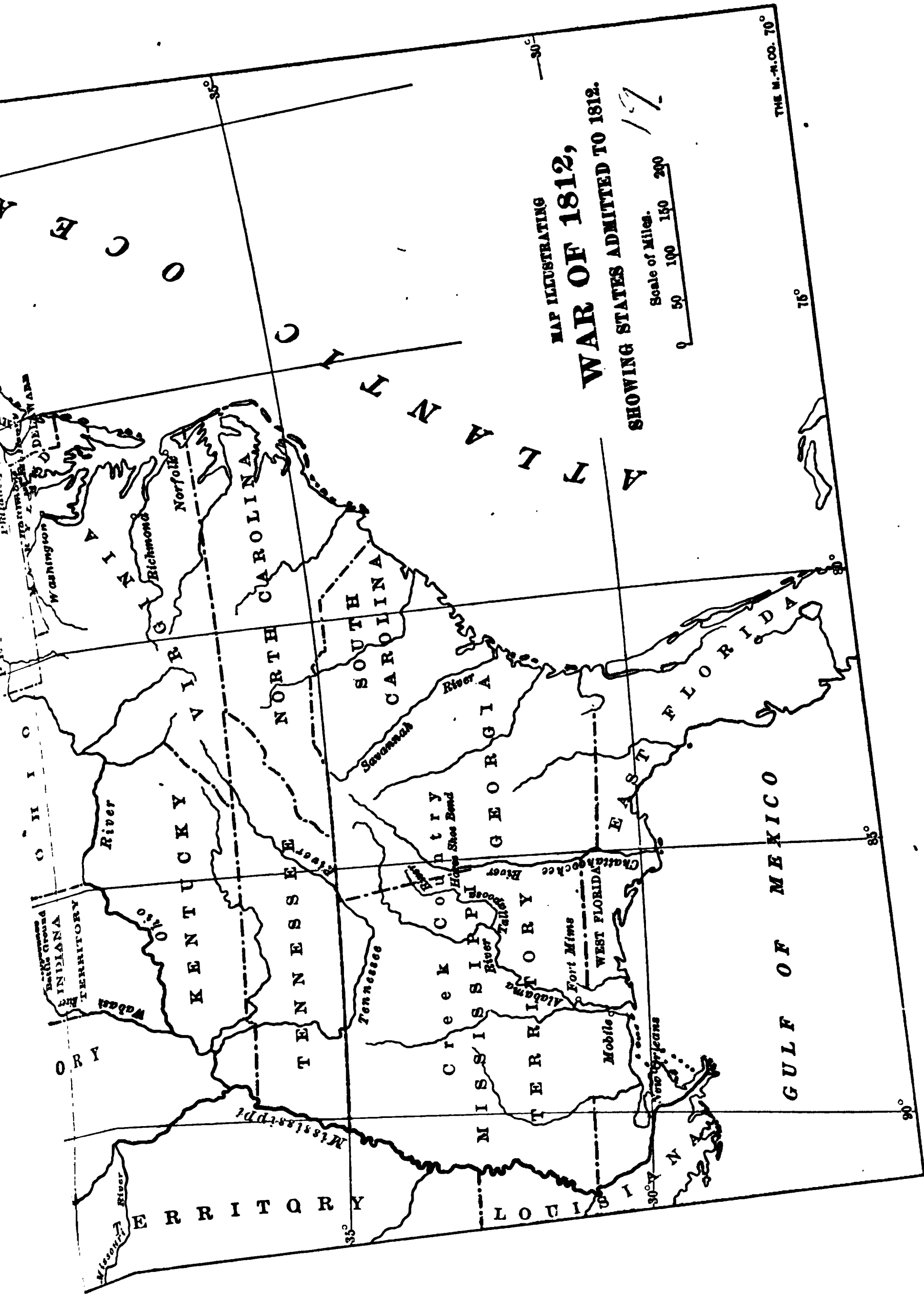
**229. McDonough's Victory on Lake Champlain.**—To ward off the attack from the north, the Americans had a squadron, under Commodore McDonough, on Lake Champlain, and a land force of 1,500 at Plattsburg, on the lake shore. The English also had a fleet on the lake, and an army of 14,000 on land. Although the English fleet was stronger in men and guns, McDonough, in about two hours, gained a decided victory, and captured all the larger vessels belonging to the English fleet. As soon as the news of the battle reached land, the English army beat a hasty retreat (September 11, 1814). This invasion, in its purpose and failure, recalls that of Burgoyne in 1777.

**230. The British Capture Washington and Attack Baltimore (1814).**—In August (1814), a British fleet sailed into Chesapeake Bay and landed an army which marched against Washington. They reached Bladensburg, six or seven miles from Washington, before they met with any opposition. Here General Winder, an incompetent commander, with a body of Americans, composed largely of untrained and ill-supplied militia, made a short, feeble resistance, and fled in confusion. The British then marched into Washington, almost capturing President Madison himself. Here they disgraced their victory by destroying the Capitol and other government buildings. After a few days they sailed for Baltimore, where they were bravely repulsed, with the loss of General Ross, their commander.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> When the British were marching against Washington, they seized and carried off a friend of Francis S. Key. As soon as Key heard of the capture, he took steps to secure the release of the prisoner. President Madison gave assistance by ordering that a vessel be placed at the disposal of Key. General Ross consented to the release of Key's friend, but insisted that Key should be detained until after the attack upon Baltimore. During the night of attack Key could see, by the glare of the firing guns, the "Star Spangled Banner" waving over Fort McHenry. But









The British fleet visited many points of the Virginia and Carolina coast, burning bridges, farm-houses, and villages, and carrying off crops, stock, and slaves belonging to the inhabitants. They also maintained a strict blockade all along the coast from Maine to Georgia.

**231. War with the Creek Indians (1814).**—Tecumseh, when planning his conspiracy in the Northwest, had aroused against the Americans the powerful Creek Indians, occupying territory now included in Georgia and Alabama. Like the Indians north of the Ohio, they saw the whites getting control of their hunting-grounds and killing their game. Believing this time of war to be a favorable opportunity for getting back their lands, the Creeks planned an attack. They captured Fort Mimms, near Mobile, and cruelly slaughtered some 400 men, women, and children in the garrison (summer of 1813). Andrew Jackson, with men from Tennessee, Georgia, and Mississippi, marched against the Creeks, and, after defeating them several times, won a decisive victory over them at Horse-shoe Bend, on the Tallapoosa River, in Eastern Alabama (March, 1814). This battle so broke the power of the Creeks that they were obliged to abandon much of their territory and go farther west.

**232. Battle of New Orleans (1815).**—The British wished to get possession of New Orleans, in order to control the trade of the Mississippi and the territory of Louisiana after the close of the war. As their success here would give them a great advantage over the Americans, they sent against New Orleans 12,000 veterans who had fought in Wellington's army.

The success of the expedition, which was in command of skilful generals, seemed well-nigh certain. **Andrew Jackson's** But Andrew Jackson, who was put in com- **preparations.** mand of the Americans at New Orleans, proved himself

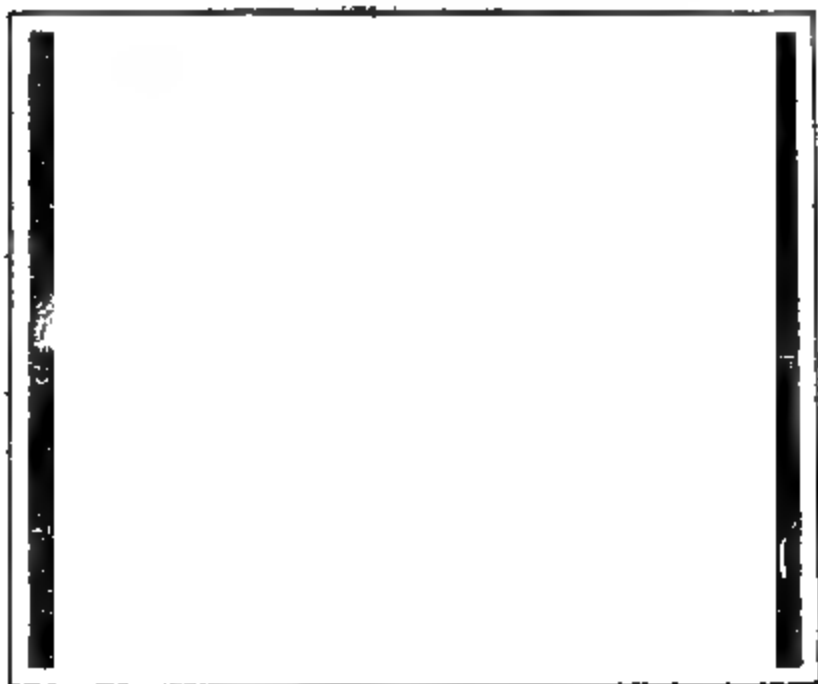
toward morning, when the firing ceased, he was in an agony of suspense to learn whether or not our flag yet floated in triumph over the fort. After finding that the "flag was still there," he gave expression to his deep feeling in the "Star Spangled Banner," a part of which he hastily penned on the back of a letter.



equal to the emergency. When he found that the enemy were close at hand, he began with unbounded energy to prepare for the defence of the city. After arming even free colored men and convicts, he could number only half as many men as the English.

But with his army strongly posted behind fortifications, he awaited the final assault, which was made January 8, 1815. The British gallantly advanced, but they were mowed down in hundreds by the terrible cannonade oppos-

ing them. It was chiefly an artillery battle, the main British column not arriving within fair musket range. The British lines could not advance in the face of such fearful slaughter. In twenty-five minutes they had lost their commander, General Pakenham, and 2,600 men killed and



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.  
*From a contemporary engraving.*

wounded, or more than one-fifth of their army. The Americans lost only twenty-one. Here, as in all the fighting on land and sea, the superiority of the American gunnery was noteworthy. In fact, throughout the war, the Americans were unmistakably ahead of the English in intelligence and quickness of movement.

We more fully appreciate the telegraph and submarine cable when we learn that this battle, so terrible in loss of life, was fought two weeks after the treaty of peace had been agreed upon. Communication in those days was so slow that the news of Jackson's victory (January 8, 1815)

Bloody repulse of  
the British.

did not reach Washington until February 4. News of the treaty of peace reached New York a week later. The battle, therefore, did not in any way affect this treaty. But it did revive the confidence of the American people in the military ability of their soldiery when under competent leadership.

Result of the battle.

**233. The Hartford Convention (December, 1814-January, 1815).**—From the outset New England Federalists had been much opposed to the war. As it progressed, their opposition became bitter. At first the government had not only appointed weak commanders, but all along it had poorly managed the finances. It had not protected the New England coasts from British attack, and to New England merchants it had seemed indifferent about furnishing such protection. Commerce was practically ruined, and there was much business distress.

New England's dissatisfaction.

New England had bravely done its part in carrying on the war, Massachusetts having furnished much more than its share of men and money, but the Federalists in New England had no confidence in President Madison and his government. At length they called together the Hartford Convention, which met at Hartford, in December, 1814. All the meetings were secret, and the people throughout the country were greatly excited about the possible outcome. Democratic-Republicans openly charged the members with plotting to break up the Union and to form a separate government.

The people greatly excited.

As the proceedings were not published, nobody knows all that the Convention did. It did, however, take a bold and dangerous step toward the dissolution of the Union, by recommending that the proceeds of the national taxes, collected in each New England State, should be reserved by it to pay troops for its own defence. This recommendation was extremely unwise. It sounded much like the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions of 1798 and 1799. The Hartford Convention was a great political blunder. It killed the Federalist party.

What the Hartford Convention did.

**234. Treaty of Peace and Results of the War (December 24, 1814).—**The treaty of peace was agreed upon December 24, 1814. No mention was made of impressment of seamen and the unjust interference with our commerce by the English navy. But the war put a stop to both evils, and had, in addition, three results: (1) It showed the superiority of American seamanship; (2) it gave the United

OLD STATE HOUSE WHERE THE HARTFORD CONVENTION MET.

States a position of respect and honor among the nations of the world; (3) it led the Americans who had been for so many years cut off from the manufactured goods of Europe, to build mills and factories for themselves, and thus become more independent of European manufactures than ever before. Well may this war be called the Second War of Independence. In the Revolution Americans fought for independence of England; in the War of 1812 they fought for independence of Europe.

TO THE PUPIL

1. What complaints did we make against England about searching American vessels and impressing American seamen? What complaints did England enter against us?
2. How did England and France injure American commerce? What was Jefferson's purpose in securing the passage of the Embargo Act? What was the Embargo? How did it affect American commerce?
3. Why was there more commerce carried on in New England than in the South? Why was the Embargo Act repealed?
4. James Madison, our fourth President, was inaugurated March 4, 1809, and served two terms, 1809-1817. Name in order the three Presidents who preceded him.
5. What led to Tecumseh's conspiracy? What were the results of the battle of Tippecanoe? What had Tecumseh's conspiracy to do with our trouble with England?
6. What was Napoleon's trick, and how did its success lead to increasing trouble with England? Why did the Federalists oppose a war with England? Why did the Democratic-Republicans favor such a war?
7. Subject for debate: Resolved that in 1812 we should have gone to war with France rather than with England.
8. Why had we so small a navy in 1812? Compare it with the English Navy at that time.
9. Give an account of the fight between the "Constitution" and the "Guerrière." How great was the success of the American Navy in the first six months of the war? How do you account for this success?
10. What disasters fell upon our armies in the Northwest in 1812-13? What led to the battle of Lake Erie? Imagine yourself with Perry during the battle, and write to a friend, giving an account of your experiences. What were the results of Perry's Victory?
11. What was the threefold plan of attack made by the British in 1814? Give the results of McDonough's victory on Lake Champlain.
12. What was the object of the British in trying to capture New Orleans? Give the results of the battle. In what ways were the Americans superior to the English in this and in other battles of the war?
13. Why were New England Federalists bitterly opposed to the Embargo? How was their dissatisfaction increased during the war? What recommendation did the Hartford Convention make? Compare this recommendation with the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions of 1798 and 1799. You observe that even in 1814 true national feeling was not strong and deep in the United States. Name three results of the war.
14. Learn well the story of the Star Spangled Banner's origin and then memorize the poem. Read again and again Drake's American Flag and Holmes's Old Ironsides.

## DEVELOPMENT WEST OF THE ALLEGHANIES

**235. Purchase of Florida.**—At the close of the Revolution Florida had passed into the hands of Spain. During the War of 1812 the Spaniards were in sympathy with the English, and allowed them to build forts in Florida, and to arm the Seminole Indians living there. This unfriendly attitude of the Spaniards embittered the Southern States. Moreover, many slaves, escaping from Georgia and Alabama, fled into the swamps and morasses of Florida, and there found protection among the Seminole Indians with whom they married and lived.

**The Seminole  
Indians protect  
runaway slaves.**

The slave-owners often followed in search of their slaves, and for years carried on a kind of border warfare. As Spain did not set matters right, General Andrew Jackson was sent down (1817) with a body of troops. Jackson acted with his usual decision and energy. He hanged two Indian chiefs, and two Englishmen whom he accused of inciting the Seminoles. He captured Pensacola, and established a garrison there. These acts were open war against Spain, but trouble was avoided by our buying Florida. The purchase was made in 1819, for \$5,000,000. The territory was more than twelve times the size of Connecticut.<sup>1</sup>

**Jackson in  
Florida.**

**236. The Monroe<sup>2</sup> Doctrine (1823).**—Having watched the United States win independence from England and

<sup>1</sup> The area of Connecticut, being 4,990, or approximately 5,000, square miles, makes a very convenient unit of measurement. It will hereafter be so used in many cases.

<sup>2</sup> James Monroe, fifth President of the United States (1817–1825), was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, in 1758, and died in 1831. Soon after his student life began at the College of William and Mary, he was called away to active service in the Revolution. He fought bravely at Trenton, Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth. He filled many high stations in his country's service, not only at home, where he was a member of the Continental Congress, and later of the Senate under the Constitution, but abroad, where he was minister to France, England, and Spain. After being Secretary of State under Madison, he was elected President. In all his public service he proved himself a patriotic and upright citizen.

then become strong and prosperous, Mexico and the other Spanish colonies in America rose in revolt against Spain. One after another they declared their independence and set up republics of their own. Spain was unable of herself to enforce authority, and looked for aid to the Spain and the "Holy Alliance." This alliance had been "Holy Alliance." formed in 1815, after the downfall of Napoleon, by Russia, Austria, and Prussia. Its purpose was to prevent the people of any European monarchy from overthrowing the government, as the French people had done during the French Revolution. From the American stand-point, if the great European powers should begin thus to interfere with the countries of America, they might, by obtaining a foothold here, endanger the welfare of the United States.

The experiment of twenty-five years of struggle between the United States on the one hand, and England and France

JAMES MONROE.

on the other, had culminated in the War of 1812. We had thus learned the wisdom of keeping out of European entanglements. We had learned, also, the wisdom of managing our own affairs without the intervention of England, France, or any other European country. President Monroe, therefore, in a message to Congress at The "Monroe Doctrine." this time declared (1) that we would take no part in European wars; (2) that we would not interfere with any European colonies already established in America; (3) but that any attempt on the part of a European nation to interfere with the independence of an American state would be regarded as an unfriendly act.<sup>1</sup> This statement of our

<sup>1</sup> We find a similar sentiment expressed in Washington's Farewell Address, from which the following is quoted. "The great rule of conduct for us in regard to for-

position gave expression to the general American sentiment which has since become known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

It was a strong position to take, but the valor of Perry on Lake Erie, of McDonough on Lake Champlain, of Jackson at New Orleans, and of the American sailors on the sea, had won the respect and admiration of Europe. The Holy Alliance wisely refrained from meddling with American affairs; a precedent was established; and the Monroe Doctrine has ever since been the settled policy of the United States. The Monroe Doctrine practically settled the foreign policy of the United States; but there remained a question at home which appeared almost to defy solution.

**Results.**

The Holy Alliance wisely refrained from meddling with American affairs; a precedent was established; and the Monroe Doctrine has ever since been the settled policy of the United States. The Monroe Doctrine practically settled the foreign policy of the United States; but there remained a question at home which appeared almost to defy solution.

**237. The National Road.**—From early colonial times two obstacles had stood in the way of westward emigration.

**Two obstacles to westward emigration.**

These were the Indians and natural barriers to travel and transportation. By the overthrow of Tecumseh's conspiracy in the Northwest, and by the defeat of the Creeks in the Southwest, the power of the Indians as far as the Mississippi River had been broken.

This vast, fertile area was now open to emigration. People from New England and the Northern States began to move westward in large and increasing numbers. The steamboat greatly aided this westward movement, but

**The steamboat and the pack-horse.**

the steamboat was of use only on the rivers and lakes. It was necessary for men and all kinds of movable property to pass over wide stretches of country through which navigable rivers did not flow. The pack-horse of early days needed only a path through the woods, but the emigrant called for a roadway to connect the East and the West. Hence the "National Road," beginning on the banks of the Potomac, at Cumberland, Maryland, was undertaken at national expense.

foreign nations is, in extending our commercial relations, to have with them as little political connection as possible. . . . It is our true policy to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world."

The first contract was let in 1811. By 1820 the road was extended over the mountains to Wheeling, where it connected with the steamboats on the Ohio. The original purpose was to build this road to the Mississippi. But by the time it reached Illinois (1838) the coming of the railroad made its further extension unnecessary. It helped much in furthering emigration and westward growth. For the construction and repair of this road Congress spent nearly seven million dollars.

**238. The Natural Boundary Line Between Freedom and Slavery.**—Nature had decreed that the large plantation should have no place in the North. Mason and Dixon's Line and the Ohio River formed the convenient and natural boundary line between the free and the slave States as far west as the Mississippi River.

North of that line slaves were of use mainly as household servants. It was thought that other kinds of work could be done with greater profit by white labor. In all this northern area, therefore, there were comparatively few slaves. But south of that line the soil and climate were favorable to the growth of cotton, rice, sugar, and tobacco. The successful cultivation of these great staples called for an abundance of cheap labor always at hand when needed. Slavery fulfilled these conditions. Moreover, it was assumed that the negroes, if set free, would not work, and hence slavery seemed to the Southern planter necessary for his highest prosperity. This assumption has, since the freeing of the slaves, been shown to be incorrect, but it was none the less believed in the South before the Civil War.

Slavery in the  
North and in the  
South.

**239. The Question of the Extension of Slavery into the Louisiana Territory.**—Before the Louisiana Purchase, then, soil and climate seem to have largely decided what should be the line separating freedom from slavery. Seven of the thirteen original States were free and six were slave, but the admission of new ones had been so planned that in 1819 there were eleven standing for freedom and the same number for slavery. In this way each section had an equal



vote in the Senate. In the House of Representatives, the North, having grown in population much faster than the

The South eager to maintain an equality in the Senate.

South, had, by 1819, a much larger vote.<sup>1</sup>

If, however, the South could maintain an equality in the Senate, legislation unfriendly

to slavery could be prevented, and to this end the slaveholders were ready to put forth all their energy.

**240. The Missouri Compromise (1820).**—In 1818, Missouri, a part of the Louisiana purchase, applied for admission into the Union. The first State admitted from this purchase, Louisiana, had come in as a slave State in 1812, but it was far south of the line dividing freedom and slavery, as already established. Missouri, however, lay partly north of

Attitude of the North and the South toward slavery in Missouri.

this dividing line and partly south. The Northern people claimed that as Congress had control of the Territories it had a constitutional right to decide whether they should

be free or slave. The Southern people, on the other hand, insisted that each State had a constitutional right to decide this question for itself.

When applying for admission the people of Missouri had requested that they might have slavery. It happened that about the same time Maine wished to be admitted as a

<sup>1</sup> REPRESENTATION IN CONGRESS IN 1820.

No.	Free States.	Admitted.	Senate.	House of Rep.	No.	Slave States.	Admitted.	Senate.	House of Rep.
1	Pennsylvania...	1787	2	23	1	Delaware.....	1787	2	2
2	New Jersey....	1787	2	6	2	Georgia.....	1788	2	6
3	Connecticut....	1788	2	7	3	Maryland.....	1788	2	9
4	Massachusetts..	1788	2	13	4	South Carolina.	1788	2	9
5	New Hampshire	1788	2	6	5	Virginia.....	1788	2	23
6	New York.....	1788	2	27	6	North Carolina.	1789	2	13
7	Rhode Island..	1790	2	2	7	Kentucky.....	1792	2	10
8	Vermont.....	1791	2	6	8	Tennessee.....	1796	2	6
9	Ohio.....	1803	2	6	9	Louisiana.....	1812	2	1
10	Indiana.....	1816	2	1	10	Mississippi....	1817	2	1
11	Illinois.....	1818	2	1	11	Alabama.....	1818	2	1
12	Maine.....	1820	2	7	12	Missouri.....	1821	2	1
12	Free.....	.....	24	105	12	Slave.....	.....	24	82

free State. The slaveholders, therefore, refused to allow Maine to enter the Union unless Missouri should be admitted as a slave State. The struggle was long and bitter. At last, largely through the influence of Henry Clay, an act, known as the "Missouri Compromise," was passed, which, for the time, settled the difficulty.

This compromise had two provisions: (1) Missouri was to come into the Union as a slave State; (2) all the remaining territory in the Louisiana Purchase,

The two provisions of the Missouri Compromise.

north of the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , or the southern boundary of Missouri, was to be forever free. Maine was admitted as a free State in 1820, and Missouri as a slave State in 1821, making twelve free and twelve slave States.

HENRY CLAY, "THE GREAT PEACE-MAKER."

It was supposed that the slavery difficulty was forever settled. Forever in this case meant only about twenty-five years.

**241. The Erie Canal (1817-1825).<sup>1</sup>**—Transportation overland, from east to west, by means of wagons and draught

<sup>1</sup> The Erie Canal was opened in the autumn of 1825, the first year of John Quincy Adams's administration. John Quincy Adams, the son of John Adams, and sixth President of the United States (1825-1829), was born at Braintree, Massachusetts, in 1767, and died in 1848. After graduating from Harvard he began the study of law. His public service was long and distinguished. He was not only American minister to Holland, Portugal, England, Prussia, and Russia, but was one of the American peace commissioners at the close of the War of 1812. After serving with signal ability as Monroe's Secretary of State he was elected to the Presidency. As President he was unpopular and made many enemies. But the greatest part of his career began when he entered the national House of Representatives in 1831. Here he became the anti-slavery statesman of his time. His fearlessness won the admiration of friend and foe alike. He remained a member of the House until 1848, when he fell dead in the Capitol. He was well called the "Old Man Eloquent."

animals, was slow and expensive. Some better means of travel and communication between the Atlantic coast and the Mississippi valley had therefore become a necessity. This necessity suggested to the thoughtful mind of DeWitt Clinton the building of a canal to connect the Great Lakes with the eastern seaboard. So, in 1817, through his untiring energy, a large body of laborers began the task of digging the Erie Canal.

It extended from Buffalo, on Lake Erie, to Albany, on the Hudson, a distance of three hundred and sixty-three miles. As Lake Erie is nearly six hundred feet higher than the level of the Hudson, and as the canal had to pass through forests and over rivers, many people looked upon the scheme as a foolish venture. By way of ridicule they called the canal "Clinton's Ditch."

**Difficulties in  
building the canal.**

But Clinton's perseverance overcame all opposition, and the Erie Canal was ready for use in 1825. It was built at the expense of the State of New York and was easily paid for by tolls levied on boats and goods passing through it.

#### **242. Results of the Construction of the Erie Canal.**

—The results of constructing the Erie Canal surpassed the highest expectations, even of Clinton. (1) Cost of transportation was reduced.

**JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, THE ANTI-SLAVERY STATESMAN.**

Before the canal was in use \$10 was paid for carrying by wagon a barrel of flour from Buffalo to Albany. By canal-boat the expense was reduced to thirty cents per barrel. (2) Since the canal made travel easier and less expensive, it increased emigration westward. Before the building of the New York Central Railroad it carried thousands of emigrants. (3) All along the canal

PERRY TRANSFERRING HIS COLORS AT LAKE ERIE.



**MAP OF THE ERIE CANAL**

towns and cities rapidly grew up, so that New York soon became the most populous State in the Union. (4) It greatly stimulated the development of New York City, which shortly became, as it has since remained, the chief commercial city in the country. (5) By largely reducing the freight charges for transportation of goods it made the food produced on Western farms much cheaper in the East, and for the same reason it caused manufactured goods from the East and imported goods from Europe to sell for lower prices in the West. It therefore increased the wealth of both the East and the West.

**243. Internal Improvements.**—The National Road and the Erie Canal were a part of an extensive system of internal improvements which were of great service in developing the West and connecting it with the East. This system included not only the building of roads and canals, but the improvement of rivers and harbors. Some of these roads and canals were built by private enterprise and some by the separate States. The cost of building and keeping them in repair was met by toll charges. Many people believed that Congress had a right to make internal improvements at the expense of the whole people. Many others insisted that such improvements should be made by private companies or by the separate State governments. These last urged that the “general welfare”<sup>1</sup> of the people was not served by building roads and canals and by improving rivers and harbors, which directly benefited limited areas only. They therefore argued that such works should not be undertaken by the general government at national expense.

This was the view of those who gave a strict construction to all parts of the Constitution. Madison, Monroe, and Jackson were of this party. Those who gave a broad construction to the Constitution said that this power was implied in the following clause: “The Congress shall have power to make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all

<sup>1</sup> See preamble of the Constitution.

the powers vested by the Constitution in the government of the United States" (Article I., Section 8, Clause 18). This has rightly been called the "Elastic Clause." The "River and Harbor Bill," passed every year for the improvement of rivers and harbors in all parts of the country, shows that Congress to-day gives a liberal construction to the Constitution. The best way of making internal improvements was a new problem for the people to solve, but there were other problems equally difficult.

The "Elastic Clause."

**244. New Problems and a New Political Party.**—The Alien and Sedition laws had seriously injured the Federalist party; the Hartford Convention had killed it, leaving the Democratic-Republicans as the only political party in the country. From 1817 to 1825, during Monroe's administration, this singular condition of affairs prevailed, and this period has ever since been known as the "Era of Good Feeling."

The era of good feeling.

New problems, however, soon presented themselves, and led to the rise of a new political party. These problems involved three pressing and vital questions: (1) Shall internal improvements be made by Congress at national expense? (2) Is the United States Bank constitutional? (3) Is the true policy of the country a tariff for revenue only or a high tariff for the protection of home industries? The Democrats, as the Democratic-Republicans now began to call themselves, believed in leaving internal improvements to private enterprise or to State governments. They regarded the Bank of the United States as unconstitutional. They favored a low tariff.

Three pressing questions.

The new party wished internal improvements to be made at national expense, approved the United States Bank, and urged that a high protective tariff was for the best interests of the people. Because this new party favored the strengthening of the national government in these three ways it was called the National Republican party.

The National Republican party.



## TO THE PUPIL

1. James Monroe was now President, serving two terms, 1817-1825.
2. What difficulties led to the purchase of Florida ?
3. What was the Holy Alliance and what was its connection with the Monroe Doctrine ? Name the three main provisions of this Doctrine. Try to understand clearly the meaning of the Monroe Doctrine. It will come up again later.
4. Before the purchase of Louisiana, what was the natural boundary line between free and slave territory ? Explain how soil and climate favored slavery south of Mason and Dixon's Line and the Ohio River.
5. Why was the South eager to maintain in the Senate an equality with the North ? What difficulty was settled by the Missouri Compromise ? What was this Compromise ?
6. Review what has been said about the pack-horse, the flat boat, the steamboat, and the National Road. In what way did the Erie Canal supplement these ? Do not be satisfied until you know well the results of constructing this canal, especially the last one named in the text.
7. John Quincy Adams, who served for one term, 1825-1829, was now President.
8. What is meant by internal improvements ? Why were they greatly needed at this time ? What two views were held as to the best way of making internal improvements ?
9. You see you are again face to face with the two opposite views of the true meaning of the Constitution. What were these views ? What is the "Elastic Clause ?"
10. What were the new political problems and what the pressing questions they involved ? What was the new political party and how did it answer each of these questions ? How did the Democratic party answer them ?
11. In this connection you might well review what you have already studied about political parties. You will recall two great mistakes made by the Federalist party. Make frequent use of the index.
12. Read Washington's Farewell Address and the message containing the Monroe Doctrine.

## CHAPTER XVI

### JACKSONIAN DEMOCRACY AND THE WEST (1829-1841)

REFERENCES : **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, IV.; **Andrews's** United States, I.; **Burgess's** Middle Period; **Wright's** Children's Stories of American Progress; **Woodrow Wilson's** Division and Reunion; **Coffin's** Building the Nation; **Richardson's** History of Our Country.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Schouler's** United States, III. and IV.; **Rhodes's** The United States, I.; **Sumner's** Jackson; **Lodge's** Webster; **Von Holst's** Calhoun; **Schurz's** Clay; **Johnston's** American Orations (Webster and Hayne); **Bolton's** Famous American Statesmen; **Smith's** Famous Americans; **Teft's** Webster and His Masterpieces.

FICTION: **Eggleston's** Hoosier Schoolboy; **Eggleston's** Hoosier Schoolmaster; **Eggleston's** Graysons.

**245. Character of Andrew Jackson.**<sup>1</sup>—The six Presidents that preceded Jackson came from Virginia or Massachusetts. They were all men of culture, and stood for what was best in the social life of New England and the South. Andrew Jackson was of a different type. He represented the frontier life of the West.

His education had been meagre, but he had much ability, and a strong and forceful character. He was a natural leader of men, and had occupied many positions of trust in the community in which he lived. His unbounded faith in

<sup>1</sup> Andrew Jackson, seventh President of the United States (1829-1837), was born in Union County, North Carolina, in 1767, and died at his home, "The Hermitage," near Nashville, in 1845. When only fourteen years old he joined the American force under Sumter. After the Revolution he began to study law. At the age of twenty-nine he removed to Nashville, and soon became prominent in public life. He was elected to the national House of Representatives, and later to the Senate. In 1814 he was appointed major-general in the United States army, and in this position won the brilliant victory at the battle of New Orleans. On account of his obstinate will his friends called him "Old Hickory."

his own convictions caused him to commit some errors as President. But he was always sincere and honest, and intensely patriotic. He was loyal to his friends, but severe upon his enemies. His personal prejudices and his jealousy for the nation were so intense that he regarded those disagreeing with him as not only enemies to himself, but to his country.

His genuine interest in the welfare of the people cannot be questioned. During the eight years of his Presidency (1829-1837) his influence upon the course of events was

A man of the people. a personal one. He was in a true sense a man of the people, who cheerfully followed wherever he led.

#### 246. The Spoils System.

—When Jackson became President he desired to reward those political friends who had worked faithfully for his election. Moreover, he believed in the rights of the people, and did not deem it democratic to allow any set of men to remain long in

ANDREW JACKSON.

"The Union! It must and shall be preserved!"

office to the exclusion of others just as worthy.

He therefore decided to adopt the more democratic principle of "rotation in office." "To the victors belong the spoils," was his motto. He accordingly turned out of office two thousand postmasters<sup>1</sup> and other officials, although their work was in no way connected with politics. Jackson appointed his own followers to positions which he had made vacant by removal. He appointed them because they were his followers, and

<sup>1</sup> During the forty years from 1789 to 1829, there had been only 74 removals, or, on an average, less than two a year. Of these Washington had made 9; John Adams, 10; Jefferson, 39; Madison, 5; Monroe, 9; John Quincy Adams, 2.

not because they had a special fitness for the official work they were to do. This was the introduction into national politics of the "Spoils System." The system, until 1883, had full sway in the country, and has had a most demoralizing influence on the political life of the nation.

**247. "A Tariff for Revenue with Incidental Protection."**—It will be remembered that during the time of the Embargo and the War of 1812, the country, being cut off from foreign trade, was obliged to build its own mills and factories to produce whatever manufactured goods were needed for home use. As the streams flowing down New England hill-sides furnished excellent water-power, the business men of that region gradually invested their capital in manufacturing instead of commerce. Until 1816 duties had been levied on goods from foreign countries, mainly for revenue to pay the expenses of the national government. These duties furnished only incidental protection to American manufacturers. Such a system of duties is called a "tariff for revenue with incidental protection."

**248. A Protective Tariff.**—After the war closed, however, and trade was resumed with foreign countries, our markets became flooded with foreign goods, especially from England. Labor was so much cheaper in England than in this country that her merchants could sell goods to the United States at a lower price than American manufacturers could afford to sell them.

English goods in  
American mar-  
kets.

Our manufacturers naturally called for a higher tariff on the goods that could be made to advantage in American mills and factories. These imported goods would then cost so much in the United States that the American manufacturer could afford to undersell the foreigner, and still make a profit. Such a tariff is said to encourage home industries, or to protect American manufacturers from foreign competition. It is therefore called a protective tariff.

**249. South Carolina Objects to a High Protective Tariff.**—The first protective tariff was laid in 1816. It was too moderate. The duties were so low that foreign mer-

chants could pay them and still fill our markets with their goods. The New England manufacturers could not thrive under such conditions and urged Congress to raise the duties. These were therefore gradually increased until the high tariff of 1828 was passed.

**The high tariff of 1828.**

The industrial conditions of the South were so different from those of the North that manufacturing had no place there. The people of the South were almost exclusively employed in raising on their plantations the four great staples: rice, sugar, cotton, and tobacco. The slaves were not intelligent enough to be employed in manufacturing. They were adapted only to agricultural labor. Such a difference in industrial conditions between the North and the South was decidedly unfortunate. The conflicting business interests of the two sections brought about a serious disagreement in regard to the tariff system.

**Slavery and the four great staples of the South.**

The Southern people had to buy all the manufactured goods they used, and naturally wished to buy them at as low prices as possible. They claimed the right to import foreign goods free from duty. In other words, they wished free trade, or freedom to seek, without government restrictions, any foreign market. The people of South Carolina claimed that a protective tariff made them poorer and the New England manufacturers richer, and that it was therefore sectional and unfair.

**The South desires free trade.**

**250. Calhoun and Nullification (1831-1832).**—John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, Vice-President during most of Jackson's first term, and an able statesman, was the leader of his State in this memorable struggle over the tariff. He declared that inasmuch as the tariff enriched the Northern manufacturers at the expense of the South, it was sectional, and, therefore, unconstitutional.

**Calhoun believes in State Rights and Nullification.**

His theory was that of the Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions. It declared that the States were superior to the Union, and each was its own master, or practically a sovereign nation. According to his idea, the Union was only a loose-jointed con-

federacy, and South Carolina had a right to decide for itself whether or not laws passed by Congress were constitutional. This was the doctrine of State Rights. He believed, also, that any law which the State decided to be unconstitutional, it could nullify, or declare not binding in its own territory. This was the doctrine of Nullification.

**251. New England Manufacturers and the Protective Tariff.**—On the other hand the manufacturers of New England and of other Northern States vigorously maintained that a protective tariff would benefit the whole country in the following ways: (1) It would provide a revenue to defray the expenses of the government; (2) it would, by making wages higher, better the condition of workingmen; (3) it would furnish a home market for the products of the farm; (4) it would cause a greater diversity of interests in the United States and would thus make the country more independent of foreign nations, especially in time of war.

JOHN C. CALHOUN, THE DEFENDER OF  
SLAVERY AND STATE RIGHTS.

**252. Webster and the Union.**—About the same time there was, in the United States Senate, a great debate between Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, and Robert Y. Hayne, of South Carolina, over the public lands. This debate was a part of the controversy between the North and the South about the true meaning of the Constitution. Webster, like Hamilton, believed in a strong Federal Union, supreme in matters concerning the interests common to all the people. He saw clearly that a Union composed of States with the right to nullify at pleasure any laws passed by Congress must, in time, break down, just as the Confederation had after the close of the Revolution. He therefore

insisted that, under the Constitution, the State governments were inferior to the Federal government. According to Webster's idea, the United States was a nation with the Union to be supreme over the States. his idea, the United States was a nation with supreme authority over the States, and he summed up his views in those glowing words that to-day inspire us with lofty patriotism: "Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable."

### 253. Jackson's Feeling Toward Nullification.—In the

meantime there was much excitement over the tariff agitation. The South Carolina people, knowing Jackson's opposition to a high protective tariff, were eager to find out the President's feeling about the position their State was taking. They invited him to a dinner in Washington, and called upon him for a speech on a toast of his own selection. He startled them by proposing this toast: "Our Federal Union: it must be preserved." Although he did not like the tariff, yet as the head of the

*Jackson's toast.*

DANIEL WEBSTER.

"Liberty and union, now and forever, one and inseparable."

Federal Union, he meant to enforce its laws. At another time, when asked by a member of Congress from South Carolina whether he had any message for his friends in that State, he said: "Please give my compliments to my friends in your State, and say to them that if a single drop of blood shall be shed in opposition to the laws of the United States, I will hang the first man I can lay my hands on engaged in such treasonable conduct." There was no longer room for doubt about Jackson's feeling toward nullification.

254. South Carolina and State Rights.—In 1832 an attempt was made to pour oil upon the troubled waters by

adopting a new protective tariff, lower, and therefore less objectionable to the South, than the tariff of 1828. But South Carolina, being opposed to the principle of protection, was still dissatisfied.

Accordingly, a State convention was called (1832) which declared that the tariff acts of 1828 and 1832 were null and void, and prohibited the collection, after a certain date (March 3, 1833), of duties under these laws in the ports of South Carolina. **South Carolina declares the tariff acts null and void.** It threatened that, in case the United States should try to enforce the tariff laws in South Carolina, she would withdraw from the Union and organize a separate government. When Jackson received the news of the action of the South Carolina Convention he was filled with indignation. Raising aloft his right arm he exclaimed: "The Union! It must and shall be preserved! Send for General Scott!" Troops and war-vessels were at once sent to Charleston with orders to collect duties upon all imported goods entering the harbor.

Through Clay's influence, however, Congress enacted a compromise measure, gradually lowering the duties. Under this gradual reduction, the tariff, at the end of ten years, would not be far removed from a tariff for revenue only. **The compromise with South Carolina.** But the prompt, energetic action of the President was an object-lesson to the Nation. We should remember with gratitude the unflinching devotion of Daniel Webster and Andrew Jackson to the Union at this critical time.

**255. Jackson and the United States Bank.**—The first United States Bank was planned and chartered by Alexander Hamilton<sup>1</sup> for twenty years (1791 to 1811); and the second one also received a charter for the same number of years (1816 to 1836). It was to receive all revenue and other public money, and to pay this out as needed by the government. Its friends, the National Republicans, maintained that it made the paper currency safer and more

<sup>1</sup> This bank was an important feature in Hamilton's scheme for giving the national government a firm financial footing.



uniform throughout the United States. Jackson declared it was unconstitutional; that it enriched its managers at the expense of the people, and was therefore not democratic;

that its funds were used in politics to reward its friends and to injure its enemies.

**256. Jackson's Removal of Deposits (1833).**—Although the charter of the second United States Bank was not to expire until 1836, a bill to re-charter was passed by Congress in 1832. It failed

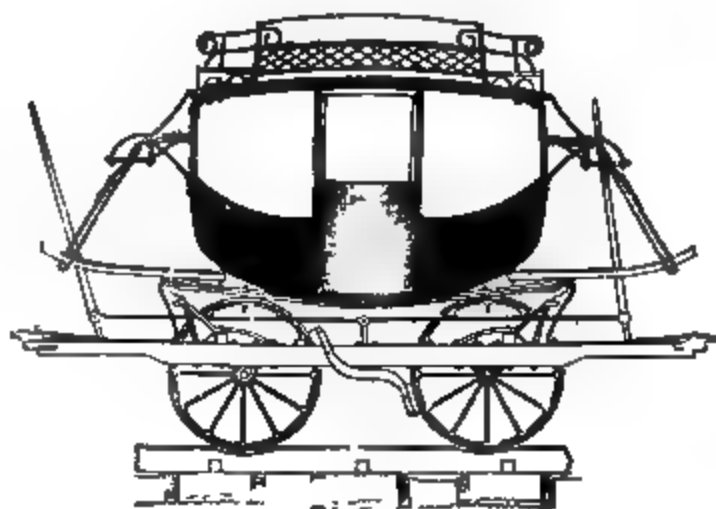
THE BALTIMORE & OHIO RAILROAD, 1830-35.

to become a law by reason of Jackson's veto. The next year the President decided upon the removal of the deposits. He therefore ordered that after that time all the money of the government should be deposited in various State banks. This was known as the "removal of deposits."

Since in every case these banks were managed by Democrats, they were known as

**Pet banks.** "pet banks."

The effect of this "removal of deposits" will be better understood if we observe how money was used at that time in the development and expansion of the West.



A MOHAWK & HUDSON CAR OF 1831.

**257. The Introduction of the Railroad.**—Vast sums had been spent in the construction of better means of transportation. As already seen (see par. 216), the application of steam-power to boats made the people independent of wind

and current. But methods of trade and travel overland were altogether too slow and meagre for the energetic American people. Roads, canals, and steam-boats had promoted travel and transportation, The new problem. but the great problem was to find some way of applying steam-power to travel and transportation by land. The

#### THE BOSTON & WORCESTER RAILROAD IN 1835.

railroad and the steam-driven locomotive-engine furnished a solution.

The first form of the railroad was the wooden rail used in the coal mines of England. The next step was to cover the wooden rail with a thin layer of iron for protection. This was the form in which the first railroad appeared in the United States at Quincy, Massachusetts (1826). This road was only five miles long, and its cars were drawn by horses. It was used to carry granite from the quarries The first passenger railroad in the United States.

to the place of shipping. In 1828 the first passenger railroad in the United States was begun at Baltimore. It extended westward about thirteen miles, and its cars were at first drawn by horses. This road was the beginning of the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad.

A RAILWAY COACH OF 1830.

**258. The Growth and Results of the Railroad.**—The growth of the railroad in the United States has been won-

derful. In 1828, there were only 3 miles; in 1837, 1,500 miles; and in 1840, 2,200 miles. From that time on the growth has been tremendous. The United States now has about 180,000 miles of railroad.

The railroad brought about great changes in the life of the people: (1) It stimulated Western emigration; (2) it made Western lands more valuable; (3) by lowering cost of transportation, it cheapened Western food in the East, and Eastern manufactured goods in the West; (4) it therefore added to the wealth of both parts of the country, and brought the people into closer sympathy and union.

**259. Rapid Growth of the West.**<sup>1</sup>—From 1821 to 1837 the country was highly prosperous. Crops were good,

<sup>1</sup> An examination of the two tables below, one showing the number of foreign immigrants for the years 1829–1837, and the other, the population of many of the States for 1821 and 1837, will give a better idea of the rapidity of this growth in the West :

IMMIGRATION TABLE, 1829–37.

Year.	Number of Immi- grants.	Year.	Number of Immi- grants.
1829 .....	22,520	1834. ....	65,365
1830 .....	23,322	1835.....	45,374
1831 .....	22,633	1836.....	76,242
1832.....	60,482	1837.....	79,340
1833.....	58,640		

POPULATION IN 1821.		POPULATION IN 1837.
	Round Numbers.	Round Numbers.
New York .....	1,400,000	2,200,000
Pennsylvania.....	1,000,000	1,600,000
Ohio.....	600,000	1,400,000
Tennessee.....	450,000	800,000
Indiana. ....	170,000	600,000
Mississippi.....	80,000	320,000
Missouri.....	70,000	350,000
Illinois.....	60,000	400,000
Michigan.....	10,000	200,000

trade and manufacturing flourished, and cities grew rapidly. In 1821, the population of the whole country was ten millions; in 1837 it was sixteen millions. This remarkable growth was encouraged by the vast expanse of rich public land which the government was offering for very small sums, in order to increase Western emigration and settlement.

The growth was stimulated by the steamboat and the railroad. Before 1837 steamboats were in extensive use on the Great Lakes, the Ohio, the Mississippi, and the many smaller tributaries of those rivers. And now, with the invention of the railroad, settlement spread westward with ever-increasing rapidity. Towns and cities sprang into existence as if by magic. In 1830 Chicago consisted of a fort (Dearborn) and a small village. In 1833 it had 550 inhabitants; in 1837 it numbered 4,170; and in 1897 the population was estimated to be 1,750,000.

**260. Speculation in Western Lands.**—Extensive areas of Western public lands, offered at low prices, filled men with the fever of speculation. Plans were laid to buy up large tracts and connect them with the East by roads, canals, and railroads. It required a great amount of money to establish all these great lines of communication, started up by the railroads, but the demand was easily met after the "removal of deposits," for then the public money was distributed among many State banks, and was more accessible to borrowers. Loans could now be obtained, and here and there cities were laid out in the West. Then by the sale of these lands, at an enormous advance in price, the speculators became suddenly wealthy. Fortune-making seemed so easy that men took great risks with borrowed money.

**261. Wild-cat Banking.**—The increasing demand for money led to "wild-cat" banking. A few men with little or no capital to make good the notes they issued, would start a bank by issuing cheaply printed bills (notes) which they circulated under the name of money. After buying public lands from the government, at high prices, with these

notes, they would sell their lands for gold and silver. When, however, their own notes returned to be redeemed in gold and silver, these dishonest bankers would fail, and, in some cases, go elsewhere and repeat their swindling operations.

**262. The United States Free from Debt.**—Of course, this speculation in government lands made it easy for the United States to pay the public debt. Whereas, in 1830, the sum received for these lands was \$2,300,000, six years later it reached nearly \$25,000,000. We need not be surprised, then, that by the end of 1835 the public debt was paid. The apparent prosperity made foreigners eager to emigrate from Europe to this country, and they came in large numbers (see table, page 274).

**263. State Speculation in Internal Improvements.**—After the public debt was paid there was a large surplus, \$28,000,000 of which was distributed among the various States. It was now very easy for State governments, especially where the "pet banks" were located, to get money for carrying out their extensive plans, and these governments invested large sums in internal improvements. Not satisfied with what their States supplied, they began to borrow largely from foreign countries. By 1837 these foreign debts amounted to nearly two hundred million dollars. Of course the loans from foreign countries made money all the more plentiful, and the fever of speculation raged more fiercely than ever.

**264. The Specie Circular.**—Such reckless speculation could not fail to bring disaster. The wild-cat banks had issued so many paper promises, based upon nothing more solid than the people's willingness to receive them, that, like the Continental currency, they became worthless. Jackson was alarmed at the amount of this worthless paper coming into the United States Treasury.

He therefore issued the famous Specie Circular, which declared that in the future, nothing but specie, or gold and silver, should be received in payment for these lands. Wild-cat bank-notes were no longer of any use in buying and

selling public lands. These notes went streaming back to the Eastern banks that had issued them, for redemption in gold and silver. Since the banks were without the gold and silver to make good these printed promises, the promises were worth nothing and could not be redeemed.

**265. The Financial Panic of 1837.**<sup>1</sup>—Of course there at once arose a great cry for money. Men tried to sell stocks, houses, lands—in fact every kind of property—to raise money to pay their debts. All wanted to sell. None cared to buy. As always happens under such conditions, prices went down with astonishing rapidity. There were extensive business failures, and rich men became poor. Mills and factories shut down because they could not sell their goods. Laboring men were thereby thrown out of work, and their families suffered for lack of food.

MARTIN VAN BUREN.

Soon there were bread riots in the streets of New York. It was a terrible time, and has always been known as the "Panic of 1837."

<sup>1</sup> Martin Van Buren, eighth President of the United States, was born at Kinderhook, New York, in 1782, and died in 1862. After he had received his training as a lawyer he began, at only eighteen years of age, his long political career. He represented New York in the Senate, and afterward served his State as governor. When Jackson was elected President he made Van Buren his Secretary of State. During Jackson's second term Van Buren was Vice-President. In 1837 the latter became President, but owing to the unpopularity of his administration, he failed to be re-elected. He was eminent not only as a lawyer, but also as a political leader.

**266. The Independent Treasury.**—As mentioned above, many of the States had made extensive foreign loans for the purpose of building roads, canals, and railroads. When caught by the great financial panic of 1837, some States refused to pay the interest on these loans, and some went so far as to refuse to pay either principal or interest. Such a refusal on the part of a State to pay its debts is called repudiation. In the midst of this financial distress the “pet banks” were unable to pay the Federal Government the public money which it had deposited in them.

The government being greatly embarrassed, President Van Buren, Jackson’s successor, was obliged to call a special session of Congress to adopt some plan for getting money to pay the running expenses of the government. Congress authorized the Treasury Department to issue \$10,000,000 in notes. The wisdom of having an independent treasury instead of a number of State banks, for the safe-keeping of all the public money, was now evident. By 1846 it had become the settled policy of the United States to have a national treasury which should take care of all the money paid to the government. This independent treasury is at Washington, while there are nine branches known as sub-treasuries distributed in various commercial centres.<sup>1</sup>

**267. The Public School System and the Newspaper.**—As life began to move at a quicker pace people began to think more actively, and to take a larger interest in things outside of their immediate surroundings. In the newer States there was such a democratic feeling that every man was made a voter.<sup>2</sup> Manhood suffrage, adopted in all the West, soon spread to the older communities of the East. All the people, coming into full control of public affairs, began to feel a deep interest in political life.

<sup>1</sup> These are located in New York, Chicago, San Francisco, Philadelphia, Boston, St. Louis, Cincinnati, New Orleans, and Baltimore.

<sup>2</sup> In the earlier years the suffrage was in many ways restricted in the older States.

It thus became a necessity to educate men to an intelligent conception of their duties toward the State and society. This led to a great improvement in the public school systems, especially in the newer States. If the people were to be rulers they must have intelligence and virtue enough to rule wisely. In this period the modern newspaper may be said to have been born. The New York *Sun* (1833) and the New York *Herald* (1835) became more energetic than before in collecting news, were printed in a more convenient form, and were sold at lower prices. From that time the daily newspaper has had a great influence in moulding public opinion.

**268. Other Aids to Progress.**—Other aids to progress were furnished in the establishment of transatlantic steamship lines and in the invention of the McCormick reaping-machine. The *Savannah*, sailing from Savannah, Georgia, in 1819, was the first ocean steamship to cross the Atlantic. In 1838 two English steamships, the *Sirius* and the *Great Western*, sailed from England to New York. Two years later the first regular transatlantic steamship line, between New York and Liverpool, was established. This was the beginning of the well-known Cunard Line. Ocean steamship traffic greatly stimulated European immigration to this country.

In 1834 there came into use an invention destined to have a large influence upon the development of the West. This was the McCormick reaping-machine, which, by making farm-work easier and more profitable, stimulated emigration to the fertile Western lands.<sup>1</sup>

**269. The Temperance Movement.**—There was so much pauperism and general demoralization during the years following the War of 1812, that people became alarmed and began to inquire the cause. Investigating committees reported that drinking was the most fruitful source of the evil. Everybody drank—ministers, doctors, merchants, laborers, and even women and children. An occasion was

<sup>1</sup> In 1838, matches, adding much to the comfort and convenience of household life, came into successful use.



never wanting ; at funerals, weddings, dinners, and whenever friends met, the social glass flowed.

In 1824 there began in Boston a great national movement which swept through the Union. Its principle was abstinence from strong drink. By 1830, a thousand temperance societies had been formed, and hundreds of merchants had given up the sale of liquor. Temperance societies increased in number and influence, saving hundreds of thousands of men from the curse of the drinking habit. From that time the cause of temperance has steadily gained ground.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. You have now reached an important chapter in your nation's history. Study it carefully. Since 1829 the influence of the West has been very great. You will therefore add 1829 to the following landmarks : 1789, 1803, 1812-1814, 1820. Review the meaning of these dates.
2. Are you still grouping less important events about the more important ?
3. Andrew Jackson was President for two terms, 1829-1837. Name in order the Presidents who preceded him. What was the secret of Jackson's large influence over the people ? Name his most striking characteristics.
4. What was the "Spoils System ?" What did Jackson mean by saying that it was democratic ? How did he apply this system to the national civil service ? What is the civil service ? Do you think Jackson was wise or unwise in introducing the "Spoils System" into national politics ? Give reasons for your answer.
5. Review the tariff measure enacted when Washington was President. What was its double purpose ? What is meant by "a tariff for revenue, with incidental protection ?"
6. Recall the effect which the Embargo and the War of 1812 had upon the growth of manufacturing in New England. Why could English goods be sold at a lower price than American ? What is a protective tariff ?
7. Why did South Carolina object to a high protective tariff ? What difference was there in the industrial conditions of the North and the South ?
8. On what ground did Calhoun declare that the protective tariff was unconstitutional ? What was his idea of the Union ? Define Nullification and State Rights.

9. What arguments did Northern manufacturers advance in favor of a protective tariff? What was Webster's idea of the Union? Find out all you can about the personality of these noted statesmen.
10. What was Jackson's feeling toward nullification? How did he express this feeling in a toast and in a message he sent to friends in South Carolina?
11. What action was taken by the State Convention in South Carolina? What did Jackson do when he heard of South Carolina's bold step?
12. Subject for debate: Resolved, that a protective tariff was for the best interests of the country as a whole.
13. What was the purpose of the United States Bank? What three charges did Jackson bring against it? What is meant by his removal of deposits and by "pet banks?"
14. What results followed the building of railroads? Discuss the rapid growth of the West. Why was there extensive speculation in Western lands, and how did the "removal of deposits" make such speculation easier?
15. What was wild-cat banking? How did speculation affect the payment of the public debt? What effect did the payment of the public debt have upon foreign immigration? Can you now explain the relation of the railroad to Western development and to speculation in Western lands?
16. What led Jackson to issue the specie circular? How did it help to bring on the financial panic of 1837?
17. What is the independent treasury?
18. Prepare yourself to write from three to five minutes on any of the following topics: the public schools, the newspaper, and the temperance movement.
19. Read Webster's famous "Reply to Hayne," and memorize some of the most eloquent passages.

## CHAPTER XVII

### THE SLAVERY QUESTION (1841<sup>1</sup>–1859)<sup>2</sup>

REFERENCES : **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, IV. ; **Andrews's** United States, II. ; **Wright's** Children's Stories of American Progress ; **Burgess's** Middle Period ; **Woodrow Wilson's** Division and Reunion ; **Richardson's** History of Our Country ; **Coffin's** Building the Nation.

OUTSIDE READINGS : **Rhodes's** United States, I. and II. ; **Schouler's** United States, IV. and V. ; **Draper's** Civil War, I. ; **Ropes's** Story of the Civil War ; **Goldwin Smith's** United States ; **Johnston's** American Orations, II. and III. ; **Bolton's** Famous American Statesmen ; **Trent's** William Gilmore Simms ; **Grant's** Personal Memoirs ; **Olmstead's** Seaboard Slave States ; **Olmstead's** Texas Journey ; **Olmstead's** Journey in the Back Country ; **Page's** Old South.

FICTION : **Stowe's** Uncle Tom's Cabin ; **Stowe's** Minister's Wooing ; **Munroe's** Golden Days of '49 ; **Harris's** Uncle Remus ; **Brooks's** Boy Settlers ; **Brooks's** Boy Emigrants.

POETRY : **Whittier's** Slave Ships ; **Whittier's** Our Countrymen in Chains ; **Longfellow's** Slave's Dream.

### THE RISE OF THE ABOLITION MOVEMENT

**270. Morse and the Electric Telegraph (1844).**—Before we consider the slavery question, let us briefly refer

<sup>1</sup> William Henry Harrison, ninth President of the United States, was born in Charles City County, Virginia, in 1773, and died in Washington, District of Columbia, in 1841. After attending Hampden Sidney College, Virginia, he began to study medicine, but being drawn toward military life he soon entered the army at nineteen years of age. In the War of 1812 he served as major-general with distinguished success. Later he represented his State in both Houses of Congress. He was the Whig candidate for the Presidency in 1840, and after an exciting canvass in what has been called the "log-cabin and hard-cider campaign" was elected. He died just one month after his inauguration.

<sup>2</sup> John Tyler, tenth President of the United States (1841–1845), was born in Charles City County, Virginia, in 1790, and died in 1862. After he was graduated from the College of William and Mary, he studied law and entered upon his long

to a few other events. After twelve years of patient effort, Samuel F. B. Morse succeeded in bringing the electric telegraph into practical use (1844). Being poor, he had tried for four years to get an appropriation from Congress for testing his invention. At length Congress reluctantly voted him \$30,000 for constructing a line from Baltimore to Washington, a distance of forty miles.

Morse himself sent the first message from the Supreme Court room, in Washington, to Baltimore. "What hath God wrought,"

What the telegraph has done for the world.

was the message. Fitting words were these, since the telegraph has brought great changes into the

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

world. By means of it trade and commerce have been much increased. Business men can keep themselves acquainted with the quotations of the world's great markets every hour in the day. They can transact more business in five or six hours now than could

political career. He served his State as governor, and represented it in both Houses of Congress. He was elected Vice-President by the Whigs in 1840, and, on the death of Harrison, became President. He was soon engaged in a bitter struggle with the Whig leaders, with whom he became extremely unpopular. As a warm advocate of State sovereignty, he gave his cordial support to the secession movement in 1861, when he was elected a member of the Confederate Congress.

JOHN TYLER.

have been transacted in as many months a hundred years ago.

Another wonderful discovery of untold value to mankind was made in 1844 by Horace Wells, a dentist of Hartford, Connecticut. He tried an experiment upon himself. He caused one of his teeth to be extracted after he had inhaled nitrous oxide, or "laughing-gas," and found that while under the influence of the

"laughing - gas " he was insensible to pain. About two years later William T. G. Morton and Charles T. Jackson, both of Boston, made a similar application of sulphuric ether to render surgical operations painless. When sulphuric ether and "laughing - gas " are thus used they are called anæsthetics.

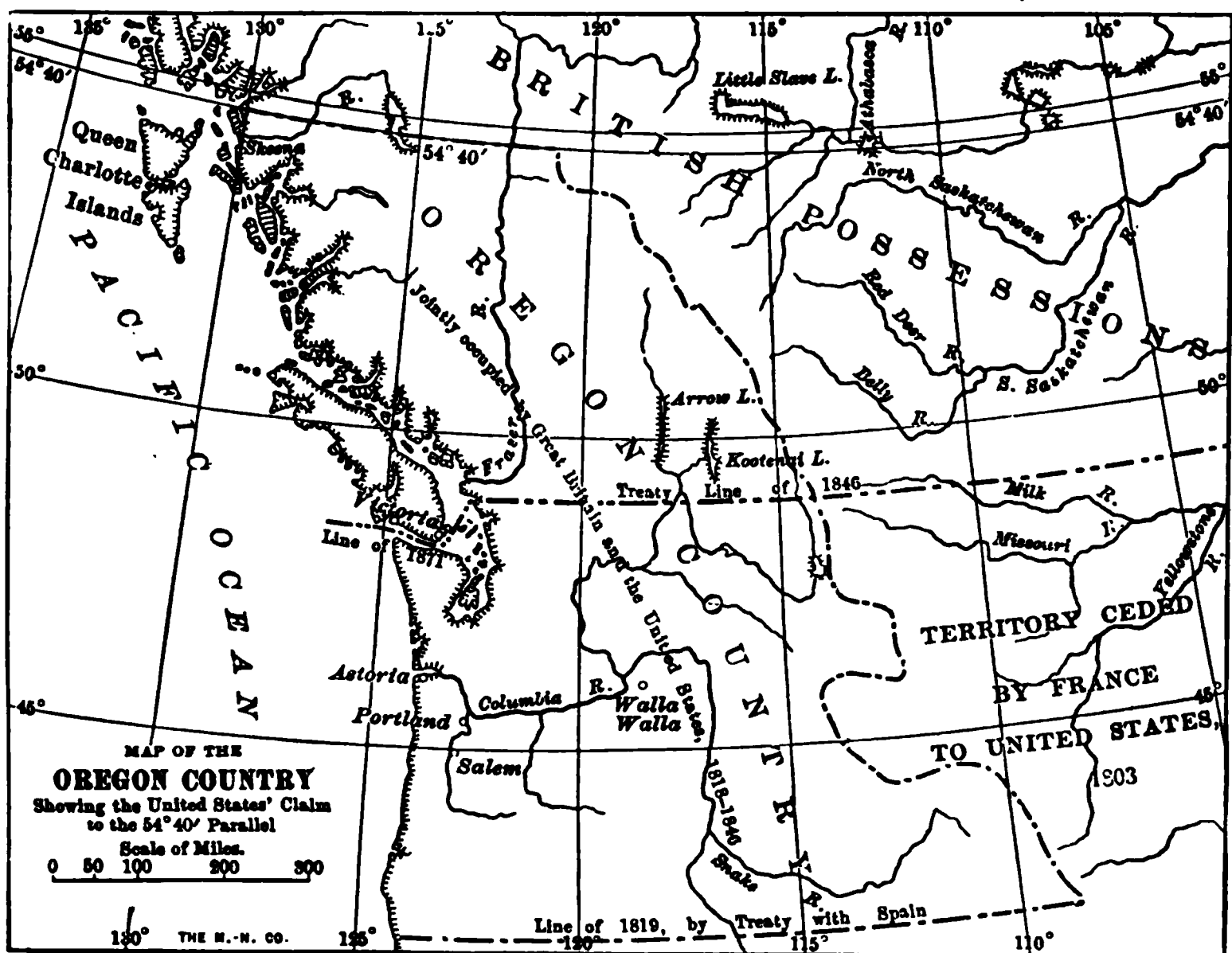
S. F. B. MORSE.

**271. "Fifty-four Forty or Fight" (1844).—**In the same year that Morse's Electric Telegraph came into successful use, there was much excitement in the United States over the dispute between our country and England about the Northwest Boundary. Our government claimed the country west of the Rockies from the northern boundary of California, then a part of Mexico, to the southern boundary of Alaska, or the parallel of 54° 40'. Great Britain claimed the region as far south as the Columbia River in latitude 46°. By 1818 the dispute over these conflicting claims had grown serious, but the

Conflicting claims  
to the Oregon  
Country.

two countries agreed to a joint occupation of the Oregon Country for ten years, and, at the end of that period for an indefinite time. Why the United States at length laid vigorous claim to it and became so eager for it that the Democratic Party in the presidential campaign of 1844, was shouting "Fifty-four forty or fight," can be told in a few words.

**272. American Settlers Strengthen Our Claims to Oregon.**—We had several reasons for claiming Oregon. In 1792, Captain Gray, of Boston, discovered the Columbia



River, which he named in honor of his ship; in 1805 Lewis and Clark explored this river; and in 1811 an American company established at its mouth the trading post, Astoria. But we made a yet stronger claim by reason of the actual settlements which Americans planted there before 1845. These settlements began in a small way as early as 1832, missionaries being among the first Americans to find their way to the Oregon Country. Now in this matter of planting settlements we had the ad-

Reasons for our claims to Oregon.

vantage of England because we were nearer the disputed territory. For a long time, to be sure, the English Hudson Bay Company had been out there making money in fur-trading, but this company had planted no settlements.

The Americans, too, were for many years little inclined to seek homes in Oregon. Although small parties of Ameri-

**American emi-  
gration in 1843  
and 1844.**

can settlers started for the Columbia River after 1832, no large settlements were made until 1843. In that year one thousand emigrants made the journey of more than two thousand miles, braving many dangers and enduring much hardship. The next year two thousand more went out, and by 1845 about seven thousand American settlers had made their homes in Oregon. The English Hudson Bay Company held only a small number of military posts and trading stations. The United States could, therefore, claim the country by right of actual possession.

By a treaty agreed upon in 1846, both England and the United States gave up a part of their claims. The boun-

**The Oregon  
boundary dispute  
settled by treaty.**

dary determined upon was neither  $54^{\circ} 40'$ , as desired by the United States, nor  $46^{\circ}$  as desired by England, but  $49^{\circ}$ , as at present. The whole Oregon Country included what is now the States of Oregon, Idaho, and Washington, or an area equal to more than fifty States like Connecticut.

Hitherto we have not had occasion to refer to a movement which was destined to overthrow the most cherished institution of the South. In order to understand this movement we must notice for a moment the new spirit which was gaining ground among the plain people of the country.

**273. The Anti-slavery Movement.**—It has been rightly said that when Andrew Jackson went to Washington as

**The rights of the  
common people.**

President he took the people with him. It is certainly true that at that time the common people began to feel a sense of their power such as they had not felt before. Jackson supported them in this feeling by standing up for their rights and by encouraging them to

have faith in themselves as controlling the affairs of the nation. There had been various limitations on suffrage in the Eastern States, but now manhood suffrage spread from the West to the East. Government by the people and for the people had become a reality.

The anti-slavery movement, led by the abolitionists, was partly the product of this democratic spirit, but was mainly due to the gradual recognition of the dignity and worth of man as man, regardless of race or color. It was felt that slavery was out of place in a country where the people are the rulers. This sentiment, at first limited to a despised few who were called fanatics, rapidly spread through all classes of society.

**274. William Lloyd Garrison and The Liberator.—**

In 1831, William Lloyd Garrison, a young man of slender means and little education, began to publish a paper called *The Liberator*. In it he urged that all the slaves in the United States should be immediately set free. He went so far as to declare that

WILLIAM LLOYD GARRISON, THE ANTI  
SLAVERY EDITOR.

it would be better to have no Union at all than to have a Union with slavery in one section of it. He boldly asserted that slavery was a "sin against God and a crime against man," and that the Constitution, by giving it support, "was a covenant with death and an agreement with hell."

**275. Southern Opposition.—**The Southern people, however, believed that the immediate abolition of slavery would bring about their financial ruin. Inasmuch as the whole industrial system of the South rested on slavery, they regarded the advocates of immediate abolition as nothing less than public enemies of that section. Therefore governors and State legislators in the South were so eager to punish



the abolitionists that large rewards were offered for their capture. But the abolitionists were in earnest, and by means of lectures, pamphlets, books, and newspapers scattered their anti-slavery ideas among the people.

**276. Northern Opposition.**--Very few people, even in the North, had any sympathy at that time with Garrison's extreme views about immediate abolition. Northern people thought that such agitation could only result in stirring up sectional feeling and might end in breaking up the Union. To them a Union with slavery seemed better than no Union at all. So the abolitionists were for a time disliked in the

#### FAC-SIMILE OF THE HEADING OF GARRISON'S PAPER.

North quite as much as in the South, and in various parts of the North anti-slavery mobs and riots were common for some years.

The opposition to Garrison's teachings became so intense that he was mobbed in the streets of Boston (1835). The mob in its fury had almost torn the clothing from his body and was dragging him through the streets with a rope around his waist when he was saved from death by the police. Elijah P. Lovejoy was mobbed and murdered in Illinois for printing an abolition newspaper (1837), and abolition speakers became accustomed to showers of eggs and stones at public meetings.

**277. Growth of the Abolition Movement.**--But in spite of all the scorn and contempt heaped upon them, in the

Garrison mobbed  
in the streets of  
Boston.

North and in the South, the heroic William Lloyd Garrison and his brave followers would not be silenced. They were, like most reformers, extreme in their views and unwise in their methods, but they were right in their leading idea that slavery was wrong. Their sincerity of purpose had its influence, and won the sympathy of many who joined them in forming abolition societies, which by 1837 included probably 150,000 members. Among them were two of the ablest defenders of the anti-slavery crusade, Wendell Phillips, the anti-slavery orator, and John Quincy Adams, the anti-slavery statesman.

**278. John Quincy Adams Defends the Right of Petition.**—John Quincy Adams was the champion of the sacred right of petition. For many years he stood almost alone in the national House of Representatives, in his opposition to slavery. He presented on the floor of the House hundreds of petitions that slavery be abolished in the District of Columbia, and that the slave-trade between the States be stopped.

As these petitions were very displeasing to Southern members, Congress unwisely voted not to receive them. This was not fair play and aroused much sympathy in the North for the abolition movement. The “gag-law,” by which the House refused to receive these petitions, continued in effect for many years (1836–1844), but the heroic efforts of the “old man eloquent,” as Adams was rightly called, at last gained for these anti-slavery petitions a respectful consideration (1844).

“Gag-law” in the House of Representatives.

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. What has the telegraph done for the world?
2. Upon what did we base our claim to Oregon?
3. What reason is assigned in the text for the origin of the anti-slavery movement? What position did William Lloyd Garrison take upon the slavery question?
4. How did Southern opposition to the abolitionists express itself? How Northern opposition? What do you admire in William Lloyd Garrison and his anti-slavery friends? What connection did John Quincy Adams have with the abolition movement?
5. Read the account of his heroic efforts as described in Morse's “John Quincy Adams.”

## TEXAS AND THE MEXICAN WAR

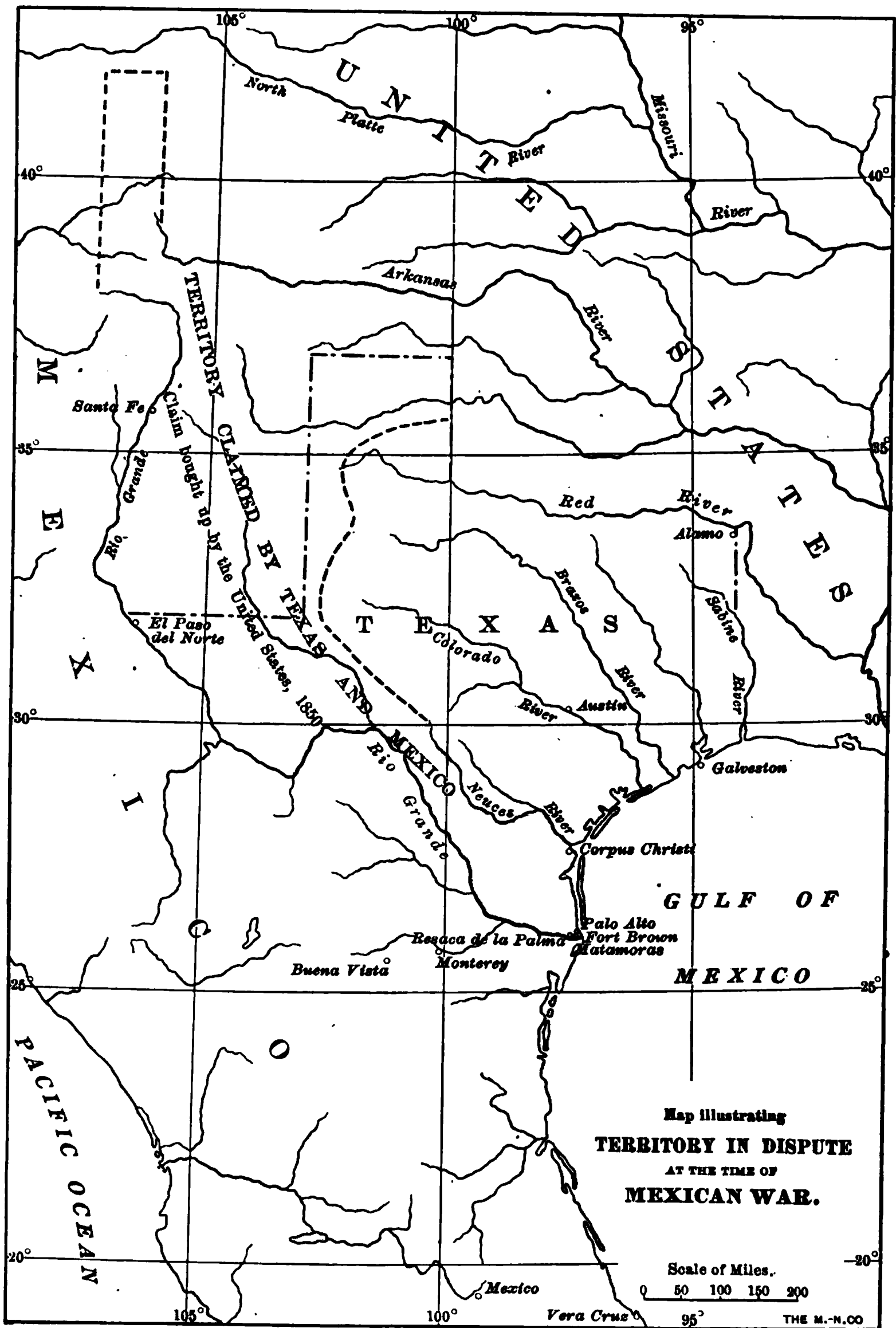
**279. The Annexation of Texas.**—About 1820, Southern people began to migrate to Texas, which was then a part of Mexico. By the year 1835, several colonies had been planted by these settlers from the Southern States. Being dissatisfied with Mexican rule the Texans revolted (1835), defeated the Mexicans, and drove them out of Texas. They then declared their independence and sought annexation to the United States.

The South was eager for this annexation because Texas lay south of the slavery line established by the Missouri Compromise in 1820. If Texas, which was as large as fifty States like Connecticut, could be added to the slave territory of the South, the cause of slavery would be materially strengthened. In time, four or five slave States could be made out of this vast area, and the South would thereby have a larger number of senators. This increase of voting power in the Senate would enable her to maintain, for some years at least, the balance between the slave States and the free States. The North entered a vigorous protest against annexation, but the South won, and Texas entered the Union as a slave State in 1845.

Why the South  
favored the an-  
nexation of Texas.

**280. Attitude of the North and the South Toward the Mexican War.**—One of the reasons urged by the North against annexation was, that it would cause trouble with the Mexicans, who refused to acknowledge the independence of Texas. But this objection had no weight with the Southern slaveholders. A war with Mexico might result in the acquisition of more slave territory, and hence, such a war was not, from their stand-point, undesirable. The North, however, earnestly opposed the acquisition of any more slave territory, and just as earnestly opposed a war with Mexico.

**281. The Causes of the Mexican War.**—Mexico wished to avoid serious trouble with the United States about the annexation of Texas. But before the question could be set-





tled there arose a dispute about the boundary line between Texas and Mexico. Texas claimed the territory to the Rio Grande; Mexico claimed it to the Nueces River. The territory in dispute was large and therefore desirable both to the South and to Mexico. While the difficulty was still under discussion, however, our government took steps that were almost certain to bring on war.

General Taylor had been sent down in command of American troops to support the cause of Texas, and was ordered to advance into the disputed territory.

He did so, General Taylor advances into the disputed territory. taking a position on the

Rio Grande at Fort Brown, opposite Matamoras.<sup>1</sup> The Mexicans justly considered this an invasion of their territory and therefore an act of war. It certainly looked like an attempt to provoke them to make an attack on the American troops. At all events, this was the result of General Taylor's movement. A

JAMES K. POLK.

Mexican force crossed the Rio Grande and killed some American dragoons belonging to a reconnoitring party.

<sup>1</sup> Before this time President Polk had sent an envoy to Mexico whose government refused to receive him. This action of Mexico aroused the resentment of our government.

James K. Polk, eleventh President of the United States (1845-1849), was born in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, in 1795, and died in 1849. In 1806 he removed to Tennessee. After graduating with distinguished honors from the University of North Carolina he entered upon the study of law. He served the State of Tennessee not only as governor but as member of the national House of Representatives. His manners were simple and his private life sincere and blameless.

At once President Polk sent to Congress a message in which he declared, "War exists notwithstanding all our efforts to avoid it—exists by the act of Mexico herself. Mexico has invaded our territory and shed American blood upon American soil." Congress thereupon declared that war existed "by the act of Mexico," and at once sent troops and supplies to invade Mexican territory (1846).

**282. The Character of the Struggle.**—The American plan of campaign was comprehensive. It indicated that the purpose of the war was the conquest of new territory. Although the Americans met with stout opposition from Mexico, the American commanders easily carried out their plans. The war was one-sided. The battles were all won by the Americans, even in cases where the Mexicans greatly outnumbered our troops.

ZACHARY TAYLOR.

There were many reasons for the defeat of the Mexicans. Their government was weak and poor; their generals were inefficient; and their troops were without discipline and proper equipment. Although the Mexicans were spirited and brave, they were greatly inferior to the Americans in intelligence, dash, and endurance.

**283. Results of the War.**—In less than two years Mexico was conquered and her entire territory was at the mercy of the United States. But, however unfair our government may have been in bringing on the war with this weak country, it was willing to pay for any territory it

might secure. Mexico received more than eighteen million dollars<sup>1</sup> for the cession it made to the United States. Nevertheless, we cannot but regret that our people, distinguished for their keen sense of justice, should have consented to wage this war in the interests of slavery. But the results of the war seemed decidedly favorable to the slaveholders, who thought they had gained a vast region adapted to the use of slave labor.

If we include in the territory acquired by the Mexican war the State of Texas and the parts of Arizona and New Mexico secured by the Gadsden Purchase<sup>2</sup> a little later, the whole area is equal to more than one hundred and ninety States like Connecticut.

**284. The Wilmot Proviso.**—But there was another result which made the war a costly one to the United States, and that was the increased bitterness between the two sections over the slavery question. The South insisted that slavery should go into the new territory and the North insisted that it should not. In fact, this quarrel over the question of slavery in the new territory began even before the war was over. For when in 1846, it seemed pretty evident what the result of the fighting would be, David Wilmot, a representative in Congress from Pennsylvania, proposed that slavery should be forever prohibited in all the territory which should be acquired from Mexico. This was called the Wilmot Proviso. It failed of enactment by Congress, but it expressed a policy which was soon to be made a guiding principle by a great political party. Two years later this principle became the political watchword of the Free Soil Party and later of the Republican Party. The Wilmot Proviso marked the swift approach of the downfall of slavery in the United States.

<sup>1</sup> The sum paid to Mexico was \$15,000,000. The United States also satisfied claims of American citizens against Mexico to the amount of about \$3,500,000.

<sup>2</sup> In 1853 a treaty was negotiated through James Gadsden which settled the disputed boundary with Mexico. The United States paid \$10,000,000 and gained the Mesilla Valley, an area of about twenty million acres. It formed the southern part of what is now New Mexico and Arizona, and became known as the Gadsden Purchase.



## TO THE PUPIL

1. Why did the South favor the annexation of Texas? What was the attitude of the North and the South toward the Mexican War?
2. What were the causes of this war? How did it begin? Give three reasons why the Mexicans were defeated in every battle.
3. What were the principal results of the war? Including Texas and the Gadsden Purchase, how many States like your own would the whole territory acquired by the Mexican War equal? What was the Wilmot Proviso?
4. Read Thomas Nelson Page's Old South.

## THE MEXICAN CESSION AND THE COMPROMISE OF 1850

**285. Discovery of Gold in California and its Results (1848).**—California had been valued for its fertile soil and its delightful climate. It had also the fine harbor of San Francisco. These attractions drew a few settlers, who in 1848 made a great discovery. Some workmen, in digging a mill-race for Captain Sutter, a Swiss immigrant, discovered shining particles of gold in a stream flowing into the Sacramento River, about 100 miles northeast of San Francisco. Upon examination of the surrounding country, the soil, the river-beds, and the rocks were found to be rich with gold. It was a wonderful discovery. Before the close of 1861 these mines had yielded more than \$500,000,000.

As soon as the news spread abroad people were almost beside themselves with excitement, and at once rushed for the gold region from all the settled parts of the United States. Farmers, carpenters, store-keepers, and professional men were seized with a desire for sudden wealth, and left their work to seek the golden treasure. Vessels coming into the harbors of San Francisco were deserted by their crews, who, with the rest, wildly rushed with pick-axe and shovel to the mines.

There were three routes to California from the Eastern States: The first and longest was by vessel around Cape Horn, the trip from New York to San Francisco in 1848





taking about one hundred and thirty days; the second was down to the Isthmus of Panama, across it, and up along the western coast to San Francisco; the third was by slowly moving trains of wagons and ox-carts overland across the country. By this last route it took one hundred days to travel to the valleys of California after reaching the plains west of the Mississippi.

**The three routes to California.**

The difficulties

**SUTTER'S MILL, WHERE GOLD WAS FIRST FOUND IN CALIFORNIA.**

many. The Indians often attacked the emigrants; and the Mormons of Utah, through whose territory the gold-seekers passed, did all they could to obstruct the way, even encouraging Indians to kill the emigrants. Thousands died on the way, and the bones of human beings, horses, and oxen were strewed along the route. The eagerness to reach the gold fields often prevented the emigrants from taking time to bury their dead.

**The dangers of the overland route.**

Large numbers of men flocked to the gold regions. In

less than eighteen months after the discovery, California had a population of not less than 100,000. In the meantime,

**Results of the discovery of gold in California.** San Francisco increased from 2,000 to 20,000 people, and Sacramento from a little cluster of houses to a place of 10,000 inhabitants. The

discovery of gold in California had important results: (1) By greatly increasing the gold in circulation, it stimulated

#### THE HARBOR OF SAN FRANCISCO IN 1849.

trade and commerce; (2) by developing the Pacific coast it led about twenty years later to the building of the first Pacific railroad; (3) it had, as we shall now see, an important bearing upon the slavery question.

**286. California Seeks Admission into the Union as a Free State (1849).<sup>1</sup>**—In about a year after the discovery of

<sup>1</sup> Zachary Taylor, twelfth President of the United States (1849-1850), was born in Orange County, Virginia, in 1784, and died in 1850. While he was yet an infant his parents removed to Kentucky, which continued to be his adopted State until 1841, when he made his family home in Baton Rouge, Louisiana. Although his opportunities for education were very limited, his keen desire for knowledge led him to study with care ancient and modern history. He became a daring and skilful soldier, serving his country with great distinction as brigadier-general in the

gold there were people enough in California for a State. But Congress had been so busy discussing the slavery question that it had not established any government at all there. This was most unfortunate, for among the gold-diggers there were many thieves and ruffians, who were very disorderly and lawless. Hence the better classes of citizens were forced to act without waiting for Congress. They organized a government of their own, established order, and applied for admission into the Union in 1849. As a large majority of the people were from the North, they wished California to be made a free State.

**287. Difficult Slavery Questions in 1850.**—It will be remembered that the Missouri Compromise was called forth by the purchase of the Louisiana Territory. The whole question was opened afresh by the Mexican Cession. Should the territory acquired from Mexico be slave or free? The North argued that inasmuch as this territory had always been free, it should continue to be so. The South was

MILLARD FILLMORE.

Mexican War. "Old Rough and Ready," as he was fondly called by his many admirers, indicates that he was a popular hero. He died in the second year of his Presidency.

Millard Fillmore, thirteenth President of the United States (1850-1853), was born in Cayuga County, New York, in 1800, and died in 1874. In early youth he learned the meaning of a life of struggle. Like Lincoln and Garfield, he was a poor boy, and like them he overcame, by invincible determination, almost insurmountable difficulties. Until fourteen years of age he worked on a farm nine months of the year, and attended the primitive schools of those times the remaining three. At fourteen he was apprenticed to a trade, but managed to find some time for hard study. Later he studied law, and won for himself an enviable position at the bar. Having been elected Vice-President in 1848, he became President on the death of Zachary Taylor, in 1850. His kindly manner and never-failing courtesy made him very popular.

divided in opinion. Some of the Southerners wished to extend the line of the Missouri Compromise,  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , as a boundary to the Pacific. Others claimed, as in 1820, that Congress had no constitutional right to interfere with slavery; and that the people in the territories ought to be allowed to decide for themselves whether they should come into the Union as free or slave States.

The settlement of the dispute was one of extreme importance. It involved several points of issue: (1) California wished to come in as a free State, but in that case the balance of power in the Senate would be disturbed. Hence there were strong objections from the South. (2) The anti-

**Slavery in California and the District of Columbia.** slavery men continued to urge upon Congress legislation that would abolish slavery, or, at least, the slave trade in the District of Columbia. Whether or not Congress had a right to meddle with slavery in the territories, it clearly had a right to enact a measure against slavery in the District of Columbia, which was under the direct control of Congress. We have already seen how John Quincy Adams bravely struggled for years in behalf of legislative action against slavery in this district. (3) The South bitterly complained that the North was violating the Fugitive Slave Law, by aiding the escape of slaves from their masters to Canada.

All these difficult slavery questions were pressing for satisfactory answers, and many people began to fear a dis-  
**Threats of secession.** solution of the Union. Threats of secession were freely made by some of the more hot-headed pro-slavery men. It was evident that prompt and wise measures must be taken to quiet the violent feelings among people in both sections.

**288. The Compromise of 1850.**—Henry Clay had already fairly gained the title of "Peace-maker" by taking a leading part in securing the Missouri Compromise in 1820, and the compromise in 1833 settling the difficulties brought about by the tariff and nullification in South Carolina. In his old age he was again called upon to help meet these new difficulties in 1850. He therefore

**Henry Clay the "Peace-maker."**

prepared what was called the Omnibus Bill, because it made provision for settling many questions.

This famous Omnibus Bill, or Compromise of 1850, contained four essential clauses, two of which favored the North and two the South. They were as follows:

(1) California was to be admitted as a free State (for the North); (2) but in the rest of the Mexican cession, divided into the two territories of Utah and New Mexico, the people were to decide for themselves whether or not they would have slaves (for the South); (3) the slave trade, not slavery, was to be abolished in the District of Columbia (for the North); (4) but a vigorous and exacting fugitive slave law was to be passed (for the South). Many people thought that this compromise would bring peace and good-will throughout the country.

The four essential clauses of the Omnibus Bill.



FUGITIVE SLAVE ADVERTISEMENTS.

**289. The Fugitive Slave Law and its Results in the North.**—Congress had directed that the Fugitive Slave Law enacted in 1793 should be carried out by the various State governments. As the South charged that the Northern States were neglecting to enforce this law in a proper manner, the fugitive slave clause was inserted in the compromise of 1850, as has just been stated. In accordance with this clause, Congress passed a rigid Fugitive Slave Law, which was to be enforced not by State, but by Federal officers.

By the provisions of this law fugitive slaves, or negroes claimed as fugitive slaves, were to have no trial by jury and were not to be permitted to testify in their own defence. All citizens, if called upon, were required to aid the United States marshal in capturing runaway slaves. Many cases of cruelty, injustice, and violence followed.

The indignation of the North rose to fever heat, and



soon the "higher law" of right and justice was openly proclaimed. Some people in the North were ready to defy a law which was, in their view, cruel and inhuman.

**290. Personal Liberty Bills and Their Results in the South.**—The outcome of this intense opposition to the Fugitive Slave Law was the passage, by many Northern States, of the Personal Liberty Bills. These laws granted trial by jury to runaway slaves and in other ways protected them from the severity of the Fugitive Slave Law. Naturally these Personal Liberty Laws embittered the Southern slaveholders, who accused the North of a desire to break up slavery. They further asserted that in passing these Personal Liberty Bills the Northern States were nullifying an act of Congress and violating the Constitution.

HARRIET BEECHER STOWE, THE AUTHOR OF "UNCLE TOM'S CABIN."

**291. The Underground Railroad.**—Some people in the North secretly aided the runaway slaves in escaping to Canada. The fugitives made their way to freedom by means of the so-called "Underground Railroad." The "stations" were the houses of persons who received the poor negroes at any hour, night or day, giving them food and shelter, and keeping them in a safe hiding-place until they could be sent on to the next "station." In this way they were fed and cared for until they reached Canada, the northern end of this strange railroad. It is estimated that over 30,000 fugitive slaves escaped to Canada between 1830 and 1860.

**292. Uncle Tom's Cabin (1852).**—In the midst of the stirring discussion about slavery, "Uncle Tom's Cabin," by Harriet Beecher Stowe, appeared (1852). During the first

year after its publication more than 200,000 copies were sold. It was read in all parts of Europe as well as in the United States. It not only appealed to the imagination, but it also touched the heart and conscience. It rapidly caused people to feel that slavery was more than a political question. Through its influence hundreds of thousands of men and women now joined the abolitionists in the conviction that slavery was a great moral evil.

**293. Commodore Perry Secures a Treaty with Japan (1854).**—Two years after the publication of *Uncle Tom's Cabin* Commodore Perry sailed into the ports of Japan with a fleet of steamers. Previous to that time, the Japanese had been suspicious of all foreign nations and had refused to trade with them. Commodore Perry won the good-will of these people and they entered into a treaty of commerce with our country. From that

FRANKLIN PIERCE.

time Japan has been on a most friendly footing with the United States. Through her trade relations with this country and Europe she has come into touch with western civilization, and has surprised the world by the eagerness with which she has adopted it.

**294. Filibustering Expeditions (1851-1860); The Ostend Manifesto (1854).**—By the admission of California as a free State in 1850, the balance between the free and the slave States was destroyed, for now there were sixteen free to fifteen slave States. The outlook for slavery was so gloomy that the Southerners turned their eyes toward Cuba,

as they had turned them, a few years before, toward Texas. Slavery already existed in Cuba, and if the island could be secured to the Union it would furnish two more slave States. Our government was on friendly terms with Spain and no pretext for war existed when, in 1851, the first filibustering expedition started out from New Orleans. The scheme ended in disaster, but there were still many greedy eyes turned toward Cuba.

Some people thought that Spain might be induced by treaty to give it up, and even advocated seizure if it could not be got by cession. In 1854, therefore, the United States ministers to England, France, and Spain, acting under instruction from President Pierce,<sup>1</sup> met at Ostend, Belgium, to discuss the situation. They declared, in the Ostend Manifesto, that Cuba ought to belong to the United States, and that if Spain should refuse to sell it, we should secure it by force. It is perhaps unnecessary to say that the United States did not adopt any such policy.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Trace on your map the three routes to California from the Eastern States. What were the results of the discovery of gold?
2. Explain why California sought admission into the Union as a free State. What were the three difficult slavery questions in 1850?
3. In what way was the Missouri Compromise called forth by the Louisiana Purchase? What question was asked about the Mexican Cession? How did the North answer the question? How did the South?
4. What two clauses in the Compromise of 1850 favored the North? What two the South?

<sup>1</sup> Franklin Pierce, fourteenth President of the United States (1853-1857), was born in Hillsborough, New Hampshire, in 1804, and died in 1869. In his class at Bowdoin College, from which he was graduated, were Henry W. Longfellow and Nathaniel Hawthorne, the latter being a life-long friend. Entering the army at the outbreak of the Mexican War, he was so brave that he rose to the rank of brigadier-general. After serving in both Houses of Congress he was elected to the Presidency in 1852. Although he believed in "State Rights" and opposed all anti-slavery movements, he urged the people of New Hampshire, in the stormy days following the attack upon Fort Sumter, in 1861, to stand by the Union.

5. What was the Fugitive Slave Law and what were its results? Explain the Personal Liberty Bills and the Underground Railroad. What effect had "Uncle Tom's Cabin" upon the slavery question?
6. What was the purpose of the filibustering expedition? What do you think of the Ostend Manifesto?
7. Read the chapters on slavery in Coffin's "Building the Nation."

### THE FIGHT FOR SLAVERY IN THE TERRITORIES

**295. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill (1854).**—By the compromise of 1850 the people in all the territory acquired from Mexico, except California, were to decide for themselves whether or not they would have slavery. But this act was not enough. The South desires a further extension of slave territory.

The need of the South for a still further extension of slave territory to offset the rapidly growing power of the free North became more pressing every year.

By the Missouri Compromise of 1820 slavery was forever prohibited in the Louisiana Purchase north and west of Missouri, or north of the parallel of 36° 30'. In 1854, Stephen A. Douglas, a Democratic Senator from Illinois, claimed that the Compromise of 1850 had repealed the Missouri Compromise; moreover, that Congress had no Constitutional right in 1820 to shut out slavery from the Louisiana Purchase. He therefore proposed the erection of the two territories of Kansas and Nebraska, in which the settlers should decide whether they would have slavery or not. This measure, known as the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, became a law in 1854.

It had many important results: (1) It took from Congress all authority over slavery in the territories, and gave this authority to the people; (2) it opened to slavery all the territories belonging to the United States; (3) it led to a bitter struggle Results of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. over Kansas; (4) and it reopened with renewed bitterness the slavery controversy, which could never again be settled by peaceable means.

**296. The Struggle for the Control of Kansas.**—Since the people now had authority to decide the question of free-

dom or slavery in Kansas, both the North and the South made a desperate effort to gain control of the territory. Emigration was no longer a matter of private or personal interests. There were now urgent political reasons why emigration to Kansas should be encouraged from both sections. Meetings were therefore held in many leading Northern cities, and money was raised for the support of emigrant aid societies to send settlers to Kansas. Soon long trains of emigrant wagons were winding their way across the prairies. As the Missouri people refused to let them pass across that State, they were obliged to go north through Iowa.

**Emigrant aid societies in the North.**

Missouri also made hasty preparations to get control of Kansas. But in this struggle the South was at a disadvantage, because slave-holders were afraid to risk taking their slaves into a territory that might, by vote of the people, become free. The South, therefore, did not make such an organized effort to settle Kansas as was made in the North.

**Bloodshed in Kansas.**

The Missouri pro-slavery men, however, made hasty preparations to do all they could. Arming themselves they crossed the border and began to plant colonies. Both sides were aroused, and both took part in the plundering, burning, and murdering.

**297. Triumph for the Free-State Men.**—On election days the men from Missouri, who soon became known as “border ruffians,” went over to Kansas in large numbers and cast fraudulent votes in the interests of slavery. By false voting and false counting of ballots the pro-slavery

**Two rival governments in Kansas.**

party was for some time ahead. Two rival governments were established. Although the anti-slavery men were clearly in the majority, President Pierce supported the pro-slavery faction, and used the influence of the administration to secure the admission of Kansas into the Union as a slave State. But in spite of all that could be done by President Pierce and the pro-slavery leaders, the cause of freedom triumphed. After three years (1855–1858) of this civil war, in what was truly called “Bleeding Kansas,” the free-State men won a victory, and

Kansas was admitted to the Union in 1861 with an anti-slavery constitution.

**298. Assault on Charles Sumner (1856).**—During the fiery debating in Congress over the difficulties in Kansas, the distinguished anti-slavery leader, Charles Sumner of Massachusetts, made in the Senate a vigorous speech on the "Crime against Kansas." In this speech he severely attacked Senator Butler, from South Carolina. Sumner's Southern enemies became more intense in their hatred of him than ever before. In the midst of the exciting days which followed, Senator Butler's nephew, Preston S. Brooks, who was a representative in Congress from South Carolina, came suddenly upon Mr. Sumner while writing at his desk in the Senate Chamber and assaulted him. Again and again Brooks struck Sumner

CHARLES SUMNER.

over the head with a cane until he reeled and fell senseless to the floor. Sumner did not recover from the shock for over three years. This assault increased the bitterness of feeling and made both sections more determined in their actions.

Results of the assault.

**299. New Political Parties (1854).**—Slavery had brought about in political parties great changes, which we will now briefly consider. In 1833 the National Republican Party (see par. 244) was succeeded by the Whig Party, of which Henry Clay became the leader. This party opposed the Mexican War. At the close of this war many Northern Whigs and Democrats believed in the

The Whigs.

principle of the Wilmot Proviso—that slavery should be prohibited in all the Mexican cession. They became anti-slavery men and, joining the Abolitionists, formed the Free Soil Party. But while many Northern Whigs became anti-slavery men, many pro-slavery Whigs in the South joined the Democrats. The result was the breaking into fragments of the Whig Party after 1852.

The passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill (1854) caused still another split in parties. By reason of this measure all voters in the North who opposed the further extension of slavery, whether they had been previously known as Democrats or Free Soilers, called themselves Anti-Nebraska Men. In the following year the “Anti-Nebraska Men” began to be called the Republican Party, which has ever since been known by that name. The cornerstone of the Republican Party was the principle contained in the Wilmot Proviso.

TABLE OF IMMIGRATION FROM EUROPE FOR THE YEARS 1845–1856.

Year.	Number of Immigrants.	Year.	Number of Immigrants.
1845.....	114,371	1851... ..	379,466
1846.....	154,416	1852.....	371,603
1847.....	234,968	1853.....	368,645
1848.....	226,527	1854.....	427,833
1849.....	297,024	1855.....	200,877
1850.....	310,004	1856 .....	200,436

**300. Immigration from Europe.**—Before 1840, the total number of foreign immigrants into the United States during any one year never exceeded 100,000. A reference to the immigration table given above will show that from 1845 onward, especially after 1848, the increase was surprisingly great. During almost the whole decade from 1840 to 1850 there was in Europe much unrest, and this led to political disturbances extending through many European countries. In 1846 and 1847 a terrible famine in Ireland caused thousands to seek homes in the United States. The discovery of gold in

**The reasons for  
the great increase  
in immigration  
from Europe.**

California, also, had a great influence in stimulating the desire to seek a land where the working man could have prosperity, political freedom, and happiness. As can be seen by noting the rapid increase of population in many of our Western States and Territories, a large number of these immigrants joined the Westward movement.

TABLE OF POPULATION IN WESTERN STATES AND TERRITORIES IN 1840, 1850, AND 1860.

STATES.	POPULATION.		
	1840.	1850.	1860.
Illinois.....	472,254	846,034	1,704,323
Indiana.....	678,698	977,154	1,339,000
Iowa.....	42,924	191,881	673,844
Michigan .....	211,560	395,071	742,314
Wisconsin.....	30,749	304,756	774,710
California .....	.....	91,635	361,353
Minnesota.....	.....	6,038	171,864
Utah.....	.....	11,354	40,214
Colorado.....	.....	.....	34,231
Kansas. ....	.....	.....	106,579
Nebraska.....	.....	.....	28,759
Oregon.....	.....	.....	52,337

It is significant that nearly all of them sought the North. They avoided making their homes in the South, because there labor was servile and degrading. In fact, the slaveholders did not encourage European immigrants to come South because they thought the presence of free white laborers might dissatisfy the slaves with their condition and lead them to rise in insurrection. The slaveholders even guarded against the spread of intelligence among their slaves, on account of the discontent intelligence was sure to bring about among the blacks.

Why immigrants would not settle in the South.

**301. Economic and Social Conditions in the South.—** We see, then, that slavery in the South prevented the increase of population there by immigration, and thus hindered the most rapid development of its resources. There



were reasons, also, within the South's own boundaries, which explain why it did not keep pace with the North in industrial prosperity.

Three reasons  
why the South fell  
behind the North  
in prosperity.

1. The negroes were so lazy and careless that on the average two or three slaves in the South would do only as much work as one free laborer in the North. 2. Since slavery

#### A SOUTHERN SUGAR PLANTATION.

degraded labor, the large class of people in the South known as "poor whites" would work but little. 3. The planters themselves spent most of their time in leisure, leaving their business in charge of overseers.

When we bear in mind that of the three great classes of people in the South—the planters, the poor whites, and the

slaves—the planters did nothing, the poor whites as little as they could, and the slaves not more than half as much as the same number of intelligent free laborers would have done, we cannot be surprised that the South was so rapidly outstripped by the North in productive power and therefore in wealth and prosperity.

**302. Economic and Social Conditions in the North.—**While there were three great classes in the South, there was in the North, so far as production was concerned, but one. In this section nearly all belonged to the working, producing class. In the North, then, there was a busy hum of industry. A spirit of enterprise, manifesting itself in agriculture, manufacture, trade, and commerce, was everywhere present. There all labor was honorable and idlers were few. Such being the industrial conditions, the North was soon far ahead of the South in population, in productive power, and in political influence.

**303. Influence of the West in Favor of Nationalism.—**Again glancing over the tables showing increase in population in some of the Western States and territories from 1840 to 1850 and from 1850 to 1860, we shall see that that increase was very great. Nor was it all due to foreign immigration. Much of it was due to the large movement of population from the Eastern States. The prairie lands, so fertile and so easily brought under cultivation, invited the laborer to begin life anew where industrial conditions highly favored prosperity. The railroad encouraged the movement by making the transportation of emigrants and goods rapid, easy, and inexpensive.

**The prairies and the railroad.**

It is worth while to notice that only a small part of this Westward emigration was from the South. The West was being rapidly occupied by men who were not in sympathy with the slaveholding planter. Moreover, when these people in the West began to find a market for their corn, wheat, and other produce, they traded with the North because the North had what they needed. The North and the West found mutual profit in trade. With common interests they soon

**Friendly relations between the North and the West.**

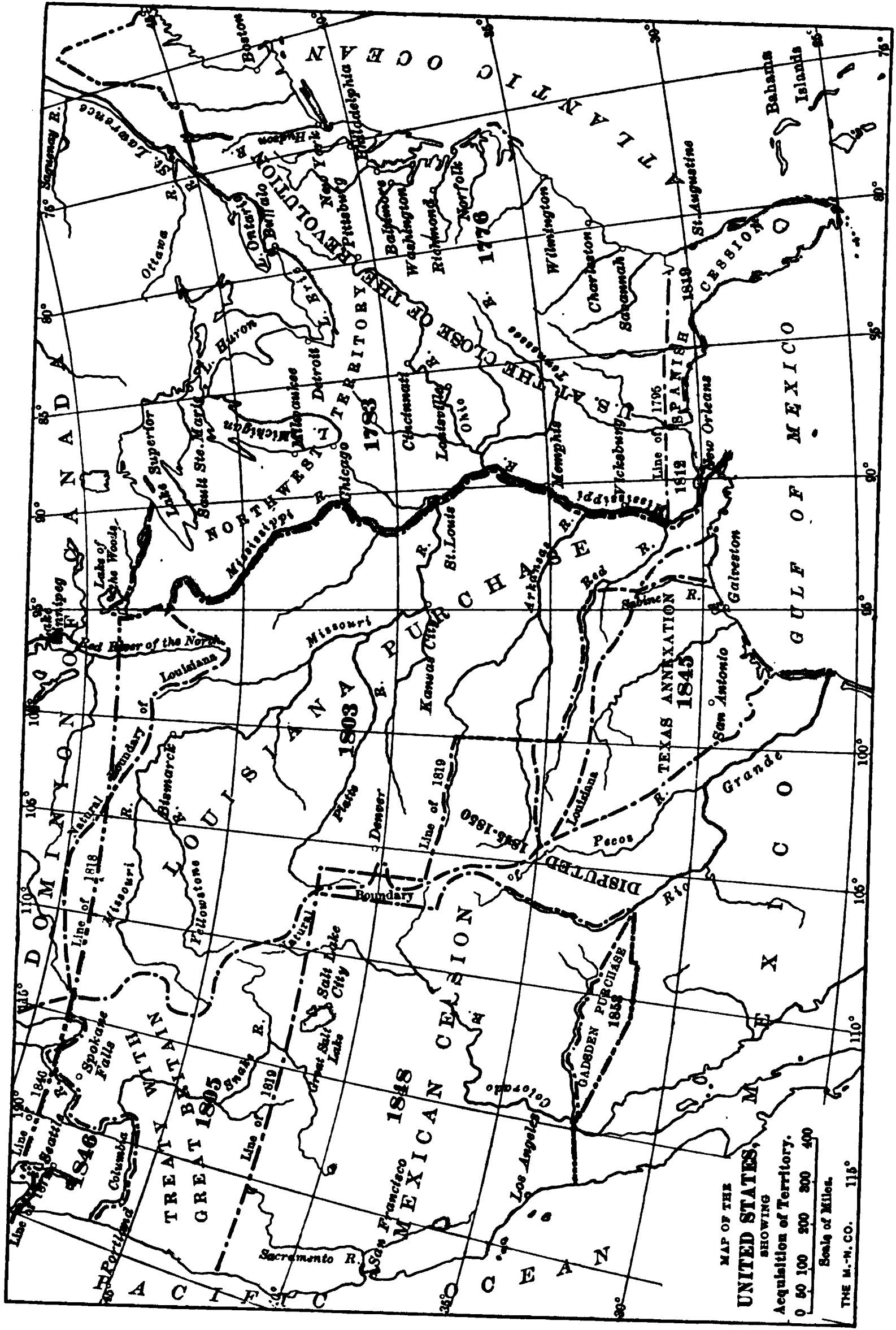
found themselves having common sympathies and common political aims and purposes.

Year by year the West became more and more like the North. Her loyalty to the Union was unquestioned. Having received statehood from the national government, the Western States had very little of that State Rights feeling so common in the South. They were first of all Americans, ready to stand up for the preservation of the Union whenever it should be in danger. When the inevitable clash of arms between the North and the South came in 1861, the Westerner was on the side of the North and shouldered his musket in behalf of a Union which he had unwittingly helped to weld into a solid, indivisible nation.

**304. The Financial Panic of 1857.**—The great financial panics of this century have occurred at intervals of about twenty years. You will recall that the panic of 1837 was preceded by unusual business prosperity. The same condition existed before the panic of 1857. It was easy to get money, and men were seized with the desire to make fortunes by speculating in Western lands. Railroads were built faster than they could get business support. The discovery of gold in California and Australia had increased the money in circulation and thus contributed to the general feeling of prosperity. Extravagance in living followed. Trade was greatly stimulated and soon there was an over-production of goods. There had been too much credit, and that brought on the panic. In August, 1857, the crash came and everywhere there was great business distress.

**305. The Dred Scott Decision (1857).<sup>1</sup>**—The Kansas-

<sup>1</sup> This noted decision was made public in the first year of Buchanan's administration. James Buchanan, fifteenth President of the United States (1857-1861), was born near Mercersburg, Pennsylvania, in 1791, and died in 1868. After his graduation from Dickinson College he studied law. He filled many public positions of great responsibility. Besides serving in both Houses of Congress he became Secretary of State under President Polk and minister to England in Pierce's administration. As President of the United States during the trying years just preceding the Civil War, he was severely blamed by the Unionists because he did not take a firm stand in opposition to the secession movement.



MAP OF THE  
UNITED STATES,  
SHOWING  
Acquisition of Territory.  
0 50 100 200 300 400  
Scale of Miles.  
THE M.-N. CO. 115°



Nebraska Bill (1854) deprived Congress of all authority over the question of slavery in the Territories, and left it wholly in the hands of the people. Then began the struggle between the two sections for control. It was soon evident that the North, with greatly superior resources, must win in other Territories just as it had won in Kansas.

The principle of popular sovereignty applied to all the territories.

The South was dismayed at the prospect and looked about for some means of escaping from the apparently hopeless situation. The means was found in the Dred Scott Decision (1857). Dred Scott was a slave belonging to an army surgeon. In 1834, this surgeon went with his slave from Missouri to Illinois, and some years afterward to Minnesota Territory. On the return of master and slave to Missouri, Dred Scott claimed that, inasmuch as he had been taken by his owner into free territory, he himself was a free man.

JAMES BUCHANAN.

The case was finally tried in the Supreme Court of the United States. The decision supported the extreme position the pro-slavery men had taken.

It declared, in effect, (1) that a slave, according to the Constitution, was not a person but a chattel or mere piece of property; (2) that the Missouri Compromise, forbidding slavery in a part of the Louisiana Purchase, was unconstitutional, since Congress had no right to interfere with slavery in the Territories; (3) and that a master had as much right to take his slave with him into a free State as he had to

take his horse, his cow, or any other kind of personal property.

This decision was far-reaching. It meant nothing less than the extension of slavery all over the Union. It intensified the anti-slavery feeling in the North, where many threatened that they would not obey the decision. The slaveholders became reckless. They even went so far as to re-open the slave trade with Africa, for the importation of

slaves was openly carried on from 1857 to the outbreak of the Civil War. This high-handed proceeding—a direct violation of the law prohibiting the importation of slaves after 1808—indicated that all hope for further compromise was useless.

**306. John Brown's Raid at Harper's Ferry (1859).—**John Brown was a thoroughgoing abolitionist, who had taken a prominent part in the struggle for Kansas. He had a strong will, a rugged, intense nature, and was deeply

#### JOHN BROWN

religious. He believed that slavery was a curse to the nation, and that he himself was an instrument in God's hands to put an end to it in this country. The only way to carry out his purpose was, as he thought, to make slave-property insecure. His plan was to aid the slaves in rising and then in escaping to the mountains of Virginia, which would become a rallying-place for the negroes. Having this aim in view, in the autumn of 1859, with about twenty followers, he seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry.

**John Brown and his plan.**

His plan met with disastrous failure. He was captured,

brought to a speedy trial, and hanged. Throughout his trial he was calm and dignified, and died bravely. The South was alarmed and angered by this deliberate plan to stir up a general uprising of slaves. Results of the raid.  
A large majority of the Northern people also bitterly con-

#### JOHN BROWN ON HIS WAY TO EXECUTION.

demned it. John Brown's raid increased the misunderstanding and widened the breach between the two sections. The irrepressible conflict was now at hand.

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. How did the Kansas-Nebraska Bill differ from the Missouri Compromise? What important results did it have? What struggle did the North and the South make to get control of Kansas?



2. You can easily see how such a struggle would stir up bitter feelings in the people of the North and of the South. The assault on Charles Sumner illustrates well the intensity and depth of this feeling.
  3. You will do well to note that the "Anti-Nebraska Men" banded together on the one issue—that there should be no further extension of slavery. The members of the Republican Party did the same. The fight all along, except in the case of the Abolitionists, was about the extension of slavery into new States.
  4. Why did European immigrants refuse to settle in the South? Give three reasons why the South fell behind the North in prosperity.
  5. Account for the friendly relations between the North and the West, and for the national feeling in the West.
  6. Before taking up the Dred Scott Decision review the following topics: Natural boundary between the free and the slave States before the purchase of Louisiana; the Missouri Compromise (1820); the Compromise of 1850; the Kansas-Nebraska Bill (1854).
  7. What extreme ground was taken by the slaveholders in the Dred Scott Decision? What were the far-reaching results of this decision?
  8. What was John Brown's plan? What were the results of his raid?
  9. Subject for debate: Resolved that slavery was a social, industrial, moral, and political evil to the South.
  10. By all means read Harriet Beecher Stowe's "Uncle Tom's Cabin."
- ms - 23

## CHAPTER XVIII

### SECESSION AND THE CIVIL WAR (1860-1865)

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, IV.; **Andrews's** United States, II.; **Burgess's** Civil War and Reconstruction; **Woodrow Wilson's** Division and Reunion; **Coffin's** Building the Nation; **Richardson's** History of Our Country; **Champlin's** Young Folks' History of the War for the Union; **Barnes's** Popular History of the United States.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Comte de Paris's** Civil War; **Draper's** Civil War; **Rhodes's** United States, III.; **Ropes's** Story of the Civil War; **Greeley's** American Conflict; **Alexander H. Stephens's** War between the States; **Jefferson Davis's** Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government; **Goldwin Smith's** United States; **Pollard's** Lost Cause; **Swinton's** Campaigns of the Army of the Potomac; **Swinton's** Decisive Battles of the War; **Abbott's** Battle-fields and Victory; **Morris's** Half Hours with American History, II.; **Webb's** Peninsula; **Ropes's** Army Under Pope; **Palfrey's** Antietam and Gettysburg; **Doubleday's** Chancellorsville and Gettysburg; **Greene's** Mississippi; **Cox's** Atlanta; **Cox's** March to the Sea; **Pond's** Shenandoah Valley; **Humphrey's** Campaign of '64; and '65; **Coffin's** Drum-Beat of the Nation; **Coffin's** Freedom Triumphant; **Coffin's** Marching to Victory; **Coffin's** Redeeming the Republic; **Soley's** Sailor Boys of '61; **Soley's** Blockade and Cruisers; **Parker's** Recollections of a Naval Officer; **Hague's** Blockaded Family; **Hague's** Life in Alabama during the War; **Maury's** Recollections of a Virginian; **Dodge's** Bird's Eye View of the Civil War; **Johnson's** Short History of the War; **Mahan's** Gulf and Inland Waters; **Nicolay** and **Hay's** Lincoln; **Morse's** Lincoln; **Grant's** Personal Memoirs; **Sherman's** Memoirs; **Sheridan's** Memoirs; **Horne's** Thomas; **McClellan's** Own Story; **Cooke's** Robert E. Lee; **Cooke's** "Stonewall" Jackson; **Hughes's** Joseph E. Johnston; **Church's** Ericsson; **Goss's** Recollections of a Private; **Alcott's** Hospital Sketches; **Livermore's** My Story of the War.

FICTION: **Page's** In Ole Virginia; **Page's** Among the Camps; **Page's** Two Little Confederates; **Henty's** With Lee in Virginia; **Trowbridge's** Cudjoe's Cave; **Trowbridge's** Three Scouts; **Trowbridge's** Drummer Boy; **Butterworth's** In the Boyhood of Lincoln; **Goss's** Tom Clifton; **Stoddard's** Battle of New York.

POETRY: **Holmes's** View of the Loyal North; **Holmes's** Our Country; **Whittier's** Barbara Frietchie; **Harte's** John Burns of Gettysburg; **Read's** Sheridan's Ride; **Work's** Marching through Georgia; Tenting on the Old Camp Ground; **Stoddard's** Burial of Lincoln; **Longfellow's** Decoration Day.

### THE WAR 'BEGINS

**307. Slavery Splits the Democratic Party (1860).--** By 1860 the question of slavery caused a split in the Democratic Party. The Northern Democrats believed in the principle of *popular sovereignty* which allowed the people in the territories to decide for themselves whether or not they would have slaves. The Southern Democrats declared that the Constitution imposed upon Congress the duty of *protecting* slavery in the territories, and supported their view by the Dred Scott decision. The Republican Party declared that the Constitution imposed upon Congress the duty of *forbidding* slavery in the territories and repudiated the Dred Scott Decision. This party did not at that time favor the abolition of slavery. The great political issue, therefore, in the campaign of 1860 was the extension of slavery into the territories. The Northern Democrats nominated for President Stephen A. Douglas; the Southern Democrats, John C. Breckinridge; and the Republicans, Abraham Lincoln. As the Democratic vote was divided the Republicans elected their candidate.

**308. Abraham Lincoln.<sup>1</sup>**—The new President was one of

<sup>1</sup> Abraham Lincoln, sixteenth President of the United States (1861–1865), was born in Hardin County, Kentucky, February 12, 1809, and died at the hands of an assassin in 1865. His father, who could neither read nor write, removed to Indiana when his son was only seven years of age, and later to Illinois. After serving as captain in the war with the Black Hawk Indians Lincoln was elected as a member of the Illinois State Legislature. In 1837 he began to practise law and soon became distinguished for his ability as a lawyer. In 1847–1849 he served as Representative in Congress. He first attracted special attention, however, by his able speech in reply to Stephen A. Douglas on the repeal of the Missouri Compromise. This speech and his great reputation led to his nomination by the Republicans in 1858 for the United States senatorship. Douglas was nominated by the Democrats. The contest was a memorable one. Although Douglas secured the election, Lincoln's brilliant debating with Douglas led to his nomination for the Presidency in 1860.

the most remarkable men that the country has produced. While Lincoln was still young, his parents, who were of very humble origin, moved to Indiana. His home surroundings were such as a log hut in the backwoods could furnish, and his advantages were few. He had less than a year's training in the rude schools of the region; yet despite his rough exterior he developed into a youth of manly

#### LINCOLN'S EARLY HOME.

character. He became known as "Honest Abe." His clear head and good judgment caused him to be selected as judge to settle disputes among his friends and neighbors. He was six feet four inches in height and a giant in strength.

His opportunities for reading were so limited that it was hard work for him to make much headway with even the few books he could get. But he was patient and persevering in the face of difficulties, and gradually won a great reputation as a debater and public

Patient and persevering.

speaker. He had a keen sense of humor, was a good storyteller, and possessed a rare power in winning men over to his views. His magnetic influence, joined to his clear judgment and sincerity of purpose, thus made him a great leader in the affairs of the nation.

**309. The Southern Point of View.**—Soon after Lincoln's election, South Carolina, the leader in the attempt to dissolve the Union, passed the Ordinance of Secession (December 20, 1860). The Southern leaders did not closely discriminate between Abolitionists like William Lloyd Garrison and John Brown and Republicans like Seward and Lincoln. Therefore, when the Republican candidate was elected, these leaders naturally thought that slavery would thrive better out of the Union than in it. Like Calhoun, Southern leaders in general were more attached to their States than to the Union. And since they believed that the separate States were possessed of sovereign power, they also believed that any State could withdraw or secede from the Union whenever it pleased.

**The State first  
in the South.**

**310. The Northern Point of View.**—The North believed, as Webster had declared (1830), that the Constitution was not a compact between sovereign States but the fundamental law of the nation; that the Union was "now and forever, one and inseparable." With the South, the State was first and the Union second: with the North, the Union stood first and no State had a right to secede from the Union against the consent of the other States. According to the latter view, peaceable secession, as Webster said (1850), was impossible. When, therefore, South Carolina passed the Ordinance of Secession, she gave the signal for a terrible struggle in which the life of the nation was threatened.

**The Union first  
in the North.**

**311. Slavery the Real Cause of the War.**—The following were the principal steps in the disagreement<sup>1</sup> resulting in Civil War between the North and the South. By reason of an unfavorable soil and climate, slavery did not pay in

<sup>1</sup> Of course the two sections had long disagreed on the tariff question also. But we have already seen how slavery led to this disagreement.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN



the North, while it seemed to pay in the South. As the moral sentiment against slavery increased in the North, the South saw that the interests of the slaveholder demanded an extension of slavery into new States. The North objected. This disagreement arrayed the sections against each other.

*Steps toward the Civil War.*

Finally the Southern slaveholders declared that, since the States were nations with sovereign power, they had a perfect right to secede from the Union and erect a Confederacy, with slavery as the corner-stone. When eleven of the fifteen slave States tried to break up the Union by secession, the free States were determined to preserve the Union, and the result was the Civil War. Slavery, therefore, was the real cause of the war, although secession was the occasion of the outbreak.

### **312. Secession of the Remaining Cotton States and Organization of the Confederacy.**

—Within six weeks after the secession of South

JEFFERSON DAVIS.

Carolina, the six other cotton States, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas, had likewise seceded. The cotton States naturally seceded first, because there slave labor was more profitable than in other parts of the South. On February 4, 1861, delegates from all these<sup>1</sup> States except Texas met at Montgomery, Alabama,

<sup>1</sup> The South was disappointed because some of the slave States did not secede and because the Northern people were so united. The Secessionists did not expect the cause to meet with such firm opposition throughout the North.



and proceeded to the organization of the "Confederate States of America."<sup>1</sup> Jefferson Davis,<sup>2</sup> of Mississippi, was elected President, and Alexander H. Stephens,<sup>3</sup> of Georgia, Vice-President.

**313. Advantages of the North.**—In this great struggle the North and the South were more evenly matched than is sometimes supposed. The North had many advantages. (1) She had a population of twenty-three millions, while the seceding States had but

<sup>1</sup> The Confederate capital was removed from Montgomery, Alabama, to Richmond, Virginia, on May 20, 1861.

<sup>2</sup> Jefferson Davis was born in Kentucky in 1808 and died in 1889. After graduating from West Point (1828) he served in the army for some years and then became a cotton-planter in Mississippi. He took his seat in Congress in 1845, but again entered the army on the outbreak of the Mexican War. He distinguished himself for bravery in this war, receiving a severe wound at the battle of Buena Vista. He repre-

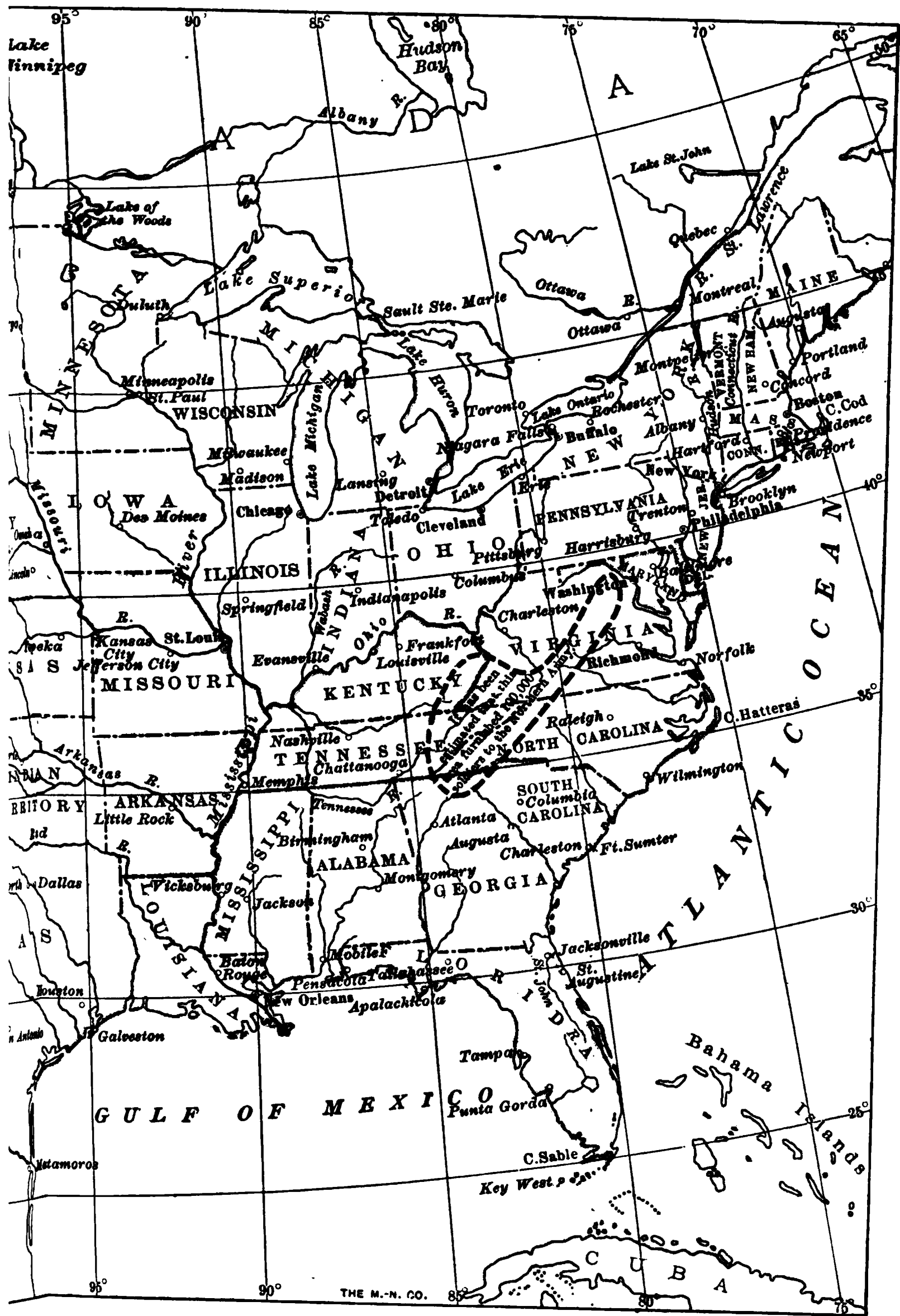
#### ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.

sented his State, Mississippi, in the United States Senate in 1847-51, and was Secretary of War under President Pierce. He again entered the Senate in 1857 and there remained until the beginning of the Civil War, when he resigned. He was elected President of the Southern Confederacy and remained in that office until the end of the war.

<sup>3</sup> Alexander H. Stephens was born near Crawfordsville, Georgia, in 1812, and died in 1883. After graduating from the State University at the head of his class, he studied law and soon began his long political career by securing an election to the State Legislature. As a representative in Congress for sixteen years, 1843-59, he proved himself to be a statesman of conspicuous ability. In 1860 he vigorously opposed secession, but when Georgia seceded "he went with his State." He was elected Vice-President of the Southern Confederacy and continued in that position throughout the Civil War. The year before his death he was elected governor of Georgia. He was a man of very slight, frail body, and toward the end of his life had to be wheeled about in a chair.









nine millions, three and a half millions of whom were slaves. (2) She had many factories, by means of which the necessary military supplies could be furnished to her armies. The South had to get her supplies from abroad.<sup>1</sup> (3) The North had a navy that gave her command of the sea, while the South, having put nearly all her energies into the cultivation of rice, cotton, sugar, and tobacco, had few sailors and no navy. Her extensive sea-coast and large rivers were therefore open to attack from Northern vessels. (4) The North had also a greater number of able business men, and far more wealth than the South. The industrial system of the North had developed men of the highest business ability.

**314. Advantages of the South.**—The South had the following advantages: (1) Fighting on the defensive, on her own soil, she needed fewer soldiers. Generally she could select her own positions behind breastworks, and could fight near her base of supplies. On the other hand, many Northern troops were required to garrison strategic points that had been captured in the South. Before the war had closed a large proportion of the Union soldiers were guarding conquered territory. (2) At the beginning of the war the South had most of the experienced generals. (3) Moreover, the Southern people, almost exclusively devoted to the out-door life of agricultural pursuits, were well prepared to endure the severe physical strain demanded of a soldier in time of war. (4) The Southern troops, accustomed to the woods of the South, had a great advantage also in that considerable part of the fighting which took place in the woods and wild regions.

**315. The South Seizes National Property; the Star of the West.**—Throughout the area of secession the South at once began to seize custom-houses, forts, arsenals, and all other property belonging to the United States. Some of President Buchanan's Cabinet were Southern men in full

<sup>1</sup> Not until the war was half over did the Confederates succeed in building and equipping the factories necessary for supplying their troops with guns and ammunition.

sympathy with the secession movement, and they took active measures to aid the South by sending arms and military supplies to Southern forts.

Buchanan did not believe in the right of secession, but neither did he believe that the National government had a right to use coercion. As he was in sympathy with the Southerners on the slavery question, he was unwilling to oppose them by preventing secession. The seceding States were therefore allowed to do much in preparation for war before Lincoln came into office. If the iron-willed Andrew Jackson had been President, in place of Buchanan, secession would probably have been put down before gaining much headway. Buchanan, with unfortunate indecision, let things drift, and by this let-alone policy brought disaster upon the Union.

Before Lincoln's inauguration the South was ready for a terrible struggle. Early in January (1861) President Buchanan sent the merchant steamer *Star of the West* with men and supplies for Major Anderson of the United States army, who had command at Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, but the South Carolina army in Charleston fired upon the steamer and prevented her reaching the fort.

**316. Lincoln's Inaugural Address.**—The time for decisive action had at last come. In the midst of intense excitement all over the Union, Lincoln started from his home in Illinois for Washington. Before reaching Baltimore he was informed that a plan had been laid to assassinate him as he passed through that city. He therefore changed his plans and went to Washington at night on a special train. In his inaugural address (March 4, 1861) he said he had no intention of interfering with slavery, because he thought the Constitution had given him no such authority. But he declared that he would do everything in his power to preserve, protect, and defend the Union. President Lincoln's address was free from bitterness, but left no doubt of the firmness of his purpose to uphold the Constitution.

**317. The Confederates Capture Fort Sumter.**—Neither

the North nor the South wished to strike the first blow, but the South was eager to get possession of Fort Sumter. Major Anderson was in command here with a small force of about eighty fighting men. The Confederates had an opposing army of between 5,000 and 6,000 men. Moreover, Major Anderson had only a small supply of provisions on hand. About one month after the inauguration of Lincoln the latter decided to send supplies to the garrison.

INTERIOR OF FORT SUMTER AFTER THE BOMBARDMENT.

Two days after this decision reached South Carolina, General Beauregard, who commanded the Confederate troops in Charleston, demanded the surrender of the fort. When Major Anderson refused, Beauregard opened fire at 4.30 on the morning of April 12, 1861. For thirty-four hours the brave garrison, with little to eat, held out against the overwhelming forces of the enemy. On the morning of the second day the Confederates, firing hot shot, set on fire the barracks and other wood-work in the fort. The flames were dangerously near the powder magazine, and the smoke almost suffocated the soldiers. Falling flat upon the ground, they covered their

The brave little garrison makes a stubborn defence.



faces with wet cloths for protection, but would not give up. At last, seeing that there was no hope of supplies reaching the garrison, Major Anderson was compelled to surrender. On Sunday afternoon, the 14th, the Union soldiers saluted the Stars and Stripes with fifty guns, and with drums beating "Yankee Doodle," marched out of the fort to embark for New York. In this bombardment no one was killed on either side.

The North was ablaze with indignation at the attack on Fort Sumter. Lincoln issued a proclamation calling for

**Results of the attack on Fort Sumter.** 75,000 volunteers (April 15), and declared Southern ports to be in a state of blockade (April 19). Troops flocked to Washington.

The North thrilled with martial enthusiasm. The South was surprised. The secessionists had looked for compromise, but war had begun. In the North and in the South alike armies were promptly organized.

**318. Secession of Four More States.**—When Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas were called upon to furnish their quotas of troops to the National army, they refused. Although these States had not wished to secede, they believed in the right of secession, and therefore when it became certain that the government meant to coerce their sister States to remain in the Union, they voted to secede. The secession area was thus extended over eleven States.<sup>1</sup>

**319. Battle of Bull Run.**—When, early in July, the Northern army had driven the Confederate forces out of West Virginia, the people in the North became impatient for an advance upon Richmond. General McDowell was

<sup>1</sup> The remaining slave States, Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri did not secede. The mountainous parts of western Virginia, not being adapted to the cultivation of rice, cotton, sugar, or tobacco, had no large plantations, and there was not a large ownership of slaves in that part of the State. The people, therefore, did not sympathize with secession, and early in 1861 withdrew from Virginia, and organized a separate State government under the name of West Virginia. In June, 1863, West Virginia was admitted to the Union. The attitude of this State toward the war is an interesting illustration of the intimate connection between soil and climate and slavery, and between slavery and secession. In the mountainous regions still farther south many of the people were loyal to the Union. It is estimated that 100,000 of these mountain whites fought in the Northern armies.

in command, in Washington, of a Union army of about 30,000 men. General Patterson (with about 18,000) was in the Shenandoah watching General Joseph E. Johnston<sup>1</sup> (with 9,000), and the Confederate army, commanded by General Beauregard, with 22,000, was posted at Manassas Junction, about thirty-five miles from Washington, on a little stream called Bull Run. This position was selected by the Confederates because it could be easily reached by rail with men and supplies, and because an advance upon Washington from this point would be easy.

The opposing forces.

Here, on July 21, McDowell made an attack upon the Confederates, in which he seemed at first to be winning a victory by forcing back a part of

P. G. T. BEAUREGARD.

the Confederates a distance of a mile and a half. At the critical moment, however, the Confederates were reinforced by Johnston's troops from the Shenandoah, where General Patterson had allowed Johnston to outgeneral him and slip away to the support of Beauregard. The Federal army fled in a panic

The Northern army, at first successful, retreats in a panic.

<sup>1</sup> Joseph E. Johnston was born in Longwood, Virginia, in 1807, and died in 1891. He was graduated from West Point in the same class with Robert E. Lee, who was ever after his warm, personal friend. Like Lee, he did not favor secession, but "went with his State" when it seceded. Next to Lee he was probably the ablest Confederate general. After his success at the battle of Bull Run he fell into a serious disagreement with Jefferson Davis, the effect of which was to injure the Southern cause. Johnston's defensive campaign in Georgia in 1864, when Sherman was advancing upon Atlanta, showed military ability of a high order.

toward Washington, but the Southern army, by reason of its crippled condition, made no attempt at pursuit.

**320. Results of the Battle of Bull Run.**—This battle probably benefited the North more than it did the South. The Confederates seemed to think the war was over and began to seek their homes. But the defeat caused the North to appreciate the need of putting forth all her ener-

gies in preparation for the great struggle which, it was now evident, could not be avoided. General McClellan, who had been very successful in driving the Confederates out of West Virginia, was called from his victories there to organize and drill the army. During the autumn and winter the warring forces were busy fortifying their respective capitals, Washington and Richmond, and gathering all possible strength for the campaigns of 1862.

GEORGE B. MCCLELLAN.

**321. The Trent Affair.**—To secure aid for the Southern cause Mason and Slidell had been selected by the Confederate government as commissioners to England and France. In November, 1861, they escaped the blockade at Charleston and took passage at Havana on the British mail steamer *Trent*. Captain Wilkes, of the United States war-vessel *San Jacinto*, stopped the *Trent* not far from the Bahama Islands, took off Mason and Slidell, and confined them in Fort Warren, in Boston Harbor.

**322. England Resents the Capture of Mason and Slidell.**—For this act Captain Wilkes was greatly applauded by Northern people, but England was highly indignant and

at once began to make preparations for war. She sent troops and war-vessels to Canada and was unnecessarily harsh in her demands that the prisoners be given up.

President Lincoln, knowing that the War of 1812 was brought about mainly because England claimed the right to stop and search neutral American vessels at sea, wisely refused to approve the course taken by Captain Wilkes. Accordingly he at once gave up the prisoners to England, with the statement that Captain Wilkes had acted without any authority from the United States Government. But the North could not help thinking that England was not only insolent in her demands, but over-hasty in her preparations to make war upon us. Ill-feeling between the two countries was thus aroused and was a source of more or less irritation throughout the war.

**President Lincoln  
gives up Mason  
and Slidell.**

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. You are now ready to study the Civil War. Only a few of the great battles are described in this history, but these will enable you to understand the character of the terrible conflict. You do not need to know the details of military movements, but you do need to know what kind of men your country sent to the camp and battle-field. Were they brave men? Were they manly, vigorous, and true? Find out as you study the war.
2. How did slavery split the Democratic Party? What did the Republicans think of slavery? Learn all you can about the life and character of Abraham Lincoln.
3. What was the Southern point of view of the Constitution? The Northern point of view? Recall the liberal construction and the strict construction theories of the Constitution in the time of Hamilton and Jefferson. Explain how slavery was the real cause of the war.
4. Why were the cotton States the first to secede? Name the advantages of the North and of the South in the war.
5. What was President Buchanan's attitude toward the secession movement? Contrast this attitude with that of Andrew Jackson toward nullification. What was the result of Buchanan's attitude?
6. Why did the Confederates attack Fort Sumter? Imagine yourself to have been in the fort with the brave little garrison and describe your experience there. What were the results of the attack on Fort Sumter?

7. **Why did Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas secede?** Account for the refusal of the people in the western part of Virginia to join their State in the secession movement.
8. **Locate on your map the position of the opposing forces just before the Battle of Bull Run. What were the results of this battle?**
9. **What was the "Trent affair"?** Do you think President Lincoln acted wisely in giving up Mason and Slidell? Give reasons for your answer.
10. **By reading the opening chapter of Ropes's "Story of the Civil War" you will get a clear idea of the difference between the Northern and the Southern point of view of the Union.**

### THE NATION IN PERIL

**323. Union Plan of the War.**—Not until the opening of 1862 was a plan of operations matured by the North. This plan, at the outset, was threefold: (1) To blockade Southern ports; (2) to open the Mississippi; (3) to capture Richmond. The successful carrying out of this plan led also to Sherman's campaign in Georgia in 1864.

**324. England and King Cotton.**—At the outbreak of the war people at the North supposed they had only the South to deal with. They soon found, however, that they had to contend with an insidious influence from abroad. When Jefferson Davis said, "Cotton is king,"<sup>1</sup> he doubtless thought that England's money and friendship could be secured by her need of cotton. In 1860 the cotton exports, most of which went to English factories, amounted to more than \$202,000,000. Many English manufacturers and merchants and 4,000,000 English working people were dependent upon Southern cotton for their means of support. The Southern leaders naturally thought that these English manufacturers and working people would never submit to any action on the part of the North which would cripple their industries. It was therefore expected by the Confederates that the need of cotton in England would win for them the sympathy of the English people.

<sup>1</sup> At the beginning of the war the cotton States in the South furnished nearly two-thirds of all the cotton used in the world.

**325. The Blockade.**—But from the beginning of the struggle the North was determined to blockade the South so effectually that the latter could neither send cotton to England nor receive in return the much-needed supplies for her soldiers and homes. In the end, as the world knows, the South was forced to give up the struggle because of a lack of the very supplies which cotton alone could procure; in other words, the Confederacy was starved into submission by the blockade. Although, as stated above, the cotton exports in 1860 had amounted to \$202,000,000, in 1861 the exports fell in value to \$42,000,000, and in 1862 to \$4,000,000. In the remaining years of the war the blockade was so effectual that the value of the cotton exports was not worth consideration.

**326. The "Merrimac" and the "Monitor."**—It was to break the blockade that the *Merrimac* was set afloat. When the Norfolk navy-yard was abandoned by the United States Government at the outbreak of the war, among the ships burned and sunk was the frigate *Merrimac*. The Confederates make an iron-clad of the "Merrimac." This had been one of the largest and finest ships in the navy. The Confederates raised her and converted her into an iron-clad. Up to this time very few iron-clad frigates had been built and none had been tested in war. The Confederate naval officers thought, however, that one iron-clad would be much more effective in reducing the Union navy and raising the blockade than a whole fleet of wooden craft to match those generally in use. The history of the naval duel between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor* shows how wisely the Confederates planned. The hull of the *Merrimac* was razed to the water's level. The vessel was rebuilt with sloping sides, plated with iron four inches thick, and was furnished with a cast-iron beak and a formidable battery. The *Merrimac* had been many months in construction, and when, about noon of March 8, 1862, she steamed into Hampton Roads, where the United States had a fleet of five powerful war-vessels, she was not wholly unexpected.

In advancing to meet her three of the blockading squad-

ron ran aground on account of low water. But the *Congress* and the *Cumberland*, supported by the batteries on the shore, made ready for the attack. They poured broadside after broadside into the *Merrimac* as she approached. The balls rebounded from her iron sides with no effect. The *Merrimac* steered straight for the *Cumberland*, discharging a broadside into the *Congress* in passing. Continuing her fire

The "Merrimac" plays havoc with the blockading squadron.

she rammed her iron beak into the *Cumberland's* side, making a great hole, into which the water rushed. The crew of the *Cumberland* continued firing until they reached the water's edge, and when they went down their colors were still flying. The *Merrimac* then turned to the *Congress*, poured hot shot into her, set her afire, and forced her to surrender. At nightfall the *Merrimac* steamed back to her landing, expecting to complete her work of destruction the following day.

JOHN ERICSSON.

Great was the joy in the South that night, and great was the consternation in the North. Statesmen were grave, the people terrified. The blockade was broken at Norfolk. Soon it might be broken at other ports and Northern commerce be ruined by the ravages of this invulnerable sea-monster.

But in history, as in fiction, it is the unexpected that often happens. That night a strange-looking craft came into the harbor. It was Ericsson's *Monitor*, which had been completed in New York two days before. The *Monitor* was an experiment, and her construction had been pushed with desperate energy, that she might be ready as soon as the *Merrimac*. She was built with an iron-plated deck almost level with the

Consternation in the North.

The "Monitor" arrives just in time.

water, and had a revolving iron turret with two powerful guns. The purpose of this peculiar construction was to present as little resisting surface as possible to the enemy's guns. The Confederates well described her appearance when they said she looked like a Yankee cheese-box on a raft. She had arrived just in time.

The following morning the *Merrimac* steamed out of Norfolk confident of a victory over the other three frigates. She steered for the *Minnesota*, by the side of which the *Monitor* was lying, and soon found that she had a new adversary to deal with. The *Monitor* steered straight for the *Merrimac*, and one of the strangest naval battles ever fought began. The duel continued over three hours.

At points the *Merrimac's* armor was crushed but not pierced. Captain Worden of the *Monitor* received a wound which delayed the action for a little, and the *Merrimac* withdrew. Neither side cared to continue the struggle. The *Merrimac* had met her match and made no further attempt to break the blockade. The sturdy little *Monitor* had saved the Union.

The sturdy little  
"Monitor"  
saves the Union.

This fight revolutionized naval warfare, for it showed that the days of wooden war-vessels were at an end. Against such iron-clads as the *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*, wooden vessels of the finest type were useless.<sup>1</sup>

**327. The Importance of the Mississippi.**—In order to cut off the South from communication with the rest of the world it was necessary not only to maintain the blockade, but to gain possession of the Mississippi River. For by way of Mexico trade was kept up with European countries to some extent. Other advantages would be secured to the North by getting control of this river: (1) Such control would cut the Confederacy in two, making Texas, Arkansas, and Louisiana of

Why the North  
desired to get  
control of the  
Mississippi.

<sup>1</sup> Neither of these famous iron-clads ever again took part in a battle. When, two months later, McClellan forced the Confederates to evacuate Norfolk, they destroyed the *Merrimac*, which drew so much water that she could not steam up the James River to Richmond. In December of the same year the *Monitor* went down, with most of her crew, in a storm off Cape Hatteras, North Carolina.



little use to the Southern cause; (2) it would prevent the South from getting supplies of any sort from the region west of the Mississippi; (3) it would enable the North to

*Head Quarters Army in the Field  
Camp near Columbus, Feb. 16<sup>th</sup> 1862  
Gen. H. B. Buckner,  
Confed. Army  
Sir;*

*Yours of this date  
proposing armistice, and appointment of  
Commissioners to settle terms of capitula-  
tion, is just received. No terms except  
an unconditional and immediate surrender  
can be accepted.*

*I propose to move immediately  
upon your works.*

*I am sir, very respectfully  
Your obt. servt.  
U. S. Grant  
Brig. Gen.*

GRANT'S "UNCONDITIONAL SURRENDER" LETTER.

*By permission of General James Grant Wilson.*

use her navy to great advantage in concentrating troops in the rear of the Confederacy, and in getting supplies to her armies in that region; (4) it would open the Mississippi to the trade of the West and the Northwest.

**328. Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson.**—It was

**BATTLE BETWEEN THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC.**



one thing to cut off the South from the rest of the world; it was quite another to get possession of her vast territory. But this last was necessary also. Early in the war the Confederates had been driven from West Virginia and from Missouri. In the winter and spring of 1862 the Federal generals began a series of movements whose twofold purpose was to open the Mississippi to the North and gain possession of Tennessee.

To defend Tennessee the Confederates had built Fort Henry on the Tennessee and Fort Donelson on the Cumberland. Their line of defence, as will be seen **The Confederate line of defence.** by consulting the map, extended from Columbus through Forts Henry and Donelson, Bowling Green, and Mill Springs, to Cumberland Gap. To break this line of defence, it was necessary for the North to capture Forts Henry and Donelson. By capturing the two forts, the two important rivers would be under the control of Northern vessels, and Nashville would have to be abandoned by the Confederates. Columbus, when cut off from support, would also have to be given up without a struggle.

With all these things in view, General Grant, with the aid of Commodore Foote, moved upon the two forts. Commodore Foote soon captured Fort Henry (February 6); and General Grant,<sup>1</sup> after a hard fight, received the surrender of Fort Donelson with nearly 15,000 prisoners (February 16). By this important victory the first Southern line of defence in the West was thus broken, and Columbus and Nashville fell into the hands of the Federals.

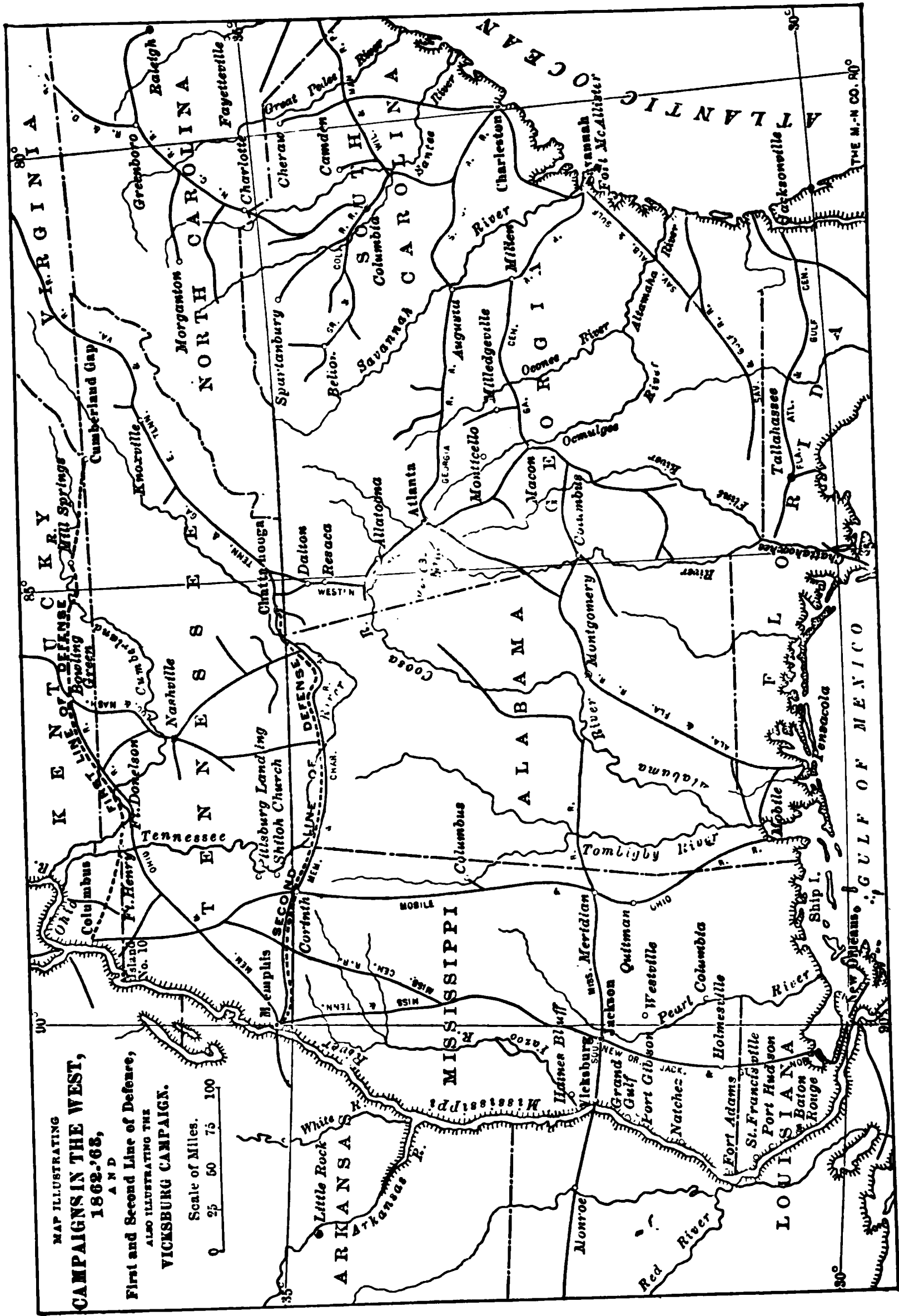
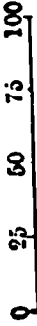
**329. The Battle of Pittsburg Landing (or Shiloh).—**The Confederates now fell back upon another line of defence, extending from Memphis, through Corinth, an important railroad centre, to Chattanooga. Under General Albert Sidney Johnston, the Confederate army, 40,000 strong, took position at Corinth. General Grant, with 33,000 men, advanced **General Grant at Pittsburg Landing waits for General Buell.**

<sup>1</sup> When General Buckner sent to Grant for terms of surrender the following answer was sent: "No terms except unconditional and immediate surrender can be accepted. I propose to move immediately upon your works."

## MAP ILLUSTRATING

**ALSO ILLUSTRATING THE**

**Scale of Miles.**



as far as Pittsburg Landing on the Tennessee River, about eighteen miles from Corinth. Here he waited for Buell, who was hastening from Nashville to join him with an army of 27,000 men. On Buell's arrival the Federal army was to attack Johnston's forces at Corinth.

#### BREAKING THE CHAIN ACROSS THE MISSISSIPPI.

Before Buell could reach Pittsburg Landing, however, Johnston attacked Grant early on Sunday morning, April 6. It was a terrible day. By nightfall the Confederates had driven Grant's troops back a mile and a half toward the river. But before morning

Grant wins a  
victory.

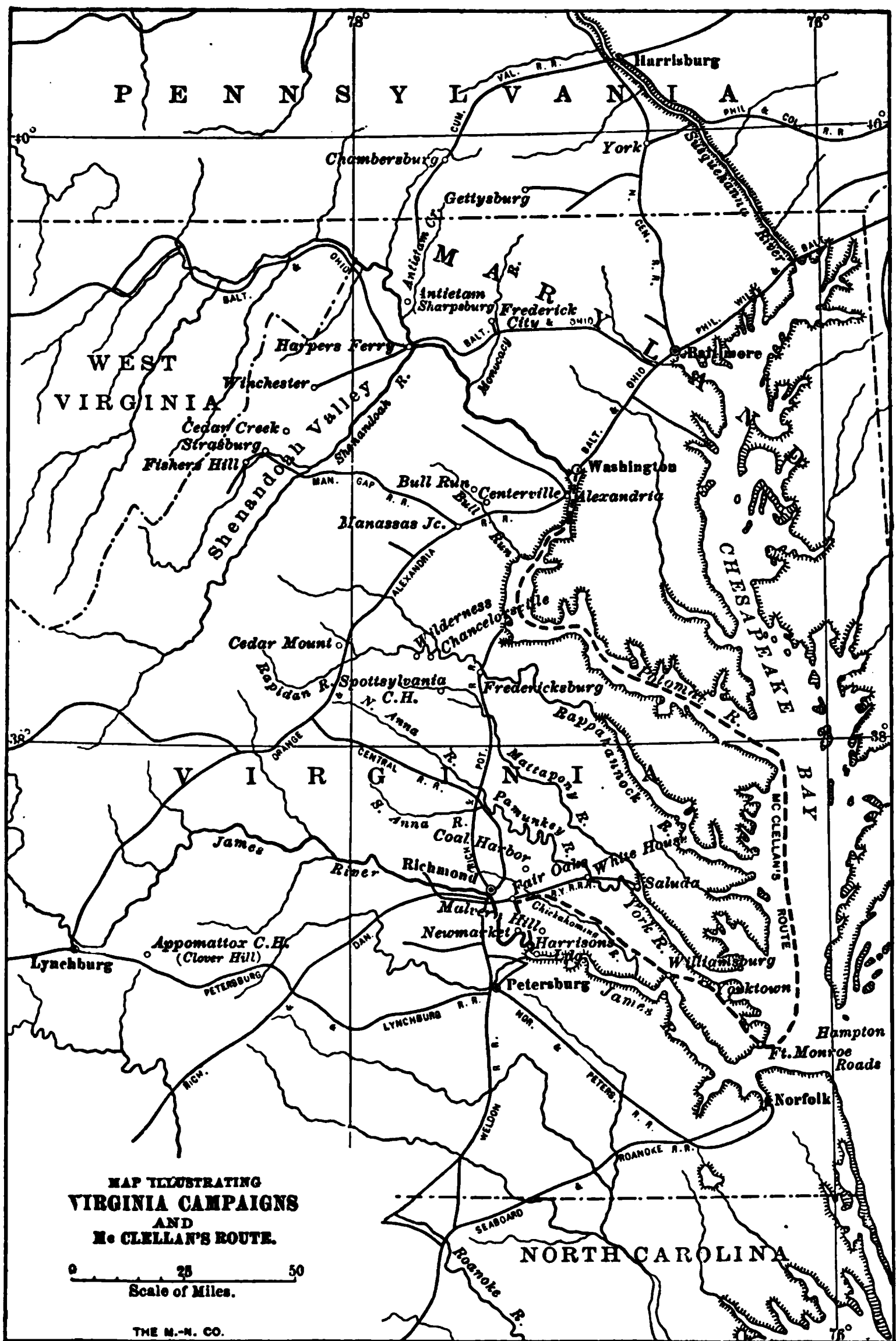
Buell's fresh troops came up and assisted Grant in driving the Confederates from the field. In this battle about 20,000 men were killed or wounded. Among the killed was General Albert Sidney Johnston, whose death was a serious loss to the South.

**330. Capture of New Orleans.**—New Orleans was important to the South because it controlled the lower Mississippi. Thirty miles from the mouth of the river were two forts nearly opposite each other. Between them were stretched across the river immense chains, fastened to the hulks of old vessels. A little farther up the river was a strong fleet, which included a formidable iron-clad ram like the *Merrimac*, and a floating battery covered with railroad iron. There were also fire-rafts ready to be turned loose upon the Federal vessels.

Commodore Farragut was in command of a fleet of nearly fifty wooden vessels that was to attack these forts, and advance up the river to New Orleans. There General Butler, with an army of 15,000 men, was to aid in getting possession of the city. After bombarding the forts for six days without making much impression, Farragut determined to run by them at night. It was a desperate undertaking, but it succeeded, and easily brought New Orleans into the possession of the Union forces (April 25). With the aid of the river gunboats the Federals had, before the close of 1862, opened the river as far down as Vicksburg. This city and Port Hudson alone remained in possession of the Confederacy.

**331. The Peninsular Campaign (1862).**—These brilliant victories were in marked contrast with the ill-success of the army under General McClellan. He, as we have already seen, was placed in command of the Army of the Potomac, which was intended for the defence of Washington and the capture of Richmond. Before the opening of the spring campaign in 1862, he had, by thorough organization and drill, created a splendid army.

His original plan was to approach Richmond by the





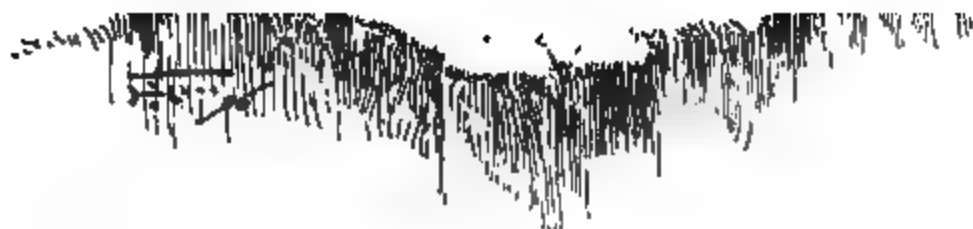
James River. Lincoln opposed this because he thought that Washington would thus be exposed to attack. He therefore urged the wisdom of approaching Richmond overland from the north, in order to keep the Federal army between the Confederates and Washington. **McClellan objects to Lincoln's plan.** McClellan objected because there were so many rivers to be crossed, every one of which could, for defensive purposes, be made a Confederate stronghold. The swampy forests of this region were also in the same way of great value to the South. It is no exaggeration to say that these natural advantages were worth many thousand troops to the Confederate army, and it is unfair to McClellan and Grant not to take them into account. McClellan adopted neither Lincoln's plan nor his own, but compromised by approaching Richmond by way of the peninsula between the James and the York Rivers, making his base of supplies on the latter.

McDowell was stationed near Fredericksburg, between the main Confederate army and Washington. In this position he could protect Washington or unite with McClellan, as occasion required. To prevent an attack upon the capital by way of the Shenandoah, well known during the war as the "back-door to Washington," Union forces were stationed there under Banks and Frémont. **McDowell stationed at Fredericksburg.**

**332. McClellan Advances up the Peninsula.**—Starting at Fortress Monroe on April 4, 1862, McClellan, with 120,000 troops, advanced along the York River to Yorktown. Here, instead of storming the town he laid siege to it.

**McClellan stops for a month at Yorktown.** When he was ready for an assault, the Confederates, after holding him in check for a month, withdrew, having gained time to strengthen their defences about Richmond. McClellan hurried after them, and fought an indecisive battle at Williamsburg, from which the Confederates retired toward their capital. McClellan then advanced slowly, and by the end of May found himself within ten miles of Richmond. By that time the Confederates defending Richmond numbered 70,000.

Dividing his army, McClellan encamped upon both sides of the Chickahominy. He made this arrangement so as to establish easy connection between his north wing and McDowell, who (with 45,000 men) was near Fredericksburg with orders to be in readiness to unite with McClellan. Heavy



EXPLODED GUN IN CONFEDERATE BATTERY AT YORKTOWN.

rains caused the Chickahominy to swell, thus separating the two wings. General Johnston took advantage of the situation to attack the division south of the river at Fair Oaks (Seven Pines), and threatened to overwhelm it, but McClellan got reinforcements across and stayed the retreat.

Battle of  
Fair Oaks,

**333. "Stonewall" Jackson in the Shenandoah Valley ; McClellan Changes his Base of Supplies.**—In order to prevent McDowell from joining McClellan, General Rob-

ert E. Lee, who was now in command of the Confederates,<sup>1</sup> sent "Stonewall" Jackson down the Shenandoah Valley to threaten Washington. Jackson defeated Banks and Frémont, and so thoroughly alarmed Lincoln that the latter ordered McDowell to return to the defence of Washington. After playing havoc with the Union forces in the Shenandoah, Jackson hastily joined Lee.

Now that McDowell was prevented from joining the attack upon Richmond, McClellan changed his base of supplies to the James River. During the week that he was transferring the army to the new base of supplies were fought the terrible "Seven Days' Battles," in which McClellan lost 15,000 men. At Malvern Hill, the field of the last of these engagements, Lee repeatedly charged, but was driven back with fearful slaughter. The men of the Army of the Potomac fought here with magnificent heroism. Had McClellan taken immediate advantage of this victory he might, by a vigorous attack, have captured Richmond. As a whole, the Peninsular Campaign failed and caused bitter disappointment in the North.

**334. Lee's First Invasion of the North (1862).—**McClellan made no further attempt upon Richmond. In the meantime Halleck had been put in chief command of the

<sup>1</sup> Lee had succeeded General Joseph E. Johnston, who was wounded in the battle of Fair Oaks (May 31).

Robert E. Lee, son of Henry Lee, or "Light-Horse Harry," of Revolutionary fame, was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, in 1807 and died in 1870. He was graduated from West Point in 1829, ranking second in a class of forty-six. He distinguished himself for bravery in the Mexican War and rose to the rank of colonel. After Virginia seceded in 1861 Lee decided "to go with his State." He therefore resigned his commission in the army of the United States, and a little later took command of the Virginia State troops. When, at the battle of Seven Pines, or Fair Oaks (1862), General Joseph E. Johnston received a serious wound that temporarily unfitted him for active service, Lee was put at the head of the Confederate army. From that time to the end of the war he was the leading Confederate general, and handled his troops with consummate ability. Military critics rank him and Grant as two of the foremost commanders of this century. Lee won the confidence of the Southern people, who regarded him with unbounded admiration and love. At the close of the war he became president of what is now Washington and Lee University, where he spent the remaining years of his life.

Union armies. Pope was appointed to take command of the forces in northern Virginia and McClellan was ordered to join him. Before McClellan could reach Pope, however,

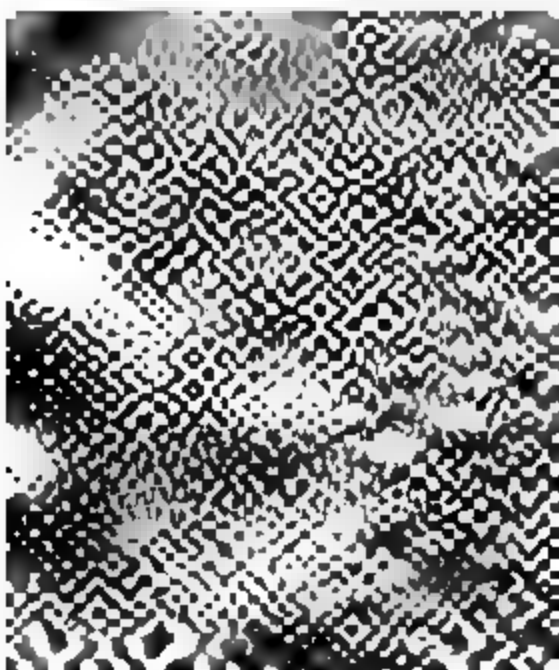
which he had sent  
to surprise Pope's rear. After defeating Pope in the second battle of Bull Run he marched across the Potomac into Maryland, where he thought he would receive large recruits. In this he was disappointed. The great majority of the Maryland people were loyal to the Union, and plainly showed this in their attitude toward the invasion. When Lee's men marched into the State singing "My Maryland" there was not a word of welcome from the people. On reach-

Second Battle of  
Bull Run.

Maryland people  
loyal to the Union.

ing Frederick, Lee was surprised to find not only places of business shut, but even the doors closed and the blinds drawn. The North, however, fearing an attack upon Baltimore, Washington, or Philadelphia, was greatly alarmed.

**335. Battle of Antietam (September 17, 1862).**—After Pope's defeat in the second battle of Bull Run, McClellan, who had again been called to the head of the Army of the



ROBERT E. LEE.

Potomac, started in pursuit of Lee. On September 17, with an army of 70,000, he attacked Lee, who, with about 40,000, had taken his position at Sharpsburg, behind Antietam Creek. This battle was one of the bloodiest of the war. Although Lee successfully defended himself against the attack of the Union army, he had to retreat into Virginia without having gained anything by his first invasion of the North.

Some people thought McClellan ought to have routed or captured Lee's army. As he did not follow the Confederates he was severely criticized for being slow and overcautious, and was superseded by Burnside. Burnside was as rash as McClellan was cautious, and later in the autumn met a crushing defeat when he attacked Lee, who was intrenched in a strong position at Fredericksburg. The year's operations had been successful for the Union cause in the West, but unsuccessful in the East.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> One of the bloodiest battles of the war was fought at the end of this year at Murfreesboro, Tennessee. Beginning December 31 (1862), it lasted three days, and resulted in the retreat of the Confederates after the most stubborn fighting.

## TO THE PUPIL

1. What was the Union plan of the war? In what way did Jefferson Davis think that the cotton trade would secure the friendship of England for the Southern cause? Why was it extremely important for the North to blockade the South?
2. What did the "Merrimac" accomplish on the first day she attacked the blockading squadron? What were the results of the fight between the "Merrimac" and the "Monitor"?
3. Name four or five advantages to the North in securing control of the Mississippi. What purpose had the Confederates in building Forts Henry and Donelson? What effect did the capture of these forts by the Federals have upon the Confederate line of defence?
4. What was the second Confederate line of defence? What were the causes and results of the Battle of Shiloh? Why was New Orleans of importance to the South?
5. Are you making constant use of your map?
6. What was McClellan's plan of approaching Richmond? What was Lincoln's? Which do you think was the better plan? Give reasons for your answer. For defensive purposes, what natural advantages had the Confederates in Virginia? Why was General McDowell left at Fredericksburg?
7. Point out on the map Yorktown and Williamsburg, and show their connection with McClellan's advance upon Richmond. What was the purpose of "Stonewall" Jackson's movements in the Shenandoah? What was the result?
8. After reading as much as you can on the Peninsular Campaign give reasons for McClellan's failure to capture Richmond.
9. Why did Lee decide to invade the North? How was he disappointed? What were the results of the Battle of Antietam?

## THE TIDE TURNS

336. Lee's Second Invasion of the North; Battle of Gettysburg (1863).—After Burnside's repulse at Fredericksburg in December, 1862, he retired to winter quarters. Before the campaign of 1863 opened Hooker was put in command. In April he advanced to Chancellorsville with 113,000 men and attacked Lee who had 62,000.<sup>1</sup> Lee again badly defeated the Army

Hooker's defeat  
at Chancellors-  
ville.

<sup>1</sup> In this battle the Confederates met with a grievous loss in the death of "Stonewall" Jackson. Through a mistake he was fired upon by some of his own men. Thomas J. Jackson, often called "Stonewall" Jackson, was born in 1824, in Har-

of the Potomac. These two victories made the South jubilant but depressed the North.

With an exultant and confident army Lee planned to invade the North a second time. Early in June he marched down the Shenandoah, crossed the Potomac, and advanced into Pennsylvania. The whole country was wild with excitement.

Lee hoped to

win a decisive victory, capture Baltimore

or some other great Northern city, and dictate terms of peace. He had reason to believe that a victory on Northern soil would lead England and France to recognize the independence of the South. These two countries were only waiting until some pronounced success on the part of the South should afford them a reasonable excuse for giving such recognition.

THOMAS J. ("STONEWALL") JACKSON. Lee advanced his army toward Chambersburg and

encamped in that vicinity. Hooker crossed the Potomac east of the mountains, marched north to Frederick, and sent a

rison County, Virginia (now West Virginia), and was graduated from West Point in 1846. He took part in the Mexican War, where he was promoted for good conduct. He resigned from the army in 1851, on receiving an appointment as professor in the Virginia Military Institute, at Lexington, Virginia. He was so eccentric that he became unpopular with the students, who did not regard him as a man of ability. Although he was opposed to secession he thoroughly believed in State rights, and therefore "went with his State" when it seceded. As soon as he took command of troops on the battle-field he showed himself to be a splendid soldier. By his stubborn bravery at Bull Run he won the name of "Stonewall" Jackson, and rose at once to the rank of major-general. He was Lee's ablest subordinate and, next to Lee, was probably the most popular Confederate general.

detachment west through the mountains to menace Lee's line of supplies. In order to draw off the Union forces from his rear, Lee marched eastward to threaten Washington. On the very same morning Meade, who had superseded Hooker, started north from Frederick, keeping east of the mountains, to protect Washington. The two armies were thus marching toward each other, and each was ignorant of the other's movements. They unexpectedly met at Gettysburg, and fought a three days' battle (July 1, 2, and 3).

Lee's advance.

The two armies meet at Gettysburg.

On the first day the advance forces of the Union army, being greatly out-numbered, were driven through Gettysburg with a loss of 5,000 prisoners. The Confederates also suffered heavy loss in killed and wounded. That night the Union army took a strong position on Cemetery Ridge, just south of the town. This ridge, three miles in length, is in the shape of a fish-hook, with Culp's Hill for the barb, and Round Top at the extreme southern end. Just north of Round Top was Little Round Top. Lee's army took position on Seminary Ridge, lying about a mile west of Cemetery Ridge, and nearly parallel with it.

The first day.

On the second day of the battle the Confederates made two vigorous assaults, one at Culp's Hill, on the right wing of the Union army, and the other in front of Little Round Top, on the left wing. Al-

The second day.



though the Confederates gained some slight advantage, there was no definite result on either side.

Having failed to break the Union flanks and having received Pickett's fresh division, Lee spent the next morning in preparation for a grand assault on the Union centre, where he hoped to be more successful. By one o'clock in the after-

noon he had placed in position on Seminary Ridge more than a hundred guns.

*The furious cannonade.*

The Federals could find room for only eighty on Cemetery Ridge. At one o'clock the Confederate guns opened fire, and until three the furious cannonade continued. At that time the fire slackened on Cemetery Ridge in order to let the guns cool in time for the expected attack. The Confederates thought they had silenced the Union batteries, and that the

GEORGE G. MEADE.

moment for the South to make one mighty effort had come.

General Pickett, who was to lead this assault at the head of some of the best Virginia troops, was ordered to advance. In three magnificent lines, with a

*Pickett's charge.*

front a mile long, 15,000 Confederates charged across the field. The sight was thrilling, but soon the murderous fire from the Northern guns began to cut them down by hundreds. The fearful slaughter thinned the advancing lines. Still they pressed on. As they neared the first line of Northern troops, Lieutenant Cushing, a Union officer, although mortally wounded, pushed the only remaining gun of his battery to the fence and shouted to his commander:

"Webb, I will give them one more shot." As he fired he fell, saying "Good-by." Pickett's men broke through the first line. Armistead, one of Pickett's generals, leaped over the fence, raised aloft his sword, upon the point of which he swung his hat, and shouted, "Give them the cold steel, boys!" Just as he laid his hand upon a Union gun to capture it, he was shot down. From every side the Union men came rushing headlong upon the enemy. The struggle that followed was terrific. Men and officers were mingled together in one seething mass, each man fighting for himself.

Pickett's men were soon repulsed, and with their lines broken into fragments they were driven back with disastrous loss. The failure of Pickett's charge insured Lee's defeat at Gettysburg, and with that defeat the tide turned. Next day, while Grant was receiving the surrender of Vicksburg, Lee began his retreat toward the Potomac, and from that hour the South gave up hope of getting a foothold in the North.<sup>1</sup>

**Defeat of  
Pickett's men.**

**337. Capture of Vicksburg; Opening of the Mississippi River.**—At the close of 1862 Vicksburg and Port Hudson were the only Confederate strongholds left on the Mississippi. After months of unsuccessful effort to take Vicksburg from the north, General Grant moved his army down on the west bank of the river and, crossing over to the east bank, made an attack from the south. Pemberton, who was in command of the Confederates in Vicksburg, marched out to meet Grant, hoping to unite with Johnston, who was hastening to join him. Before the union of the two Confederate armies could be effected, Grant drove Pemberton into Vicksburg and compelled Johnston to retreat. Grant's bold plan was brilliantly executed.

**Grant attacks  
Vicksburg from  
the south.**

He then laid siege to the city (May 19), cutting it off from supplies of all kinds. Flour sold for \$1,000 a barrel

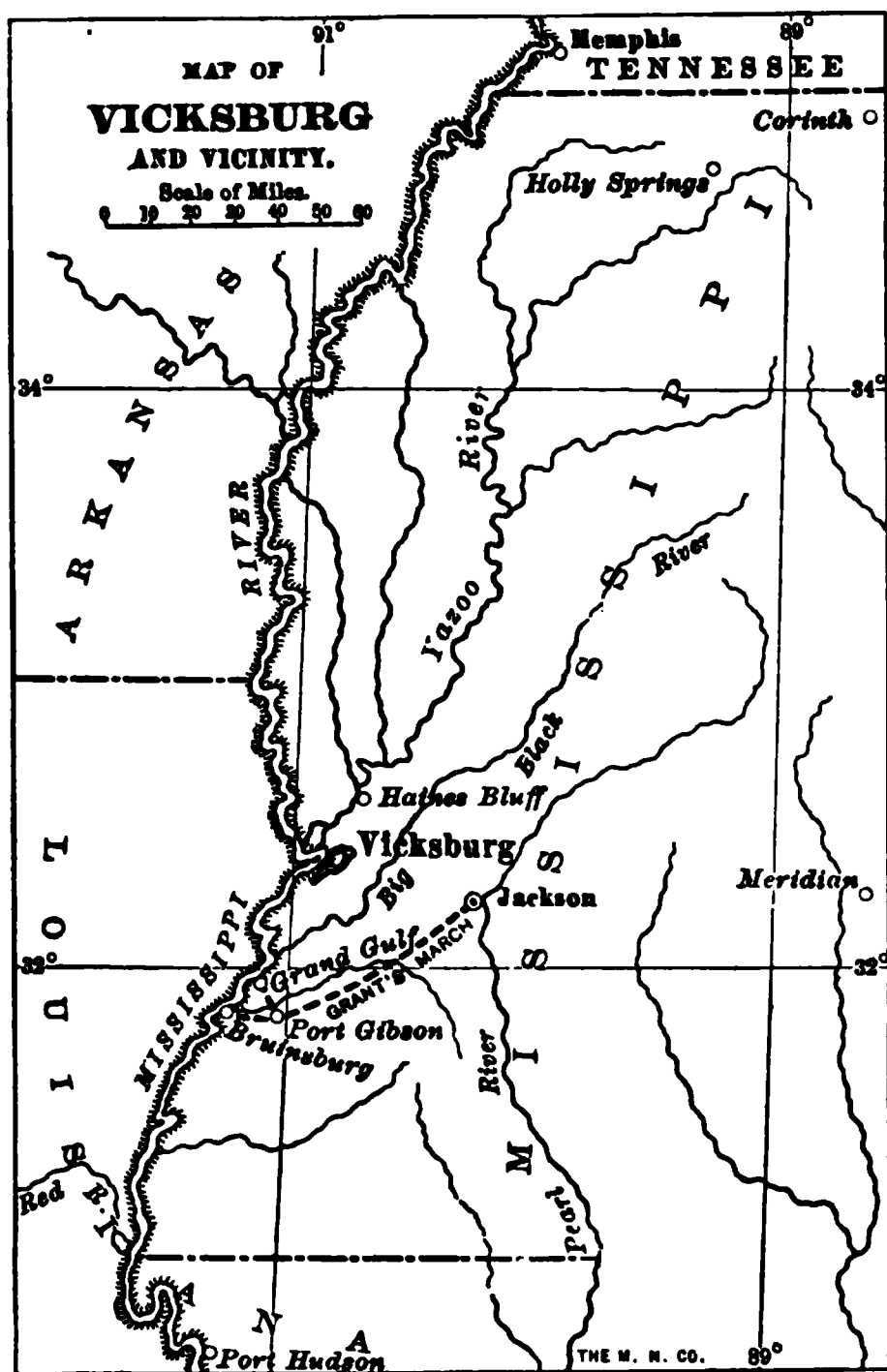
<sup>1</sup> In this battle Meade's army (infantry and artillery) numbered about 82,000; Lee's about 74,000. Each army had in addition about 11,000 cavalry. Meade lost in all about 23,000; Lee 30,000, or more than one-third of his entire force.

(Confederate money). Provisions became so scarce that even rats and mule-flesh were used as food. So many thou-

**The Confederates starved into surrender.**

sand shells were thrown into the city daily that many people abandoned their homes. They lived in caves, which they dug in banks where the streets had been cut through the hills. In about

seven weeks the Confederates were starved into surrender. On July 4, 1863, the day after Lee's defeat at Gettysburg, Pemberton surrendered Vicksburg with 32,000 men. When, four days later, Port Hudson was captured, the Mississippi River, to its mouth, was under the control of the North.



**338. Slavery and the Emancipation Proclamation (January 1, 1863).**—In his inaugural address President Lincoln had declared that he would not interfere with slavery where it already existed because

he had no constitutional right to do so. But as the war proceeded it became evident that the blacks in the South

**The slaves aid the cause of the South.**

were a great source of strength to the Confederate cause; for while masters enlisted in the army, slaves by their labor supplied food not only for Southern families but for the support of the Southern army. In this way they were aiding the cause of the South about as much as if they had been able to bear

arms. Moreover, the sentiment in regard to slavery was changing in the North. People had come to look upon it as the cause of the war, and many desired the government to attack it as a war measure.

As commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States President Lincoln had authority to set free all slaves in territory conquered by the Union armies. Just after the Battle of Antietam, therefore, he warned the seceded States (September 22, 1862) that unless they returned to the Union before January 1, 1863, he would set their slaves free. As none of these States returned, the emancipation proclamation was issued on January 1, 1863. From that time the

"A LITTLE THE WORSE FOR WEAR."

Confederate guns captured at Vicksburg.

North fought not only for the Union but for the abolition of slavery.<sup>1</sup>

**339. Employment of Emancipated Blacks in Northern Army Stops Exchange of Prisoners.**—It was but one step further to arm the blacks and make them soldiers. If the Emancipation Proclamation was issued as a military necessity in order to weaken the South and to make the issue of the war perfectly plain to the world, the same military necessity would call for the arming of these emancipated slaves. Before the end of the war there were enlisted in the Union armies 180,000 blacks, who made good soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> General Butler, early in the war, confiscated the negroes whom he found employed in throwing up earthworks for the Confederates near Fortress Monroe. He fed and protected them, regarding them as contraband of war.

The Confederates bitterly resented the employment of their former slaves in the Union armies, and refused to recognize the negro soldiers or their officers in exchanging prisoners.

BLOODY POND, CHICKAMAUGA BATTLE-FIELD.

This led to mutual misunderstanding and ended in stopping all exchange of prisoners. As a result, thousands of soldiers languished in prisons and suffered much from disease and famine.<sup>1</sup>

**340. Conscription in the North ; Draft Riots**—In 1863 the North found it advisable to resort to a conscription or draft. All able-bodied men between the ages of eighteen and forty-five were enrolled, and from the enrollment a certain proportion was chosen by lot. The draft was very unpopular, and in New York City, on July 13, 1863, a serious riot took place, lasting four days and resulting in the destruction of much property. The mobs showed especial hatred toward colored people, brutally killing many. The riot was finally put down by the aid of troops sent from Gettysburg.

**341. Conscription in the South.**—In April, 1862, by an act of the Confederate Congress, all able-bodied white men

<sup>1</sup> Some of the noted Southern Prisons were Libby Prison and Belle Isle in Richmond, Virginia, and Andersonville, in Georgia.

between the ages of eighteen and thirty-five were required to enter the Confederate army. In the autumn of the same year all white men between the ages of eighteen and forty-five were included in the conscription law, and before the close of the war even boys of sixteen and seventeen, and old men were included. So hard-pressed for men were the Confederates that just before the war came to an end their Congress had decided to enlist some of the slaves in the Confederate army.<sup>1</sup> When all exchange of prisoners was stopped, the South, by reason of the scarcity of fighting men, was much more seriously crippled than the North. The whole

#### CHATTANOOGA.

number of men captured from the armies of the North and the South in the entire war amounted to a half-million.

**342. Battle of Chickamauga (1863).**—After the loss of Vicksburg and Port Hudson, the strongest and most important position held by the Confederates in the West was Chattanooga, which was not

*The importance  
of Chattanooga.*

<sup>1</sup> Toward the end of 1864 Jefferson Davis advocated the passage of a law that would put in training for the Confederate army 40,000 slaves. General Lee supported it. Accordingly a law was enacted by the Confederate Congress providing for the employment of 200,000 slaves as soldiers. The measure was passed too late to be of any service to the Southern cause.

only a great railroad centre, but the key to eastern Tennessee and the gateway to Georgia. General Rosecrans, in command of the Union army in Tennessee, advanced with 55,000 troops upon Chattanooga, which was occupied by Bragg. By moving to the south of this place, Rosecrans threatened Bragg's line of supplies and compelled him to withdraw from Chattanooga and take position on Chickamauga Creek (September) twelve miles to the south.

Here Bragg received a strong body of reinforcements, and vigorously attacked the Union army, now outnumbered. He overwhelmed and routed the right wing, and would have put to rout the entire army but for the unflinching courage of General Thomas, the "Rock of Chickamauga," who coolly held his position on the left until the rest of the army

GEORGE H. THOMAS, "THE ROCK OF CHICKAMAUGA."

could make a safe retreat to Chattanooga.

**343. Siege of Chattanooga.**—Although Bragg defeated the Union army in the battle of Chickamauga, he did not secure what he greatly desired—Chattanooga itself. He therefore strongly fortified himself on Missionary Ridge and Lookout Mountain, overlooking Chattanooga, and tried to cut off the Union army from its supplies. The situation became serious. For weeks all the Union supplies had to be brought over a single mountain-road for a distance of sixty miles. When Grant, who had superseded Rosecrans, reached Chattanooga about the middle of November, the number of horses and mules had been so reduced by starvation that the

Critical situation of the Union army.

artillery could not be moved.<sup>1</sup> The soldiers were living on half-rations, and had not enough ammunition left for a single day's battle. But in five days after reaching Chattanooga Grant<sup>2</sup> had gained possession of the railroad to Nashville and with it abundant supplies. The army which had been cooped up in Chattanooga for months was saved.

**344. Battle of Chattanooga.**—Having received reinforcements, Grant now decided to attack Bragg, who occupied a very strong position, with his right flank resting on the northern end of Missionary Ridge, his left flank on the northern end of Lookout Mountain, and his centre stretching across Chatta-

**Bragg's strong position.**

<sup>1</sup> Ten thousand horses and mules had starved to death.

<sup>2</sup> When seventeen years of age (see par. 371) Ulysses S. Grant received an appointment to a cadetship in the Military Academy at West Point. Although he did not take high rank in scholarship, he became the finest horseman in his class, and showed a marked aptitude for mathematical studies. Entering the army after graduation, he distinguished himself for bravery in many important battles of the Mexican War. He remained in the army until 1854, when he resigned his commission, and continued in private life until the beginning of the Civil War. During these years he tried farming, store-keeping, and selling real estate, but did not have much success. In 1861 he received a commission as colonel of an Illinois regiment, and, by his extraordinary military skill and ability, rose to the rank of lieutenant-general (1864), in command of the Union armies. His brilliant strategy at Vicksburg and Chattanooga in 1863, and in his advance upon Richmond in 1864-65, proved him to be one of the greatest military leaders of all time. His iron will, resolute purpose, cool judgment, and unflinching courage never failed him in the hour of trial and danger. He was also a man of singularly pure and gentle spirit, with a high sense of public duty.



nooga Valley. His line was twelve miles long, and on the flanks appeared to be almost impregnable. On November 24 Grant sent the gallant Hooker and his men to charge up the rocky heights of Lookout Mountain. This charge resulted in desperate fighting "above the clouds," and in driving Bragg's left flank from its mountain stronghold. The next day Thomas's men, like a mighty whirlwind, swept away all opposition in their grand charge up to the top of Missionary Ridge. These assaults were two of the finest exhibitions of bravery seen during the war. Bragg's army, overwhelmingly defeated, fled from the battle-field in confusion.

**Two heroic  
charges by the  
Union troops.**

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Observe that after Lee's retreat from Antietam he defeated the Army of the Potomac in two battles, the first at Fredericksburg (December, 1862), and the second at Chancellorsville (April, 1863). What reasons had Lee for a second invasion of the North in 1863?
2. Trace with care upon your map the location of the two armies on the second day of the battle of Gettysburg. As this is one of the world's great battles you will do well to understand it. Describe Pickett's charge. What were the most striking results of the battle?
3. Before studying the capture of Vicksburg review the battles fought to open the Mississippi in 1862, viz.: Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson, the battle of Shiloh, and the capture of New Orleans. Now you are ready to describe the capture of Vicksburg. Read General Grant's excellent account of it in his "Personal Memoirs."
4. How did the slaves aid the Confederate cause? What was the source of President Lincoln's authority to set free any of the slaves in the South? What was the Emancipation Proclamation? After its issue what was the North fighting for?
5. Why was it natural for the North, after emancipating the blacks, to employ them as soldiers? What effect did such employment have upon the exchange of prisoners?
6. Why was Chattanooga an important military position? What led to the battle of Chickamauga, and how did General Thomas save the Union army from rout? Describe the critical situation of the Union army when Grant reached Chattanooga. What were the results of the battle of Chattanooga?
7. You will find Coffin's books on the Civil War very interesting.

## THE HAMMERING CAMPAIGN

**345. The Union Plan of 1864.**—In March, 1864, Grant, who had won the confidence of the people by his campaigns in the West, was raised to a military rank second only to that of the President, with the title of lieutenant-general.<sup>1</sup> In reality he was placed in command of all the Northern armies. By the close of 1863 the Confederacy had been cut down to Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. The Union armies had now to get control of these four States.

General Grant placed in command of all the Union armies.

Grant was to attempt the capture of Richmond, which was defended by Lee; Sherman was to get control of Georgia by defeating Johnston, who had command of the Confederates there. The watchword in the east was "On to Richmond;" in the west, "On to Atlanta." These two movements were planned to begin at the same time, early in May, so that, if possible, the Confederate armies might be prevented from aiding each other.

ULYSSES S. GRANT.

**346. "On to Richmond."**—Grant's advance upon Richmond began (May 4) by crossing the Rapidan and entering the Wilderness. He had 120,000<sup>2</sup> men against Lee's 62,000. For two days in the thick, gloomy woods, where the enemy could not be seen twenty feet away, a terrible struggle ensued. Grant's loss was severe, but he pressed on, writing to Lincoln: "I propose to

In the Wilderness.

<sup>1</sup> Before that time only Washington and Scott had been made lieutenant-generals.

<sup>2</sup> Grant's army, arranged in ranks of four, the ranks being five feet apart, would extend a distance of more than twenty-eight miles.

fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." As Grant moved forward terrible battles were fought at Spottsylvania Court House (May 8-18) and at Cold Harbor (June 3). Before the close of June he had lost more than 60,000 men, and Lee, 40,000.

Realizing after this great loss of life that he could not capture Richmond by attacking it from the north, Grant transferred his army across the James in order to attack the city from the south. Here an attempt was made to capture Petersburg (July 30) by exploding a mine under the outer Confederate defences. The explosion was followed by a vigorous assault, but the plan failed.

Grant transfers  
his army across  
the James.

PHILIP H. SHERIDAN.

**347. Early's Raid in the Shenandoah.**—It will be remembered that in 1862, when McClellan was near Richmond, "Stonewall" Jackson

was sent into the Shenandoah to threaten Washington and prevent McDowell from reinforcing McClellan. In 1864 Lee tried in the same way to weaken the attack upon Richmond. Toward the last of June he sent Early with 20,000 men to threaten Washington by way of the Shenandoah. Early swept on until he met General Lew Wallace with a much smaller force, on the Monocacy River, not far from Washington. Here Wallace fought a losing battle in order to detain Early long enough for Grant to get a part of his army into Washington. These troops reached the city just in time to prevent its capture. A little later Early again pushed down the Shenandoah, across the Potomac into Pennsylvania, where he burned Chambersburg.

Early threatens  
Washington and  
burns Chambers-  
burg.

**348. Sheridan in the Shenandoah.**—To put an end to

such raids in the North, General Sheridan<sup>1</sup> was sent with 30,000 men to watch General Early and to lay waste the fruitful Shenandoah Valley. After defeating Early and chasing him up the valley, Sheridan destroyed 2,000 barns filled with grain and farming implements and seventy mills filled with flour and wheat, besides driving off thousands of sheep and cattle. A few days later, while Sheridan<sup>2</sup> was away, Early surprised the Union army at Cedar Creek, and drove it back seven miles. This was the occasion of "Sheridan's Ride," from Winchester, about fourteen (not "twenty") miles away. On the arrival of their brave leader the Union forces were formed in battle array. Early's army was totally defeated (October 19) and driven in confusion from the field.

"Sheridan's  
Ride."

349. "On to Atlanta."—Early in May, 1864, Sherman,<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Philip H. Sheridan was born in Ohio in 1831, and died in 1888. He was graduated from West Point in 1853. Upon the outbreak of the Civil War he was made chief quartermaster of the army in the southwestern part of Missouri. He handled his troops so ably at the battle of Murfreesboro that he was promoted to the rank of major-general. He gave further striking evidence of military skill and daring at Chickamauga and Chattanooga. In 1864 Grant had Sheridan put in command of all the cavalry in the Army of the Potomac. His campaign in the Shenandoah was one of the great military achievements of the war. He was so popular that he was called by his men "Little Phil." Some years before his death he became lieutenant-general, and on his death-bed was promoted to the rank of general-in-chief.

<sup>2</sup> In the early morning of the battle, General Sheridan, who was at Winchester, on his return from Washington, was informed of the firing in the direction of Cedar Creek. Mounting his handsome coal-black horse he rode at full speed toward the scene of battle. When he met the retreating soldiers he shouted: "Turn back, men—turn back! Face the other way!" His inspiring presence heartened the soldiers. With waving hats they cried: "Sheridan! Sheridan!" and cheerfully followed their leader as he dashed forward. Sheridan's ride changed defeat into overwhelming victory.

<sup>3</sup> William T. Sherman was born in Lancaster, Ohio, in 1820, and died in 1891. Having graduated from West Point in 1840 he remained in the army until 1853 and then resigned his commission to engage in business. At the outbreak of the Civil War he became a colonel and took part in the battle of Bull Run. Soon after that battle he was raised to the rank of brigadier-general and transferred to Halleck's command in the Department of the West. His great military skill was shown at Shiloh and in the memorable Vicksburg campaign. When, therefore, Grant was placed in command of all the Union armies in 1864, he secured the appointment of Sherman as commander of the armies of the West. The "March to the Sea," one of the notable military achievements of modern history, followed. Sherman

with 100,000 men, was at Chattanooga, facing Johnston, with 64,000, at Dalton. It was desirable to get possession of

**Importance of  
Atlanta and  
Georgia.**

Georgia because it was the workshop, the arsenal, and the storehouse of the Confederacy. Sherman's plan was to capture Atlanta, an important railroad and manufacturing centre, and then to pass

on to the sea and destroy the supplies necessary to sustain the Confederate armies.<sup>1</sup>

Sherman had great difficulties to face. In the first place an able general, Joseph E. Johnston, opposed him; in the second place, every mile of advance took him farther away from his base

**Sherman's  
difficulties.** of supplies at Nashville.

He soon had to protect a long line of communication which the enemy was constantly trying to destroy. Johnston's plan was to draw him as far as possible from

W. T. SHERMAN.

Nashville, always avoiding a pitched battle. Sherman's plan was to flank Johnston and threaten his line of communication with Atlanta. By a series of flank movements Sherman compelled Johnston to retreat. Battles were fought at Dalton, Resaca, and Kenesaw Mountain.

was among the ablest generals of the Civil War. When Grant became general-in-chief of the army in 1866 Sherman was made lieutenant general, and when Grant was elected President, Sherman was promoted to the rank of general-in-chief.

<sup>1</sup> Such a course may seem cruel, but it is just as good generalship to starve an army into submission as to kill with firearms. Its effect is to shorten war and save life.

Both generals were skilful, but Johnston, by his cautious movements, failed to satisfy the Confederate authorities. He was superseded by Hood, who was as rash and impetuous as Johnston was careful and cautious. Hood at once made desperate attacks upon Sherman and was soon defeated. By cutting the railroad connections on the south Sherman captured Atlanta (September 2, 1864).

Capture of  
Atlanta.

**350. Sherman's "March to the Sea."**—A little later Sherman, cutting loose from all communication with the North, started through Georgia on his famous march to the sea, which was some two hundred miles away. Hood, by moving northward, tried to draw Sherman after him, but Sherman sent Thomas to look after Hood, while he himself moved southward from Atlanta. After destroying three hundred miles of railroad and laying waste the country over a belt sixty miles wide, "from Atlanta to the sea," Sherman, with the loss of less than a thousand men, reached Savannah just before Christmas. He presented Savannah as a "Christmas gift" to the government.<sup>1</sup> In the meantime Thomas so thoroughly routed Hood's army at Nashville that it could not be brought together again.

JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

**351. Capture of Mobile.**—As we have seen, one of the

<sup>1</sup> The following was Sherman's message to the President:

"SAVANNAH, GEORGIA, December 22, 1864.

"To his Excellency, President Lincoln, Washington, D.C.:

"I beg to present you, as a Christmas gift, the city of Savannah, with one hundred and fifty heavy guns and plenty of ammunition; also about twenty-five thousand bales of cotton.

W. T. SHERMAN, Major-General."

leading purposes of the North was to prevent, by blockade, the export of Southern cotton. By the middle of 1864 Union war-vessels had closed to foreign trade nearly all



the Southern ports. One of the most important of these was Mobile, which Admiral Farragut, in co-operation with a land force of 5,000 men, was sent to capture. Realizing the great value of Mobile, the Confederates had prepared for a vigorous defence. Two strong forts stood on opposite sides of the entrance of the bay, the channel of which was obstructed by torpedoes. Within the bay were three gun-boats and the powerful iron-clad ram, *Tennessee*.

At six o'clock on the morning of August 5, 1864, the Union fleet, consisting of fourteen wooden vessels and four monitors, was under way. In order that he might see over the smoke, Admiral Farragut,<sup>1</sup> then sixty-three years old,

<sup>1</sup> David Glasgow Farragut was born near Knoxville, Tennessee, in 1801, and died in 1870. The night before the terrible struggle in Mobile Bay he wrote to his wife: "I am going into Mobile Bay in the morning, if God is my leader, as I hope he is, and in him I place my trust. God bless and preserve you, my darling, and my dear boy, if anything should happen to me."







took his position in the rigging of the flagship *Hartford*. One of the monitors was sunk by a torpedo, but the remainder of the fleet passed into the bay and engaged the *Tennessee*, the strongest of the Confederate iron-clads. By ten o'clock the fight was over and the capture of Mobile assured. In a few days the forts surrendered to the land force. This signal victory was due to the unflinching courage of Admiral Farragut.

**352. Sympathy of English Workingmen with the North.**—We may now leave the armies for a while and con-

#### SOLDIERS DESTROYING A RAILROAD.

sider how England and France were looking upon the war. Jefferson Davis and the South greatly erred when they counted upon the sympathy of the working classes in Eng.

land, for when English workingmen understood that the war was a struggle between freedom and slavery, their sympathies were with the North. Although the cotton famine in England, produced by the blockade of the South, forced hundreds of thousands out of employment, these starving laborers prayed for the success of the North. On the other hand, the aristocracy, with a few exceptions, and the English Government, being more in sympathy with the aristocratic Southern planter and perhaps jealous of American commerce, favored the South.

**353. England and the Confederate Navy.**—The South was in great need of a navy, and had no facilities for building one. English shipbuilders, therefore, with the knowledge of the English Government, responded to the need of the South, and built formidable Confederate cruisers in British dock-yards. These cruisers drove our merchant marine from the sea.

The most famous cruiser was the *Alabama*,<sup>1</sup> commanded by Captain Semmes. This vessel was built with English money in an English port, was manned by an English crew, carried English gunners, and hoisted an English flag. In a word, with the exception of her officers, she was an English vessel built for the special purpose of destroying Northern commerce. Charles Francis Adams, our able minister to England at that time, protested, but in vain. The United States in the midst of a civil war no longer commanded the respect of the English Government. Our country was not in a position to demand justice and satisfaction. But it resented England's attitude none the less keenly, and the time came when England was wise enough to listen.

<sup>1</sup> "A score of other Confederate cruisers roamed the seas, to prey upon United States commerce, but none of them became quite so famous as the *Sumter* and the *Alabama*. They included the *Shenandoah*, which made thirty-eight captures; the *Florida*, which made thirty-six; the *Tallahassee*, which made twenty-seven; the *Tacony*, which made fifteen, and the *Georgia*, which made ten. Most of these cruisers were built in British ship-yards."—R. JOHNSON.

The attitude of the English government toward the Confederate navy was most unfortunate, naturally causing in the North much bitter feeling toward England.

The *Alabama* (1862-64) captured over sixty Northern vessels, amounting in value, with their cargoes, to over \$7,000,000. The duel between the *Alabama* and the *Kearsarge*, which had gone out in search of her, was fought off the coast of France (June 19, 1864). The *Alabama*, in about one hour, was shattered and sunk. The sinking of the *Alabama* put an end to the

The Kearsarge  
sinks the  
Alabama.

#### THE EXECUTION OF MAXIMILIAN AND HIS COMPANIONS.

destructive work of Confederate cruisers. After the war England paid more than \$15,000,000 for damages done by Confederate cruisers. As the first of these claims made by our government for redress grew out of acts committed by the *Alabama*, all the claims growing out of the acts of all the vessels became known as the "Alabama Claims."

The Alabama  
Claims.

354. **Napoleon III. and the Confederate Navy.**—But the English Government did not stand alone in its unfriendly attitude. The French Government was equally

hostile to the North. Napoleon III., for personal reasons, was eager for the success of the Confederate cause, and urged England to acknowledge the independence of the South. He wished to see the Union dissolved, because it was his desire to establish an empire upon the ruins of the republic of Mexico, and he knew that so long as the Union remained unbroken he would not be permitted to carry out his plans. He also, during the later years of the war, with contemptible duplicity equal to that of Napoleon I. just before the War of 1812, allowed formidable iron-clads for the Southern navy to be built in France. One of these was finally launched, but the war was at an end before it could reach our coast.

**Napoleon's desire to establish an empire in Mexico.**

Napoleon sent a French army to invade Mexico in 1861. By 1863 it had established an empire there, and Napoleon offered the throne to Maximilian, Archduke of Austria. The United States protested, but in vain. After the close of the war, however, in response to the threatening attitude of this country, Napoleon withdrew the French troops. Maximilian was then taken prisoner by the Mexican authorities, tried by court-martial, and shot.

**Maximilian in Mexico.**

### TO THE PUPIL

1. What part of the Confederacy remained unconquered at the close of 1863? Describe the Union plan of campaign in 1864. Outline the "On to Richmond" movement.
2. Compare Early's raid in the Shenandoah in 1864 with Jackson's movements in that valley in 1862. What did Jackson accomplish? what Early? Why was Sheridan sent into the Shenandoah? What did he accomplish there? Why was the Shenandoah of importance to the Confederates?
3. Why was it desirable for the North to get possession of Atlanta? What difficulties did Sherman meet in his advance upon Atlanta? What was Johnston's plan of defence?
4. Outline Sherman's "March to the Sea." Which do you think was the abler general, Sherman or Johnston? Give reasons for your answer.
5. What did Jefferson Davis mean by speaking of cotton as "king"? At this point review the "Trent Affair," the importance of the blockade, the attempt on the part of the South to break the blockade by means

of the "Merrimac," and the effect the blockade had upon cotton export.

6. Why did English workingmen sympathize with the North? Why did the English aristocracy and the English Government favor the South? In what way did English shipbuilders aid the South?
7. What was the "Alabama," and what was the attitude of the English Government toward Southern cruisers built in English dockyards? What became of the "Alabama"? What were the "Alabama Claims?"
8. How did Napoleon III. show his sympathy with the South? What was his scheme in sending Maximilian to Mexico? In this connection review the Monroe Doctrine, and find out whether or not Napoleon III. violated this doctrine by supporting Maximilian with a French army. Why were the French troops withdrawn from Mexico after the Civil War?
9. Subject for debate: Resolved that Grant was a better general than Lee.

#### APPOMATTOX COURT HOUSE

**355. Fall of Richmond.**—By the various disasters which we have recounted the Southern cause was brought into desperate straits. Careful observers could see that the end was near. Sherman, after remaining about a month in Savannah, started through the Carolinas northward (February 1). Lee, with 40,000 men, still held Richmond, which Grant, with 100,000 men, was trying to capture. In order to join Johnston's forces in North Carolina, Lee made one last effort to break through the Union army lying south of Petersburg. This plan was defeated by Sheridan in the battle of Five Forks, where 5,000 Confederates were captured.

**Lee fails to break through Grant's army.**

The next day (April 2) Lee evacuated Richmond and started on a retreat westward. The pursuit was hot. Hundreds of the Confederates, having little to eat and believing that their cause was hopeless, deserted, and thousands threw away their arms. Their condition was pitiable. For five or six days they lived on parched corn and the shoots of trees. One week after leaving Richmond (April 9), Lee, finding that every avenue of escape was cut off, agreed to hold a conference with

**Lee retreats.**

Grant at Appomattox Court House, about seventy-five miles west of Richmond, to consider terms of surrender.

**356. Lee's Surrender.**—It was a notable meeting. The result of the interview was the surrender of Lee with 26,000 men, only 8,000 of whom had arms. The terms of surrender were very generous to the Confederates, who were to lay down their arms and were not, unless properly exchanged, to take them up again. With rare delicacy of feeling Grant ordered that all the Confederates owning horses or mules should be allowed to take them home. "They will need them for the spring ploughing," he said. But Grant's consideration for the Confederate soldiers did not stop here. He did not require the vanquished army to march out and stack arms in presence of his victorious troops. He even stopped the firing of salutes by his men.

Grant's attitude toward the Confederates, which won the hearts of the Southern people, was like that of the United States Government as a whole. Only one Confederate—the keeper of Andersonville Prison—was put to death at the close of the war. The death-penalty in this case was inflicted, not at all for connection with the Confederate movement, but because of inhuman cruelty. No government ever showed so great mercy to those who had tried to break it in pieces. The great struggle ended when Johnston surrendered to Sherman near Raleigh, North Carolina (April 26, 1865).

**357. Flight and Capture of Jefferson Davis.**—On Sunday morning, April 2, Jefferson Davis was attending service at St. Paul's Episcopal Church in Richmond when an officer walked quietly up the aisle with a telegram from Lee announcing the retreat of the latter from Petersburg. Davis at once left the church and prepared to leave the city. In a vain endeavor to escape capture he fled through the Carolinas into Georgia. While encamped in the woods near Irwinsville, Georgia, in the early morning he was surprised and captured (May 10). He was taken to Fortress

GENERAL LEE SIGNING THE TERMS OF SURRENDER AT APPOMATTOX.





Monroe and confined there for two years. At the end of that time many well-known men, among whom was Horace Greeley—a Republican leader of great prominence—used their influence to secure his release. Davis was never brought to trial.

**358. The Assassination of Lincoln.**—The rejoicing of the people over the return of peace soon gave place to mourning for the loss of the one who had safely piloted the nation through the storm of war. On the evening of April 14, 1865, while President Lincoln was at Ford's Theatre in Washington, an obscure actor, half-crazed over what he believed to be the wrongs of the South, entered the President's box from the rear and shot him through the head. He then leaped upon the stage, and shouting, "*Sic semper tyrannis!*" (So be it always to tyrants), rushed out of the stage-door amid the wildest excitement of the people, and escaped. In a few days he was hunted to his hiding-place in Virginia and shot dead while resisting capture.

Lincoln's assassin was at the head of a conspiracy whose aim was to bring confusion to the government by killing some of the leading men and thus creating a panic. On the same evening one of these conspirators forced his way to the bedside of Secretary Seward, who was lying ill in his home, and vainly tried to stab him to death. Four of these conspirators were hanged and three imprisoned for life.

**The aim of the conspirators.**

Lincoln, who was shot a little after ten o'clock in the evening, lingered, unconscious, until early next morning. When Lincoln's spirit passed away, Secretary Stanton was the first to break the silence by saying, "Now he belongs to the ages." The grief of the people for the nation's hero was well-nigh universal. On Friday, April 21, the train that was to take his body to Springfield, Illinois, moved slowly out of Washington on its mournful journey. In order that the people might have opportunity to express their love and grief for the departed leader it stopped at many large cities along the route. The unbroken silence amid which the vast throngs filed

**The grief of the people.**

past the open coffin as the body lay in state indicated a feeling too deep for words.

The spirit of his noble service is well illustrated in the closing words of his second inaugural address, March 4, 1865:<sup>1</sup> "With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right, as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle, and for his widow, and his orphan—to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations."

**359. The Sanitary and Christian Commissions.**—Early in the war the Sanitary Commission was organized by good men and women to supplement the work of the government in aiding needy and distressed soldiers. Recognized by the government and supported by all classes of the people, its career was one of extraordinary usefulness. It had its own physicians, nurses, and attendants, its

<sup>1</sup> It seems fitting to introduce here the memorable Gettysburg speech, made at Gettysburg, November 19, 1863, on the occasion of the dedication of the National Cemetery there. This speech well exemplifies, in its brevity, simplicity, and tenderness of feeling, the character of President Lincoln:

#### LINCOLN'S GETTYSBURG SPEECH

Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. We are met on a great battle-field of that war. We are come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting-place for those who here gave their lives that that nation might live. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this. But in a larger sense we cannot dedicate, we cannot consecrate, we cannot hallow this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here, have consecrated it far above our power to add or detract. The world will little note, nor long remember, what we say here; but it can never forget what they did here. It is for us, the living, rather to be dedicated here to the unfinished work which they, who fought here, have thus far so nobly advanced. It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the great task remaining before us, that from these honored dead we take increased devotion to that cause for which they gave the last full measure of devotion; that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom, and that government of the people, by the people, and for the people, shall not perish from the earth.

own transports and methods of work. It ministered to the wounded on the battle-field and carried the wounded soldiers by easy methods of conveyance to the hospital. Furthermore, it gave special relief to men on sick-leave, collected and distributed supplies, and in every possible way cared for the suffering and needy soldiers.

The Christian Commission cared for the souls as well as the bodies of the soldiers. It distributed tracts, held prayer-

#### A SANITARY COMMISSION LODGE NEAR ALEXANDRIA, VA.

meetings in improvised chapels, comforted the dying, and, where possible, gave Christian burial. This commission also received the recognition and support of the government. Thousands of noble women at home, in hospitals, and near the scenes of battles expressed in their service through these commissions not only a tender love and sympathy, but a patriotism as faithful and true as that of the brave soldiers whom they attended.

The work of  
noble women.

**360. The Results of the War.**—The Civil War was one of gigantic proportions. At its close the South was prostrated, the North was under severe strain. About 600,000

men had been killed, and several hundred thousand more permanently injured. The loss of wealth can never be told, but, including the expenditures of the government and the States, the destruction of property by both armies, and the value of slaves to the South, the war cost not far from eight thousand millions of dollars.

The most important result of the Civil War was that slavery was forever abolished throughout the Union.<sup>1</sup> The Emancipation Proclamation had set free only the slaves in those States and parts of States conquered by Union armies; but now slavery was entirely swept away, and with it the attendant evils of State rights, nullification, and secession. The supremacy of the Union was established and the United States, "one nation, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all," turned her energies to the new struggle of building up what had been torn down by four years of frightful havoc—the industries and wealth of her people.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Before studying the fall of Richmond review the various attempts made by the Army of the Potomac to capture that city. Your review will include Bull Run, the Peninsular Campaign, and the "On to Richmond" movement in 1864.
2. Describe Lee's retreat and his memorable surrender.
3. Read Lincoln's second inaugural, and memorize his Gettysburg speech.
4. Subject for debate: Resolved that the army did more effective work than the navy in the Civil War.
5. What were the Sanitary and Christian Commissions? What were the most important results of the War? Are you sure you know its causes?
6. If you will read Alcott's Hospital Sketches you will see a sad picture of suffering in the hospitals during the war.

<sup>1</sup> See Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution.

## CHRONOLOGY

1789. *March 4*, FIRST CONGRESS ASSEMBLED IN NEW YORK.  
*April 30*, WASHINGTON INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1790. THE FIRST CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 3,929,214.
1791. VERMONT ADMITTED TO THE UNION—FIRST NATIONAL BANK ESTABLISHED.
1792. KENTUCKY ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1793. WAYNE'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE INDIANS.  
 COTTON-GIN INVENTED BY ELI WHITNEY.
1794. THE WHISKEY INSURRECTION.
1795. JAY'S TREATY RATIFIED.
1796. TENNESSEE ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1797. *March 4*, JOHN ADAMS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1798. DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY CREATED BY ACT OF CONGRESS.  
 ALIEN AND SEDITION LAWS ENACTED BY CONGRESS.
1800. THE SECOND CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 5,308,483.
1801. JOHN MARSHALL MADE CHIEF JUSTICE OF THE SUPREME COURT.  
*March 4*, JEFFERSON INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1802. OHIO ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1803. LOUISIANA PURCHASED FROM FRANCE.
1804. LEWIS AND CLARKE STARTED ON THEIR EXPEDITION.
1805. TREATY OF PEACE WITH TRIPOLI.
1806. AARON BURR'S EXPEDITION TO THE SOUTHWEST.  
*November 20*, THE BERLIN DECREE ISSUED.
1807. TRIAL TRIP OF FULTON'S FIRST STEAMBOAT.  
*November*, THE ORDERS IN COUNCIL.  
*December*, THE EMBARGO ACT PASSED BY CONGRESS.
1809. *March 4*, MADISON INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1810. THE THIRD CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 7,239,881.
1811. THE FIRST STEAMBOAT STARTS DOWN THE OHIO FROM PITTSBURG FOR  
 NEW ORLEANS.  
*November 7*, BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.
1812. LOUISIANA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*June 18*, WAR DECLARED AGAINST ENGLAND.  
*August 16*, HULL'S SURRENDER OF DETROIT.  
*August 19*, NAVAL FIGHT BETWEEN THE UNITED STATES VESSEL "CONSTI-  
 TUTION" AND THE BRITISH FRIGATE "GUERRIÈRE."
1813. *March 4*, MADISON'S SECOND INAUGURATION.  
*September 10*, PERRY'S VICTORY ON LAKE ERIE.  
*October 5*, BATTLE OF THE THAMES.  
 JACKSON'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE SOUTHERN INDIANS.
1814. CAMPAIGN ON THE NIAGARA; BATTLES OF CHIPPEWA, AND LUNDY'S LANE.  
*August 25*, CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON BY THE BRITISH.  
*September 11*, BATTLE OF PLATTSBURG.  
*December 15*, HARTFORD CONVENTION MET.  
*December 24*, TREATY OF PEACE SIGNED AT GHENT.
1815. *January 8*, BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.
1816. THE SECOND UNITED STATES BANK CHARTERED.  
 INDIANA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1817. *March 4*, MONROE INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.

1817. *July 4*, CONSTRUCTION OF THE ERIE CANAL BEGUN.  
MISSISSIPPI ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1818. STEAM NAVIGATION BEGUN ON THE GREAT LAKES.  
ILLINOIS ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1819. ALABAMA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
THE STEAMSHIP "SAVANNAH" MADE THE FIRST TRIP ACROSS THE ATLANTIC,  
FROM SAVANNAH TO LIVERPOOL.
1820. MAINE ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
THE FOURTH CENSUS SHOWING A POPULATION OF 9,633,822.
1821. RATIFICATION OF TREATY OF 1819, CEDING FLORIDA TO THE UNITED STATES.  
MISSOURI COMPROMISE ADOPTED BY CONGRESS.  
MISSOURI ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1825. *March 4*, JOHN QUINCY ADAMS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
CORNER-STONE OF BUNKER HILL MONUMENT LAID IN BOSTON BY LAFAYETTE.  
ERIE CANAL OPENED.
1826. FIRST RAILROAD BUILT IN THE UNITED STATES (AT QUINCY, MASS.).
1828. FIRST PASSENGER RAILROAD IN THE UNITED STATES BEGUN (AT BALTIMORE, MD.).
1829. *March 4*, JACKSON INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1830. THE FIFTH CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 12,866,020.
1831. GARRISON ESTABLISHED "THE LIBERATOR."
1832. NULLIFICATION IN SOUTH CAROLINA.
1833. REMOVAL OF DEPOSITS FROM THE UNITED STATES BANK.
1835. TEXAS DECLARED HER INDEPENDENCE OF MEXICO.
1836. *June 15*, ARKANSAS ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1837. *January 26*, MICHIGAN ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*March 4*, VAN BUREN INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1840. THE FIRST CUNARD STEAMER SAILS FROM LIVERPOOL TO NEW YORK.  
THE SIXTH CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 17,069,453.
1841. *March 4*, HARRISON INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1842. THE DORR REBELLION IN RHODE ISLAND.  
THE ASHBURTON TREATY CONCLUDED.
1844. ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH LINE ESTABLISHED BETWEEN BALTIMORE AND WASHINGTON.
1845. TEXAS ANNEXED BY JOINT RESOLUTION.  
*March 3*, FLORIDA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*March 4*, POLK INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*December 29*, TEXAS ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1846. *May 8*, BATTLE OF PALO ALTO, BEGINNING OF THE MEXICAN WAR.  
*August 8*, DAVID WILMOT INTRODUCED HIS PROVISIO IN CONGRESS.  
*December 28*, IOWA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1847. *February 22, 23*, BATTLE OF BUENA VISTA.  
*March 27*, SURRENDER OF VERA CRUZ.  
*September 14*, CITY OF MEXICO OCCUPIED BY THE AMERICAN FORCES.
1848. *February*, TREATY OF PEACE WITH MEXICO CONCLUDED.  
GOLD DISCOVERED IN CALIFORNIA.  
*May 29*, WISCONSIN ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1849. *March 4*, TAYLOR INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1850. THE CLAY COMPROMISE PASSED.  
THE SEVENTH CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 23,191,876.  
*September 9*, CALIFORNIA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1853. MARCH 4, PIERCE INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
1854. *May 30*, THE KANSAS-NEBRASKA BILL PASSED.
1857. *March 4*, BUCHANAN INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*March 6*, THE DRED SCOTT DECISION.

1858. *May 11*, MINNESOTA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
1859. *February 14*, OREGON ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*October*, JOHN BROWN'S RAID ON HARPER'S FERRY.
1860. THE EIGHTH CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 31,443,321.  
*December 20*, SOUTH CAROLINA SECEDED.
1861. *January*, MISSISSIPPI, ALABAMA, FLORIDA, GEORGIA, AND LOUISIANA SECEDED.  
*January 29*, KANSAS ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*February*, TEXAS SECEDED; PROVISIONAL CONFEDERATE GOVERNMENT ORGANIZED.  
*March 4*, LINCOLN INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*April 12, 13*, BOMBARDMENT OF FORT SUMTER.  
*April 17*, VIRGINIA SECEDED.  
*April 19*, FIRST BLOOD SHED, IN BALTIMORE.  
*May*, ARKANSAS AND NORTH CAROLINA SECEDED.  
*July 21*, FIRST BATTLE OF BULL RUN.  
*November 8*, MASON AND SLIDELL TAKEN FROM THE "TRENT."
1862. *February 16*, SURRENDER OF FORT DONELSON.  
*March 9*, FIGHT BETWEEN THE "MERRIMAC" AND THE "MONITOR."  
*April 6, 7*, BATTLE OF PITTSBURG LANDING (SHILOH).  
*April 25*, CAPTURE OF NEW ORLEANS BY FARRAGUT.  
*June 25*, THE SEVEN DAYS' BATTLES BEFORE RICHMOND BEGUN.  
*August 29, 30*, SECOND BATTLES OF BULL RUN.  
*September 17*, BATTLE OF ANTIETAM.  
*December 13*, BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG.
1863. *January 1*, EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION ISSUED.  
*May 2, 3* (BATTLE LASTED TWO DAYS), BATTLE OF CHANCELLORSVILLE.  
*June 20*, WEST VIRGINIA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*July 1-3*, BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG.  
*July 4*, SURRENDER OF VICKSBURG.  
*July 8*, SURRENDER OF PORT HUDSON.  
*September 19, 20*, BATTLE OF CHICKAMAUGA.  
*November 24, 25*, BATTLE OF CHATTANOOGA.
1864. *May 5, 6*, GRANT'S ADVANCE ON LEE, BATTLE OF THE WILDERNESS.  
*May 4*, SHERMAN'S ATLANTA CAMPAIGN BEGUN.  
*June 14*, GRANT CROSSES THE JAMES; SIEGE OF PETERSBURG BEGUN.  
*June 19*, THE "ALABAMA" SUNK BY THE "KEARSARGE."  
*August 5*, BATTLE OF MOBILE BAY.  
*September 2*, FALL OF ATLANTA.  
*September and October*, SHERIDAN'S CAMPAIGN IN THE SHENANDOAH VALLEY.  
*October 19*, BATTLE OF CEDAR CREEK.  
*October 31*, NEVADA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*November 15*, SHERMAN'S MARCH TO THE SEA BEGUN.  
*December 15, 16*, BATTLE OF NASHVILLE.  
*December 21*, SHERMAN ENTERS SAVANNAH.
1865. *January 15*, FORT FISHER CAPTURED BY GENERAL TERRY.  
*March 4*, ABRAHAM LINCOLN'S SECOND INAUGURATION.  
*April 1*, BATTLE OF FIVE FORKS.  
*April 2*, RICHMOND EVACUATED.  
*April 9*, SURRENDER OF LEE'S ARMY.  
*April 14*, PRESIDENT LINCOLN ASSASSINATED.  
*April 26*, SURRENDER OF JOHNSTON'S ARMY.  
*May 10*, CAPTURE OF JEFFERSON DAVIS.  
*May 23, 24*, REVIEW OF THE ARMY AT WASHINGTON.



# Reconstruction and the New Union

## CHAPTER XIX

### RECONSTRUCTION DAYS (1865-1871)

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, V.; **Andrews's** United States, II.; **Andrews's** Last Quarter Century, I.; **Burgess's** Civil War and Reconstruction; **Woodrow Wilson's** Division and Reunion; **Richardson's** History of Our Country.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Goldwin Smith's** United States; **Alexander H. Stephens's** War between the States; **Jefferson Davis's** Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government; **Blaine's** Twenty Years in Congress; **McPherson's** Political History of Reconstruction; **McCulloch's** Men and Measures of Half a Century.

**361. Condition of the South when Johnson became President.**—If all the wisdom and tact of Lincoln had been required during the war, much more were they needed in the trying days of reconstruction. The public debt was enormous, and the whole country was suffering from the strain of war. Fortunes had been lost, family circles broken, and thousands of brave fathers, husbands, and brothers slain in battle. Conditions were hardest in the South, where wasted plantations and ruined homes bore evidence of the terrible havoc of war. Bodies of Union cavalry were scouring the country in search of Confederate leaders who, when captured, were sent to forts and imprisoned until the nation should decide their fate.

“What shall be done with the leading Confederates?”  
“How shall the millions of Southern negroes be cared for?”  
**Perplexing questions.** “In what way shall the seceded States be treated?” These were a few of the perplexing questions of those trying times. It was hard to know

what was best to do—so hard that men soon realized that Lee's surrender presented new troubles as difficult to settle as the problems that brought on the war itself.

**362. Andrew Johnson.**<sup>1</sup>—Andrew Johnson, who succeeded Lincoln, was rash, hot-tempered, and self-willed, utterly without the delicate tact and persuasive power that gave Lincoln such a remarkable influence over men. In politics he was a strict constructionist, but was devoted to the Union. At the beginning of the war he was the only senator from the secession States who refused to resign his office. At this time he was an ardent believer in the doctrine of State rights, but he had no sympathy with the secession movement. This was accounted for by the fact that he was brought up among the "poor whites," and was therefore prejudiced alike against the rich men of the South and the negroes. We need not be surprised, then, to find him ready to put to death Jefferson Davis and other distinguished Confederates, and to show no special concern about the protection of the freedmen.

ANDREW JOHNSON.

**363. President Johnson's Plan of Restoring the Seceded States.**—By the middle of July, 1865, President John-

<sup>1</sup> Andrew Johnson, seventeenth President of the United States (1865-1869), was born in Raleigh, North Carolina, in 1808, and died in 1875. His parents belonged to the class of people known as the "poor whites," and, therefore, his early advantages were extremely limited; but he was fearless, honest, energetic, and ambitious. He taught himself to read while apprenticed to a tailor, and after his marriage his wife taught him to write and cipher. While a young man he removed to Tennessee with his mother and sister, who were dependent upon him. There he gained the confidence of the people, and occupied one public office after another, until his election to the Senate of the United States. He was governor of Tennessee when he was elected Vice-President, and after Lincoln's assassination he became President.

son took steps to restore the eleven Confederate States to their places in the Union. Congress would not meet until December, and up to that time he could carry out his own ideas in regard to the South. He appointed provisional governors, who were to call upon the white voters in their respective States to elect delegates to State conventions. These conventions were to pass three votes: (1) To declare the Ordinances of Secession to be null and void; (2) to repudiate the Confederate war-debt; (3) and to ratify the Thirteenth Amendment, which forever abolished slavery in the United States.<sup>1</sup> The votes having been passed by all the seceded States, the President recognized the State governments<sup>2</sup> and declared them ready to be represented in Congress (December, 1865).

**364. The Freedmen and Southern Legislation.**—It was believed in the South that the freedmen, having so long been accustomed as slaves to the direction of masters and overseers, would not work unless compelled by law, and that the safety of the South was threatened by the presence of several million ignorant and shiftless beings. Southern Legislatures, therefore, began to enact laws whose results would have been to reduce the negroes to a condition little short of actual slavery. These laws aroused indignation in the North and had great influence in shaping the work of reconstruction.

**365. The Congressional Plan of Reconstruction in the Seceded States (1867).**—When Congress met in December, 1865, the Republicans refused to admit the representatives and senators from the seceded States until something should be done to protect the freedmen in their civil rights. This action made President Johnson furious against Congress. He declared that it had no more right to keep a State out of the Union than the States had to secede from the Union.

President Johnson's bitter feeling toward Congress.

<sup>1</sup> This amendment did for the whole United States what the Emancipation Proclamation did for the seceded States.

<sup>2</sup> Johnson's plan of restoring the seceded States was similar to that outlined by Lincoln in his "Presidential Theory" of reconstruction.



His bitterness increased until it led him to lose all sense of dignity and propriety as he gave expression to his violent feelings. In a short time he turned his party in Congress against him. As they numbered two-thirds of both the Senate and the House they could enact any laws they pleased, in spite of the President's veto. Johnson soon accused them of keeping out the Southern representation for this specific purpose. But the more he accused, the more solid became the ranks of the Republicans opposed to him.

By 1867 Congress had worked out a simple and thorough plan of reconstruction which it boldly proceeded to execute.

**Two essential features of the Congressional plan.**

By this plan, (1) the Confederate leaders were excluded from voting or holding office until pardoned by Congress, and (2) the freedmen were given the ballot. In other words, those who a few years before had been slaves were given large influence in public affairs, while many of their former masters were left without any political power whatever. No seceded State could be represented in Congress until it should submit to these two conditions. To indicate its submission each State was to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment.<sup>1</sup>

**366. The Work of Reconstruction Complete.**—It is needless to say that the Southern people indignantly opposed these laws. They thought Congress unjust to deny the right of suffrage to the most intelligent and influential whites, and at the same time to give it to the ignorant blacks. But by June, 1868, seven<sup>2</sup> of the States had submitted, and their representatives were admitted again to Congress. By January 30, 1871, the work of reconstruction had been completed, and all the States were again represented in Congress.

<sup>1</sup> This made the freedman a citizen, declared that the Confederate leaders should not fill any public office until pardoned by Congress, and that while the debt of the Union should be paid, the debt of the Confederacy should not be paid. Tennessee was the first of the Confederate States to accept the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments, and Congress voted, July 24, 1866, that she was entitled to representation.

<sup>2</sup> These States were Tennessee, North Carolina, South Carolina, Florida, Alabama, Louisiana, and Arkansas.

**367. Bitter Struggle Between President Johnson and Congress (1867-1868).**—The President, as we have seen, had not agreed with Congress about the plan of reconstruction. The quarrel between them grew more bitter. Congress continued to pass measures over his veto, and he continued fiercely to attack that body in his speeches. This most unfortunate and undignified contest was brought to a climax by the Tenure of Office Act. Up to that time it had been held that, while the President could appoint no high officials without the Senate's approval, he could remove them at his pleasure. But in

**The Tenure of  
Office Act.**

**TICKET OF ADMITTANCE TO PRESIDENT JOHNSON'S IMPEACHMENT TRIAL.**

March, 1867, Congress passed the Tenure of Office Act, providing that the President should not, without the consent of the Senate, remove any office-holder whose appointment required the consent of the Senate. In August, during the Congressional recess, Johnson removed from his Cabinet Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, and appointed General Grant to fill the position. When the Senate again met, it refused to sanction Stanton's removal, and General Grant withdrew.

**368. Congress Impeaches President Johnson.**—The President, believing that the Tenure of Office Act was unconstitutional, refused to obey it, and again removed Secretary Stanton, putting General Thomas in his place. The House then impeached the President; that is, it accused him of failing to do his duty as the executive head of the

nation. He was tried before the Senate, Chief Justice Chase presiding. As in all cases of impeachment, the Senate acted as a high court, a two-thirds vote being necessary to secure conviction. More than two-thirds of the Senators were Republicans, but seven of them voted for acquittal, making the vote stand thirty-five for conviction and nineteen for acquittal. The President had won by a single vote.

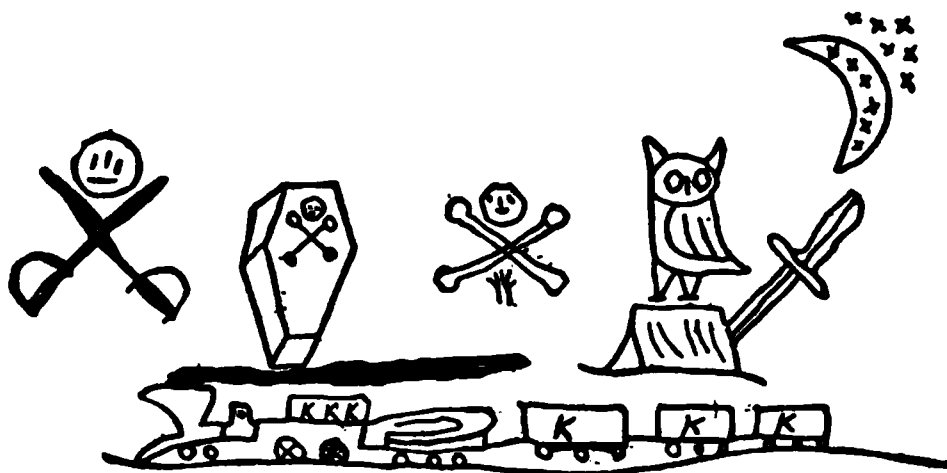
**369. Negro Suffrage and Carpet-bag Rule (1868-1871).**  
—Before the work of reconstruction was completed, the Fifteenth Amendment had become a part of the Constitution. The Thirteenth Amendment (1865) made the negro a freedman, the Fourteenth Amendment (1868) made him a citizen, and the Fifteenth Amendment (1870) made him a voter. With the right of suffrage in his grasp, his friends hoped that he might protect himself against oppression. But he was too ignorant to become a voter or lawmaker. As a slave he had not only been kept in ignorance, but, by his master's care for his wants, had been deprived of all sense of responsibility. One could hardly expect that all at once he would become an intelligent voter.

The whites tried by bribes and other means to keep the negroes away from the polls. When mild means failed, violence was used. As a natural result there was great disorder. The negroes were joined by a small number of white men, some of whom were adventurers from the North, called "carpet-baggers" because they were said to have brought all their possessions in their carpet-bags, and others were Southern men, called "scalawags" and despised as traitors by the South. Doubtless many of these white men were honest in their convictions, but some of them used the blacks as tools for their own political advancement. The Legislatures made bad laws and levied heavy taxes upon property owned mostly by the whites who could not vote. Vast sums of money were wasted or stolen, and State debts were enormously increased.

The negro a freed-  
man, a citizen,  
and a voter.

Great disorder,  
heavy taxes, and  
bad laws.

370. **The Ku-Klux Klan (1868-1871).**—Naturally, men of property and intelligence resented these unjust practices, and determined to put a stop to them. At first the whites used peaceable means, and soon got control in some of the States. But in others, especially where the blacks were in a majority, the whites were not so successful. In those States attempts were made to terrify the freedmen. Much of this terrorizing was done under the name of a



The Horrible Sepulchre and Bloody Moon has at last arrived. Some live to-day to-morrow "Die." We the undersigned understand through our Grand "Cyclops" that you have recommended a big Black Nigger for Male agent on our nu rode; wel, sir, Jest you understand in time if he gets on the rode you can make up your mind to pull rope. If you have any thing to say in regard to the Matter, meet the Grand Cyclops and Conclave at Den No. 4 at 12 o'clock midnight, Oct. 1st, 1871.

"When you are in Calera we warn you to hold your tongue and not speak so much with your mouth or otherwise you will be taken on supprise and led out by the Klan and learnt to stretch hemp. Beware. Beware. Beware. Beware.

(Signed)

"PHILLIP ISENBAUM,  
"Grand Cyclops

"JOHN BANKSTOWN

"ESAU DAVES

"MARCUS THOMAS

"BLOODY BONES

"You know who. And all others of the Klan."

A KU-KLUX "WARNING" IN MISSISSIPPI.

secret society called the Ku-Klux Klan, which existed throughout the South.

It was at first a sort of police organized by the young men of Tennessee as a pleasurable means of keeping the negroes under control by working upon their superstitions. Its members wore hideous masks and disguises, and did much of their work at night. As disorder increased, "dens," or Ku-Klux societies, multiplied, especially in those States where the blacks were in a majority. Usually the knowledge that a "den" was organized in the vicinity was enough to terrify the negroes into submission. When that was not sufficient

**Brutal methods  
of the Ku-Klux  
Klan.**



the Ku-Klux Klan, or men who pretended to belong to the society, began to whip, maim, and even murder the freedmen and their white Republican friends. Finally, law-abiding citizens of both parties, aided by the National Government, united to put down the disorder, and by the close of 1871 had succeeded.

**371. Difficulties and Results of Reconstruction.**—The reconstructed governments which were in the hands of the negroes, assisted by their white friends, appealed to President Grant<sup>1</sup> for national troops to help them secure order. These were sent, but before 1877 the whites had gained control in all but three States, South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana. The presence of bayonets in aid of the reconstructed governments had greatly irritated the Southern whites, who had thus been prevented from getting complete political control.

**President Grant sends troops to the South to secure order.**

The North did not clearly understand the situation, and the South found it hard to yield to the changed conditions. There was a great effort made on each side to do the best thing under the circumstances, but the difficulties were unusually great. The Southern legislation of 1865, under Johnson's plan of restoration, showed the danger of leaving the freedmen without the protection which the suffrage would seem to give, while on the other hand the freedmen themselves were densely ignorant and utterly unfit to make an intelligent use of the ballot.

**The negro voter.**

The Southern whites often refused to let the negro cast his ballot, and in many cases refused to count it when it had been cast. But such a state of affairs is not likely to

<sup>1</sup> Ulysses S. Grant, eighteenth President of the United States (1869–1877), was born at Point Pleasant, Ohio, in 1822, and died at Mount McGregor, near Saratoga, New York, in 1885. He was the oldest of six children, and in his boyhood helped his father in the work of the farm. The name given him by his parents was Hiram Ulysses. On receiving his cadetship at West Point, however, he found that his name had been inserted in the official appointment as Ulysses S. Although Cadet Grant informed the authorities at West Point of the mistake, they did not rectify it. His name ever after remained Ulysses S. He was inaugurated as President March 4, 1869. At the close of his first term he was re-elected. After retiring from public life he made a tour of the globe, and received distinguished attention wherever he went.

continue. As the negro becomes intelligent he will doubtless be allowed to cast his vote as he pleases. Since he has the constitutional right to vote, the Northern and Southern people alike see the great necessity of educating him so that he may be qualified to exercise that right.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. What perplexing questions called for answers at the close of the war? It was a trying time for the new President. Can you tell what his peculiar political views were?
2. What steps did he take to restore the seceded States? What three votes were the State conventions required to pass before the seceded States could be restored to their places in the Union? Remember that these things were done between the time when Johnson became President (April 15, 1865) and the meeting of Congress in December of the same year.
3. Before this meeting, however, what laws were passed by Southern Legislatures, and with what effect? Why, then, did Congress refuse to admit representatives and senators from the seceded States?
4. What were the two essential features of the Congressional plan of reconstruction?
5. You will observe the increasing bitterness of the disagreement between Johnson and Congress. What was the Tenure of Office Act? Why did Congress impeach the President? Which do you think had the right attitude toward the Tenure of Office Act, the President or Congress? Give reasons for your answer.
6. What effect did the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments have upon the political condition of the negro? What kind of voter and law-maker did he make? What was the Ku-Klux Klan? Prepare to write five minutes on the difficulties and results of reconstruction.
7. Note the dates, 1865-1871, of this reconstruction period and bear in mind the fact that Andrew Johnson was President nearly four of these years. His administration was, in some ways, as critical as that of President Lincoln during the Civil War, 1861-1865. These two groups of dates are important enough for you to know them accurately.
8. Read the pages of McCulloch's Men and Measures of Half a Century that refer to the difficult problem of reconstruction.

THE ST. LOUIS BRIDGE IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION.

## CHAPTER XX

### THE NEW SOUTH (1877-1897)

**REFERENCES :** **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, V.; **Andrews's** United States, II.; **Andrews's** Last Quarter Century, I.; **Woodrow Wilson's** Division and Re-union; **Richardson's** History of Our Country.

**OUTSIDE READINGS:** **Grady's** New South; **Appleton's** Annual Cyclopædia; Cyclopædic Review of Current History; various magazine articles; the *World* and *Tribune* almanacs, each issued annually.

**372. President Hayes Withdraws the Troops from the South (1877).—**When Hayes<sup>1</sup> became President many of the problems of reconstruction remained still unsolved. He, nevertheless, withdrew the Federal troops from the South, leaving the Southern people to settle their difficulties alone. This was a wise measure, for as long as Federal bayonets were employed in the South, Southern men were kept in a state of irritation against the Federal government. The Republican governments in the South had been supported by Federal troops, but as soon as they were withdrawn the Democrats got control. The South was now "solid;" that is, the solid white<sup>2</sup> vote was in control, and was Democratic.

<sup>1</sup> Rutherford B. Hayes, nineteenth President of the United States (1877-1881), was born in Delaware, Ohio, in 1822, and died in Fremont, Ohio, 1893. After graduating from Kenyon College he studied law at Harvard University. Entering the Union army during the Civil War, his gallantry and meritorious service led to his promotion to the rank of brigadier-general. In 1865 he resigned his commission because he had been elected to represent his district in Congress. Three times he was elected governor of Ohio. His popularity in that great State had a large influence in securing his nomination by the Republicans for the Presidency.

<sup>2</sup> Only a small fraction of the whites joined the negroes in voting the Republican ticket.

**373. Eads and the Mississippi Jetties (1879).**—Hayes's administration was fortunate enough to accomplish a great engineering achievement of vast importance to the South. The Mississippi River brings down large quantities of mud which, in its natural course, it deposits when its current becomes slower on reaching the Gulf of Mexico. These deposits fill up the channel at the mouth of the river, thereby preventing the passage of heavy ships. Formerly these mud bars were a

The mud bars at the mouth of the Mississippi.

great hindrance to the shipping industry of this great seaport of the Southwest, and many millions were expended both by the United States Government and Louisiana for the removal of the bars and the deepening of the channel; but the work was not successful.

In 1874 Captain James B. Eads, an engineer who had built the magnificent steel bridge spanning the Mississippi River at St. Louis, proposed a different plan. He

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

had noticed that where the river was narrow and the current swift, the channel was also deep. He believed, therefore, that by narrowing the river at the mouth, a deeper, swifter current could be secured, which, by its natural force, would make and keep the channel free from obstructing deposits. Hence he proposed the "jetty system," which had been in use in Europe for more than a century.

Captain Eads proposes the "jetty system."

Captain Eads met with great opposition, but Congress finally allowed him (1875) to make a trial of his plan on one of the smaller mouths. In the contract time, four years, he succeeded in all he had planned to do, and made the channel deep enough to float the heaviest

Success of the plan.

steamships as far up the river as New Orleans. This was a gigantic undertaking, but its success has brought great increase of wealth both to New Orleans and the country at large.

**374. The New South.**—As the South became politically peaceful her industries took a new start. We have al-

**A SOUTH CAROLINA COTTON-FIELD.**

ready noted that before the war the Southern people believed that slavery was necessary for the cultivation of their staples, especially cotton. Statistics since the war show us how greatly they erred in this belief. The largest cotton crop under slavery was about four and a half million bales (1860); in 1890 it was nearly seven and a half million bales. The South furnishes

Cotton.

two-thirds of the world's supply of cotton. The United States exports annually, on an average, cotton valued at \$250,000,000, and supplies our own mills with half as much.<sup>1</sup> We must remember, too, that this is in spite of the fact that much labor has been turned in other directions.

The South is no longer exclusively devoted to agriculture (1897). There is scarcely an industry common to other parts of the country which has not been taken up

**Railroads.** there. Before the war there were very few railroads, the great network of rivers forming natural highways for trade, except in mountainous regions. But in the last twenty-five years railroads have spread in every direction, and hundreds of mills and factories have sprung up.

It is not too much to say that the South promises to become unsurpassed in the production of manufactured goods.

**Manufacturing.** Chattanooga (Tennessee), Birmingham (Alabama), and Anniston (Alabama), have flourishing iron and steel factories, rivalling those in the North. It has been predicted that that portion of southern Tennessee, northern Alabama, and Georgia, which includes these cities, may in time take the lead of the world in the production of iron and steel. Nashville is now an important manufacturing and commercial city, and has one of the largest iron foundries in the country, and several large cotton factories. Chattanooga has a tannery believed to be the largest in the world, and stands next to Chicago in its lumber trade. It has also steel factories. In these, colored workmen are almost exclusively employed, and they are very skilful. It is of great advantage to these Southern factories that their raw materials, cotton, iron, coal, and lumber, are close to the manufacturing centres.

<sup>1</sup> Our other exports of highest value in 1890 were as follows:

Wheat and flour.....	\$102,000,000
Pork products.....	85,000,000
Beef products .....	62,000,000
Maize.....	42,000,000
Total.....	<hr/> \$291,000,000

would have been impossible to develop the resources and increase the wealth of the country so rapidly.

But within the past ten or fifteen years the general character of the immigrants has not been so good as formerly, the average of intelligence and morals being much lower than it was before that time. The worst elements among them, including paupers and criminals, become a burden upon society and seriously tax the strength of our republican institutions.

**379. Influence of the Public Lands on our National Growth.**—The foundation for our extraordinary national growth and increase in population has been the vast area of the public lands. These have been sold for very small sums in order to get them into the hands of the people, who have speedily brought them under cultivation.

At first it was the policy of the government to sell these lands in order to increase the public revenue, but it was afterward thought wiser to use them for the purpose of developing the wealth and increasing the population of



the country. In 1841, by what is called the pre-emption<sup>1</sup> system, Congress began to sell farms on the public lands at the low price of \$1.25 an acre. This was upon condition that the purchaser would occupy and cultivate the land.

**The pre-emption system.**

Easy as these terms were, more liberal ones were desired. The growing sentiment in the West was that the land belonged to the people and that the United States should grant free homes on the public domain. Finally, after much debate, Congress passed, in 1862, the Homestead Bill, which is still in operation.

**The Homestead Bill.**

This enables settlers to secure farms of one hundred and sixty acres free of payment, except a small fee for legal expenses, on condition of settlement. This method has proved very successful in establishing homes and communities, thus increasing the value of the lands and the strength of the nation.

**380. Westward Expansion.**—American history has been largely the history of westward movement from the Atlantic to the Pacific. At the close of the Revolution (1783) the area of settlement was confined, for the most part, between the Alleghanies and the Atlantic. By 1825 it had reached the Mississippi; by 1850 the Missouri,<sup>2</sup> and by 1890 the Pacific coast.<sup>3</sup> We thus see that the westward movement was at first slow, requiring about one hundred and fifty years to reach the Alleghanies.

But after 1825 it was wonderfully rapid. This marvelous expansion was in a large measure due to the opening of the prairies, which were easily brought under cultivation because they were almost free from trees. In the forest-covered regions farther east from forty to fifty days' labor was required to clear an acre of land for

**The opening of the prairies.**

<sup>1</sup> Pre-emption gives the settler the first right of purchase as against the investor or speculator.

<sup>2</sup> The gold-mining region of California is not here taken into account.

<sup>3</sup> In 1889 North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington were admitted to the Union, in 1890 Idaho and Wyoming, and in 1896 Utah, making the number of States in the Union forty-five.

tillage, but only three or four days per acre were required in the prairie region. Moreover, the soil was rich and fertile, and needed little cultivation.

These great waves of migration had two important results: (1) They made labor scarce and, therefore, wages high in the East; (2) they led to an enormous increase in food products and, therefore, lowered the cost of food. Both of these conditions were of immense advantage to the workingmen, and they help us to

Results of west-  
ward migration.

#### SALT LAKE CITY.

realize how much the general welfare of the people has been increased by the settlement and cultivation of the western part of the country.

**381. The Mormons.**—Among the many settlers of the West was a peculiar people who wished to remove so far

from the rest of the world that they should never be disturbed. Their entire history is remarkable. In 1840 a small company of these people, under the leadership of a man named Joseph Smith, settled Nauvoo, Illinois. Smith pretended to have received, by revelation from God, the Book of Mormon, and upon its teachings he founded a religious sect. The Mormons, as they were called, did not consider themselves bound by the State laws, but responsible only to their leader and prophet. Their peculiarities made them very disagreeable to their neighbors, especially when they began the practice of polygamy. Indignation against them became intense and culminated in a riot, in which Smith was killed (1844).

Under their new prophet, Brigham Young, they soon after emigrated to the desert region of Salt Lake valley. There the Mormons prospered. With commendable industry and thrift they transformed the desert, by irrigation, into fertile land, and soon built Salt Lake City. Much credit is due to them for the rich cultivation under which they brought the surrounding land.<sup>1</sup>

**382. The Pacific Coast and Chinese Immigration.**—A less desirable increase of population came from the far East, at first in comparatively small numbers, but at length in such large bodies as to cause a general demand for repressive measures. These people were the Chinese. In 1888 the Chinese Exclusion Act was passed to prevent the further immigration into the United States of Chinese laborers. Although at that time not more than 100,000 Chinese were in the United States, 75,000 of whom were in California, the American people, especially those on the Pacific coast, were bitterly opposed to any further Chinese immigration. For this opposition there were several reasons. 1. The Chinese brought no families with them, because they did not intend to remain and become citizens; they showed little interest in American affairs and almost no inclination to adopt our

**Three reasons for opposition to Chinese immigration.**

<sup>1</sup> The Mormons acted together in State politics also.

customs. 2. As they lived more meanly than the whites, eating little but rice, they could work for lower wages, and in this way they greatly injured our laboring men. 3. It was feared that in time they might come over in such vast hordes as seriously to endanger our institutions. The Exclusion Act has not been effective, however, as it has been difficult to prevent the Chinese from coming across the border of Canada, where there is no law against their immigration.

**383. The Pacific Railroads Furnish the Short Northwest Passage to China, Japan, and the Indies.**—It is well to remember that the westward growth of population has depended much on easy, cheap, and rapid transportation, in which the railroad has played a most important part. The first trans-continental railroad, the Union and Central Pacific, was completed in 1869. It extended from Omaha, Nebraska, to San Francisco, California. Work had been progressing upon this road for six years, one party working east from San Francisco, the other west from Omaha. The parties met at Ogden, Utah. Since that time four other Pacific railroads have been built, so that there are now five great trunk lines connecting the Atlantic with the Pacific coast. The value of these Pacific railroads to the United States can hardly be estimated; for they have brought into service immense areas of land otherwise of trifling value. Without these roads and their network of branches running in all directions through the agricultural and mining regions of the West, the rapid settlements made in the last fifty years would have been impossible.

**The four Pacific railroads and Western settlement.**

At the close of the Revolution, Frederick of Prussia declared that no single republic could be held together in a territory so vast as that stretching from Maine to Georgia. He believed it would break into sections or give place to a monarchy. A like argument was made by a United States senator when the Oregon country came under discussion in 1843. This senator urged that such a far-off land could never become an integral part of the United States: that

it would require ten months out of every twelve for the representatives in Congress from a State so remote to go to and from Washington. But we can now go from Oregon to Washington in less time than John Adams could go from Boston to Philadelphia in the days of the Continental Congress. Steam and electricity, applied to the transportation of men and goods and the transmission of thought, enable us to maintain a republic over an area of vast extent. It is difficult to see how the North, the South, the East, and the West, with their widely differing interests, could be held together in one great Union without the railroad and the telegraph.

But the effects of the Pacific railroads on international trade, also, have been striking. Americans in the nineteenth century have found what Europeans so eagerly sought in the fifteenth, sixteenth, and seventeenth centuries—a short northwest passage to China, Japan, and the East Indies. Formerly, vessels with tea from China and spices from the East Indies sailed around Cape Horn and reached our eastern coast after a five or six months' voyage. Now cargoes of these products are brought to San Francisco and reshipped by rail to New York, the whole distance being covered in five or six weeks. The Pacific railroads have thus not only shortened the journey between Asia and the United States, but have reduced the cost of goods by diminishing freight charges.

**384. The Arid Region and the Problem of Irrigation.**—With the extension of facilities for transportation the rapidly increasing population of the country began to turn to the districts that yet remained unoccupied. Under the Homestead Law nearly all of the fertile land of the West, in regions of sufficient rainfall for agriculture, has been taken up by settlers.<sup>1</sup> But there is a great district which is barren until it is improved by irrigation. This arid and semi-arid region extends from the 100th meridian west-

<sup>1</sup> Areas of fertile land still open to settlement are found in the forest regions of northern Wisconsin and Minnesota, and in those west of the Cascade Mountains in Oregon and Washington.

ward to a belt of country lying within about two hundred miles from the Pacific coast. It includes the whole of Idaho, Wyoming, Nevada, Utah, Colorado, Arizona, and New Mexico, and parts of Washington, Oregon, California, Montana, North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas, and Texas. This vast region contains at least 1,000,000

#### AN IRRIGATED ORANGE GROVE IN THE WEST.

square miles, or an area equal to more than two hundred States like Connecticut. The soil is of great depth, and is exceedingly fertile when watered by irrigating canals and ditches.<sup>1</sup> Professor Shaler estimates that the area of this immense arid region which may be won to tillage by irrigation is probably not more than ten States like Connecticut.

<sup>1</sup> Irrigation has been successfully introduced in Utah, Colorado, California, Idaho, and Arizona.

**385. Forest Reservations.**—Under authority from Congress President Harrison withdrew from public sale 18,000,000 acres of forest-covered public lands. The movement in the direction of forest preservation is exceedingly important, because forests hold water in the ground and let it drain off gradually. They thus influence the volume of water in rivers, and therefore greatly aid irrigation.

### TO THE PUPIL

1. Why did our government, from the first, sell the public lands at very low prices? What was the Homestead Bill?
2. Trace on your map the advance of Western settlement and note the marvellous expansion due to the opening of the prairies.
3. What objections have been urged against Chinese immigration? What do you think of these objections? What influence has the building of the Pacific railroads had upon trade with China, Japan, and the Indies? upon Western settlement? In this connection review the pack-horse, the flat-boat, the steamboat, the national road, and the Erie Canal.
4. Trace on your map the arid region and show what connection irrigation has with it. How many States like your own could be included in this region?

## CHAPTER XXII

### THE NEW UNION (1865-1897)

**REFERENCES:** **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, V.; **Andrews's** United States, II.; **Andrews's** Last Quarter Century, I. and II.; **Woodrow Wilson's** Division and Re-union; **Richardson's** History of Our Country.

**OUTSIDE READINGS:** **Appleton's** Annual Cyclopædia; Cyclopædic Review of Current History; **Field's** Story of the Atlantic Telegraph; **Elliott's** Our Arctic Province; **McCulloch's** Men and Measures of Half a Century; **Bourke's** On the Border with Crook; **Walker's** Indian Question; **Blaine's** Twenty Years in Congress; **Stanwood's** History of Presidential Elections; various magazine articles; the *World* and *Tribune* almanacs, each issued annually.

**386. The Atlantic Cable (1866).**—We have considered, in some detail, the development of the South and of the West. We have now to glance rapidly at some matters that concern the nation as a whole. One of the most important facts in the history of the country since the close of the Civil War is the invention that has made possible the instant transmission of thought to the most distant parts of the world. In 1858, after several unsuccessful efforts, the two continents were connected by a wire cable extending from Newfoundland to Ireland. Two ships, each containing a section of the cable, met in mid-ocean and, having spliced the sections, returned, the one toward Newfoundland and the other toward Ireland, laying the cable as they went. The two ships reached land on the same day, and very soon afterward (August 16) the Queen of England sent to the President of the United States this message: "Glory to God in the highest, peace on earth, and good-will to men." But within

The wire cable of 1858 is not successful.



a month the cable failed to work, and not until 1866 did ocean cabling become permanently successful.

Since that time communication between Europe and America has not been interrupted, and now ten lines cross the Northern Atlantic. The cable has largely affected commerce, because the market prices in the great trade centres of America and Europe are reported every day, and large business transactions can easily

Results of the  
Atlantic cable.

the Northern Atlantic. The cable has largely affected commerce, because the market prices in the great trade centres of America and Europe are reported every day, and large business transactions can easily

#### THE GREAT EASTERN LAYING THE ATLANTIC CABLE.

be made in a few hours between American and European business houses. It has also brought the various parts of the civilized world into closer and more sympathetic relations, because the news of what is going on is so readily sent across the ocean. Our daily papers easily report European events a few hours after they have occurred.

**387. The Purchase of Alaska (1867).**—In 1867 our government gave to Russia \$7,200,000 for Alaska, an immense territory equal in area to about one hundred and twenty States like Connecticut. The purchase was then thought by many to be an extravagant waste of the public money,

because Alaska appeared to be almost worthless. But the investment has proved to be a good one, the seal-fur trade alone being worth \$2,500,000 a year. Alaska furnishes beautiful white marble, and has mines of coal, iron, and gold of great value.

Natural resources of Alaska.

Along many of the streams are found rich forests, consisting mainly of pine and cedar. The fisheries, which include salmon in the rivers and cod and halibut on the coast, are extensive. Besides all these natural resources Alaska has a coast well supplied with good harbors. By consulting the table below it will be seen that the entire area of the United States is now about 3,600,000 square miles, or nearly the size of all Europe.<sup>1</sup>

**388. Grant's Indian Peace Policy (1869).**—The Indians had always been more or less troublesome on the frontier, and during the Civil War the Sioux had committed shocking outrages in Minnesota. Half of the expenses of our War Department, exclusive of those incurred by the Civil War, had been occasioned by Indian wars, and yet the Indians were not subdued. The war policy had failed, and therefore President Grant wisely adopted a peace policy. He had observed that the Cherokees<sup>2</sup> had developed by themselves a good degree of civilization, and he believed that by kind treatment and education the more barbarous tribes might be trained into good citizenship. He therefore entrusted the management of a few reservations to the Society of Friends, with whom the Indians had always held peaceful relations. No Indian agent was to be

Failure of the war policy.

	Square Miles.
<sup>1</sup> United States, in 1783 .....	827,844
Louisiana, 1803 .....	1,171,931
Florida, 1819 .....	59,268
Texas, 1845 .....	376,133
Mexican cession, 1848. ....	545,783
Gadsden purchase, 1853 .....	45,535
Alaska, 1867.....	577,390
Total in 1897.....	3,603,884

<sup>2</sup> The five civilized tribes were the Cherokees, Chickasaws, Choctaws, Creeks, and Seminoles. They all lived on reservations in the Indian Territory.

appointed for these reservations without the approval of both the President and the Society. The system gradually extended to other reservations and to other religious denominations, with some success.

The Indian could not immediately appreciate this new policy, however, and within a few years the Modocs (1872)

#### MODERN INDIAN TENTS.

and the Sioux (1876) both made outbreaks, which made necessary the calling out of United States troops. There is no doubt that the Indian had grievances. He could not understand why the Great Father in Washington should allow the white man to invade his reservations, as the white man did when he saw in them fertile soil and unworked gold-mines. But a more crying evil was the dishonesty of Indian contractors, who were making money by cheating both the government and the Indians, and were ready to oppose any plan likely to interfere with their schemes.

The government method of reservation was by treaty

with the various tribes, the government agreeing to give yearly, for land yielded by the Indians, a quantity of food, ammunition, and other supplies. The food-supplies were to compensate for the loss of hunting-grounds, because hunting was the Indians' only means of support. Ammunition was to help them in securing such game as their reservations supplied. The government made liberal promises for the comfort, education, and civilization of these Indians.

**The Indian reservation.**

The reservation system was, however, not successful, because under it the Indians were placed by themselves, out of contact with the civilizing influence of the whites. Moreover, it was impossible for them to develop a spirit of manly independence when so much was done for them. The reservation plan made the Indian a pauper.

**Why the reservation system failed.**

The "Dawes Act," passed in 1887, provided for individual ownership of land by the Indians. In the course of time it is hoped that the individual Indian, like the white man, will have his own farm and reap the fruits of his own toil. Individual ownership, along with industrial training and general education, will aid in making him a useful citizen.

**The Dawes Act.**

**389. The Financial Panic of 1873.**—The Indian problem, serious as it was, affected a comparatively small part of the population. Far different was the trouble that attended the financial crash of the year 1873. This panic was much like the panics of 1837 and 1857. It was preceded by a period of general prosperity, and was brought on by rash speculations in Western railroads. For five years railroad building had been going on to such an extent that the railroad mileage in the United States had increased one-half.<sup>1</sup> This excessive railroad building, which was in the West, increased more rap-

**Speculation in railroad-building and Western lands.**

<sup>1</sup> In 1861, only 651 miles of railroad were built ; in 1871, 7,779 miles were built. The Northern Pacific, extending from Duluth to Puget Sound, was the most important of these roads. During the five years preceding the panic, about \$1,700,000,000 were spent in railroad building.

idly than it could receive support from the population. Fortunes were made by some and lost by others in buying up tracts of lands in unsettled regions and increasing the value of that land by extending railroads through them.

#### OPENING DAY AT THE PHILADELPHIA CENTENNIAL

The speculative fever became so high that railroads were built much faster than they were needed.

As in 1857, the failure of a single great banking-house suddenly brought this panic upon the country. Financial ruin fell upon business firms and individuals, and want and suffering came into thousands of homes. It was six years before the country fully recovered.

**390. Railroad Strikes (1877).**—During the years of financial distress following the panic of 1873, the earnings of the

railroads were much reduced. In 1877 some of the railroads in the Middle and Western States lowered the wages of their men. Brakemen and other trainmen on the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad and on the Pennsylvania Railroad refused

PROFESSOR BELL SENDING THE FIRST MESSAGE BETWEEN NEW YORK AND CHICAGO.

to work. Then men on other roads followed their example. Soon there were bloody riots at Baltimore and Pittsburg, and large mobs in Chicago, St. Louis, and other cities. In Pittsburg a mob of 20,000 men had control of the city for two days, one hundred lives being lost. The State militia and the United States troops united to stop violence,

but it continued about two weeks. During that time 100,000 men took part in the strike, which resulted in the destruction of ten million dollars' worth of property.

**391. The Centennial Exhibition (1876).**—But during these years of financial depression and industrial discontent the country gave striking evidence of its vast resources by holding the Centennial Exhibition of 1876 in honor of the hundredth anniversary of the founding of the nation. The place chosen was Philadelphia, the city in which the Declaration of Independence was given to the world. More than two hundred buildings, some of them of immense size, were constructed for this exhibition, and Fairmount Park, with two hundred and eighty-five acres, was devoted to it. Thirty-three foreign countries participated, representing the arts and industries of the whole world.

The Centennial Exhibition taught the people many things. It showed them the wonderful results that had been brought about by machinery and invention in all countries. It quickened their sympathies and turned their attention toward art. But education, especially, received such an impetus, that the good results have steadily increased. The Centennial Exhibition also revealed to America, as well as to the rest of the world, the richness and the variety of our natural productions and the superiority of this country over all others in useful inventions. Two of the most wonderful of these were the telephone<sup>1</sup> and the application of electricity to lighting purposes.

Among those who have done much toward making electricity useful to man is Thomas A. Edison, sometimes called "the Wizard of Menlo Park."<sup>2</sup> One of the most remarkable results of his patient and untiring industry is the phonograph, invented by him in 1877.

<sup>1</sup> The inventor of the telephone, which came at once into practical use, was Alexander Graham Bell, of Massachusetts. The American Bell Telephone Company was soon incorporated and lines rapidly multiplied. In 1896 there were 459,728 miles. The company received in rentals in 1895 nearly \$3,000,000

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Edison lives at Menlo Park, New Jersey.

EDISON DICTATING TO HIS PHONOGRAPH.





**392. The Electoral Commission and the Presidency (1877).**—In the Presidential election of 1876 there were disputes about the election returns made in South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana.<sup>1</sup> Hayes, the Republican candidate, needed all the electoral votes from these States to secure his election, while Tilden, the Democratic candidate, needed for his election only one of these votes. Florida and Louisiana had given Democratic majorities, but the "returning boards," who received the election returns as they came in from various parts of the State, were Republican, and threw out enough votes, on the charge of intimidation, to make a Republican majority. The people were much disturbed, and feared there might be serious results.

A close election.

The excitement increased as the time drew near for the new President to be inaugurated. The Senate being Republican and the House Democratic they could not unite upon any plan of seating either of the rival candidates. Fi-

SAMUEL J. TILDEN.

nally a bill passed both Houses providing that a "Joint High Commission" should be appointed, whose decision should be final. The commission included five senators, five representatives, and five justices of the Supreme Court. The fifth justice was appointed by the other four named in the bill. Before the fifth justice was appointed, seven of the commission were Republicans and seven were Democrats. It was expected that the fifth justice would be an independent, but circumstances caused a Republican to be selected, thus giving the Republicans a majority of one on the commission.

The "Joint High Commission."

On March 2, just two days before the time set by the Constitution for inauguration, the decision in favor of

<sup>1</sup> There was some dispute about the election in Oregon also.

Hayes was published. Opinions were divided as to the correctness of the returns, but whichever candidate was elected, the decision of the uncertain question was final. The people throughout the land, Democrats and Republicans alike, had shown remarkable wisdom and self-control during all the months of the trying situation.<sup>1</sup>

**393. Resumption of Specie Payment (1879).**—The financial disturbance of 1873 and subsequent years was partly caused by the instability of the currency and the undue encouragement thereby given to speculation. Nobody knew exactly how much a dollar was worth or how much it was likely to be worth. This condition was unavoidable during the Civil War, but it was intolerable in a time of peace. During the Civil War so much money was needed to carry on the extensive military operations that the government and the banks could not furnish gold and silver enough for the unusual demands. Congress, therefore, like the Continental Congress of the Revolution, issued millions of dollars of paper currency, which the people used instead of gold and silver. These paper notes were called greenbacks. As they were “legal tender”—that is, the law declared that they might be used in paying debts—everybody was willing to make free use of them. Gold, however, remained the standard of value, and the value of the greenbacks depended upon the defeats and victories on the battle-field. When the Northern armies won a great victory the greenbacks rose in value; when they met with a severe defeat, the greenbacks fell in value. While the war was most threatening they were worth, in gold, little more than one-third of their face value, because the prospect of Northern success was very gloomy.

<sup>1</sup> To provide for possible contested elections in the future the Electoral Count Bill was passed in 1887. This measure threw the responsibility of Presidential elections upon the States, and provided that electoral certificates sent to the national capital by the various States should be opened by the president of the Senate in the presence of both Houses, and that four tellers, two from each House, should read aloud and make record of the votes.

After the war, when the government began to pay the national debt rapidly, people began to have more and more confidence in these paper promises issued by Congress, and the greenbacks steadily rose in value. In 1879 the Secretary of the Treasury announced that he would give gold for paper currency if it were presented at the Treasury. This action of the Secretary of the Treasury meant the resumption of specie payment by the government, and from that time on a paper dollar was worth as much as a gold dollar.

Greenbacks become as good as gold.

**394. Assassination of President Garfield<sup>1</sup> (1881); Civil Service Reform (1883-1896).**—When this important question of the currency was settled, the new administration of Garfield, who was elected in 1880, seemed to be opening a new era of prosperity. But only a few months after his inauguration the country was shocked by the announcement of his assassination (July 2, 1881). The assassin being a disappointed office-seeker, the tragedy brought forcibly to the minds of

JAMES A. GARFIELD.

<sup>1</sup> James A. Garfield, twentieth President of the United States, was born at Orange, Ohio, in 1831, and died September 19, 1881, from a wound inflicted by a disappointed office-seeker. In early childhood Garfield's path was beset with difficulties. He was but two years of age when his father died, and his home, in a lonely log-cabin of the backwoods, was one of poverty and hardship. But the boy cheerfully helped his mother in supporting the family. After graduating from Williams College he was for a time a college professor, and afterward studied law. Owing to his gallantry and daring on the battle-field in the Civil War he was promoted to the rank of major-general. His term of service in Congress (1863-1880) was so successful that he was elected to the Senate of the United States in 1880. Before taking his seat, however, he was nominated by the Republicans for the Presidency. He was the second President who was assassinated and the fourth who died in office.

the people the great need of civil service reform. President Jackson had introduced the spoils system into the civil service in order to reward his political friends.

Appointments were not made by reason of fitness for the work, but were distributed as rewards for political services.

In 1883 an act was passed by Congress authorizing the President to appoint civil ser-

**Reform in the**      **vice examiners,**  
**civil service.**      **who should test,**

by fair examinations, without regard to party, the fitness of applicants for office. From the list of those passing the civil service examinations appointments and promotions were to be made. During President

CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

Arthur's administration<sup>1</sup> (1881-1885), nearly 16,000 Federal office-holders were under civil service rules; in President Cleveland's first administration (1885-1889) the number was increased to 27,000; in President Harrison's administration (1889-1893) it was still further increased to 43,000; and President Cleveland,<sup>2</sup> in his second term (1893-1897)

<sup>1</sup> Chester A. Arthur, twenty-first President of the United States (1881-1885), was born in Fairfield, Vermont, in 1830, and died in 1886. After graduating from Union College he studied law and became a successful lawyer. In 1871 President Grant appointed him Collector of the Port of New York. Having been elected Vice-President by the Republicans in 1880 he succeeded to the Presidency on the death of Garfield. He was the fourth Vice-President who thus became the executive head of the nation.

<sup>2</sup> Grover Cleveland, twenty-second and twenty-fourth President of the United States (1885-1889 and 1893-1897), was born in Caldwell, New Jersey, in 1837. In his early childhood the family removed to New York State. Later, he became a lawyer and took high rank in his profession. After filling the offices of assistant district attorney and sheriff of the county he was elected Mayor of Buffalo. In this position he so fearlessly used his veto power that he was called the "veto mayor."

made the number reach about 85,000. As a result all Federal officers are now under civil service reform rules, except two classes: (1) The higher officers, including the heads of departments, and (2) postmasters in fourth-class offices.<sup>1</sup>

Rapid growth of  
the reform.

These 85,000 positions are from this time on to be filled by those who have successfully passed the civil service examinations without any reference to changes in Presidential administrations. The spoils system in the Federal civil service is now largely a thing of the past. Experience, training, ability—in a word, personal fitness to perform the duties of the office—will henceforth be demanded in our civil service.

**395. The Brooklyn Bridge (1883).**—In the same year that Congress passed the act for civil service reform, another great work affecting the public good was accomplished. This was the completion of the Suspension Bridge spanning East River and connecting Brook-

GROVER CLEVELAND.

lyn with New York. The bridge had been sixteen years in building, and cost \$16,000,000. It is more than a mile long, its centre being supported by four main cables made of steel wire nearly 16 inches in diameter, and is 85 feet wide. There

His success as mayor led to his nomination by the Democrats, in 1882, for governor of the State of New York, to which office he was elected by an overwhelming majority. Owing to his popularity in New York the Democrats nominated him for the Presidency in 1884. James G. Blaine was nominated by the Republicans. The political campaign was exciting, and resulted in Cleveland's election. At the close of his first term he was defeated by Benjamin Harrison, but in 1892 he in turn defeated President Harrison and became President for a second term.

<sup>1</sup> Of those not yet classified over 66,000 are postmasters of the fourth class. These include postmasters receiving salaries of \$1,000 or less a year.

are five passage-ways—two for cable-cars, two for drive-ways, and a middle one for foot-passengers. In design and construction it is one of the most stupendous works of engineering which the age has known.

**396. Presidential Succession Act (1886).**—A great nation like this should not be left for a single day without a

#### THE BROOKLYN BRIDGE.

**President.** Congress had already passed a law that in case of the death or disability of both President and Vice-President, the temporary president of the Senate and, following him, the Speaker of the House, should become President. But in case either of the last named should be of the opposite party, their succession would not represent the choice of the people, and the plan was therefore not considered satisfactory. In 1886 an act was passed providing that in case of the death or disability of both the President and Vice-President, members of the Cabinet should, one after another, be made Acting President as long as the disability

existed, or until the next election of a President by the people. The duty would fall first upon the Secretary of State, and then upon the other members of the Cabinet in the order of establishment of the various departments.<sup>1</sup> Such members as might in any way be disqualified would be passed over. There is scarcely an emergency now in which the country could be left without a President.<sup>2</sup>

**397. Knights of Labor.**—We have already noted (see par. 390) the great railroad strike of 1877. Within ten years there were many similar troubles between workingmen and their employers. In order to strengthen themselves for a struggle with employers the workingmen formed large organizations, one of which, the Knights of Labor, contained many thousand members and exerted a large influence all over the country. The members of the organization, calling themselves union-men, would suddenly quit work, or strike, when they wished to force their employers to grant them higher wages or shorter hours. The employers, in turn, united against the work- **Blacklists and**  
ingmen by making out "black lists," contain- **boycotting.**  
ing the names of the more influential union men, whom the employers would, from that time forward, refuse to employ. The workingmen sometimes resorted to "boycotting," which was refusing to have any business relations with the man they wished to injure, either by using any goods he had manufactured or by handling them even for transportation. In most cases both parties gained little by their unfortunate attempts to injure each other.

**398. Strikes and the Chicago Anarchists (1886).**—In 1886 labor troubles became very serious in this country.

<sup>1</sup> The order in which the various Cabinet positions were created was: (1) Secretary of State, 1789; (2) Secretary of the Treasury, 1789; (3) Secretary of War, 1789; (4) Attorney-General, 1789; (5) Postmaster-General, 1789; (6) Secretary of the Navy, 1798; (7) Secretary of the Interior, 1849; (8) Secretary of Agriculture, 1889.

<sup>2</sup> President Garfield died in September, nearly three months before Congress assembled, and during the intervening period President Arthur was critically ill. Had he died at that time there might have been some confusion in the administration of the government.



Many thousand workingmen stopped work and demanded that eight hours should constitute a working-day. In Chicago alone not far from 40,000 men joined in a strike and engaged in serious rioting, in which some lives were lost. To put down the rioting the police charged upon the mob and were met with a dynamite bomb that exploded, killing seven policemen and wounding many others. The police fired upon the mob, scattered it, and arrested the leaders. Four of these were hanged and two put in prison for life. These six leaders, with one exception, were foreigners, and called themselves anarchists. The violent rioting, and especially the bomb-throwing, were bitterly condemned by working-men throughout the United States.

**399. The Statue of Liberty (1886).**—In pleasing contrast with these serious labor troubles was an international event that took place in New York City in 1886. This was the unveiling of the enormous statue of "Liberty Enlightening the World," which was given by Frenchmen to the people of the United States as an expression of friendly feeling toward our country. The statue cost more than \$200,000 and was paid for by 100,000 Frenchmen. It was placed on Bedloe's Island—now called Liberty Island—in New York Bay. The height of the statue is 151 feet and of the pedestal 155 feet.

**400. Oklahoma Opened to Settlement (1889).**—The rapid growth of population westward began at last to press upon the Indian reservation. That part of Indian Territory called Oklahoma was a large and fertile stretch of country especially coveted by white settlers. The United States therefore finally purchased it from the Indians in 1889, and President Harrison, by proclamation, declared it open to settlement. By nightfall of the day of occupation (April 22, 1889) several thousand persons had staked out their claims in Guthrie and had taken steps to form a city government. Before the year came to a close the territory had nearly or quite 60,000 people, 8,000 of whom were in Guthrie and 5,000 in Oklahoma City. The estimated population of Oklahoma, Janu-

**Rapid growth of Oklahoma.**

ary 1, 1897, was about 276,000. At no distant day it will doubtless seek admission into the Union as a State.

**401. Pension Bill (1890).—**In 1890 Congress passed a Pension Bill which was very liberal to the soldiers and sail-

THE STATUE OF LIBERTY IN NEW YORK HARBOR.

ors injured in defending the Union during the Civil War. In accordance with this measure the government paid in pensions, to the close of 1896, about \$136,000,000 a year, on an average. This sum will be diminished gradually as our veterans pass away. No other nation has ever before been so liberal to its soldiers and sailors, nor has any other nation, with the possible exception of Germany, ever had in

its service an army and navy ranking so high in intelligence and fighting ability. Well may we be proud of American manhood as it was seen on the battle-fields of this war.

**402. The Pan-American Congress (1889-1890).—**The attention of the people of this country during the past generation has naturally been given, for the most part, to questions of internal polity and development. But questions of wider import have now and then been brought to the front. The relations of this country to the countries of South America present a still unsettled problem. More than one American statesman has cherished the hope of bringing about closer relations and more friendly feelings between the United States and the leading independent countries of North and South America. Hence our government invited these countries to send representatives to a congress to meet at Washington.

The invitation was accepted, and the Pan-American Congress was held in the autumn of 1889. Seventeen countries were represented by sixty-six members. Questions concerning closer business relations and better means of

**What the Pan-American Congress did.**

communication between the various countries represented in the Congress were discussed. But by far the most important work of the Pan-American Congress was its recommendation that the republics of North, Central, and South America should settle by arbitration all disputes and difficulties that might arise among them.

**403. Trouble with Italy (1890) and with Chili (1891).—**The desirability of a system of arbitration with foreign

**Assassination of the New Orleans Chief of Police.**

countries was made suddenly and painfully evident. In 1890, on the failure of the jury to convict some Italians on trial for assassinating

the New Orleans Chief of Police, a party of lynchers, indignant at this failure of justice, broke into the jail and

**Three Italian citizens lynched.**

put to death eleven Italian prisoners. As three of these men were Italian citizens there was serious trouble with Italy over the lynching; but through our able Secretary of State, James G. Blaine, a

satisfactory settlement was reached when our government agreed to pay \$25,000 to the families of the murdered men.

Equally unexpected and unwelcome was the complication with Chili. In 1891, a mob attacked<sup>1</sup> in the streets of Valparaiso some sailors from the American warship *Baltimore*, killing two of them, and wounding eighteen others. When the United States demanded satisfaction, Chili disavowed the act, and agreed to pay damages to our government.

**404. Our New Navy (1883-1899).**—These various difficulties with foreign nations showed the need of a more powerful navy. During the twenty years succeeding the Civil War nothing was done to build up or maintain our navy. The ships that had served during the war had either been disposed of or had gradually become useless through age. Such a navy could afford but small protection to our commerce and extensive sea-coast, and was unworthy of a great nation like the United States.

**Need of a new navy.**

Finally, people began to realize its worthlessness and took measures to improve its condition. Accordingly in 1883, Congress authorized the building of four steel cruisers. This was a beginning. Since that time other cruisers of great strength and speed, and battle-ships of immense power, have been brought into use. The cruisers are for the protection of our commerce and the destruction of the enemy's commerce in case of war.

**The strength of our navy.**

**405. The Australian Ballot System Introduced into Most of the States (1888-1892).**—By the year 1888 public opinion demanded a sweeping reform in the methods of voting at State and national elections. Votes were so easily bought and sold that the results of the election, in some cases, seemed to de-

**Demoralizing effect of buying votes.**

<sup>1</sup> A revolution having broken out in Chili, our Minister there took sides with the Chilean president. Moreover, a Chilean cruiser had been seized in a port of California because she was thought to be on the point of sailing with a supply of arms for the revolutionists. Hence the anger of the Chilean mob.

pend, in a large measure, upon the amount of money spent in buying votes. This was a serious menace to our institutions and was highly demoralizing. The feeling of the people against this corruption of American manhood soon expressed itself in an emphatic way. State after State passed ballot-reform laws, the purpose of which was to lessen vote-buying and to give voters a better opportunity to cast a secret ballot. These laws provided for a method of voting called the Australian ballot system. By this plan every

voter could shut himself in a stall and there prepare and fold his ballot, so that no one could know how he voted or interfere in any way with his choice. By 1892 thirty-seven of the States had, with the aid of both of the great political parties, passed such ballot-reform laws.

**406. The Bering Sea Trouble Settled by Arbitration (1886-1893).**—This movement, important as it was, aroused no great attention

JAMES G. BLAINE.

abroad. But an international question that had remained long unsettled threatened for a time to embroil us with Great Britain. After the purchase of Alaska (1867) the United States claimed entire control of the seal-fisheries in Bering Sea. England insisted that the jurisdiction of our government could not extend beyond three miles from the shore, and she therefore encouraged Canadian sailors in seal-catching outside the three-mile limit.

England and the United States disagree.

So great had become the destruction of seals that their extermination seemed only a matter of a few years. In 1886, when our cruisers seized Canadian vessels and confiscated all their cargoes of seal-furs, the dispute between the United States and England became serious.

After a warm diplomatic correspondence the matter was referred to a tribunal of arbitration, which decided (1893) that the United States had no right to control the seal-fisheries beyond the three-mile limit. But in making careful provision for the protection of the seals, the decision was satisfactory to the United States, whose main purpose was to prevent the destruction of the seals. The settlement of this dispute without an appeal to arms was, like the settlement of the Alabama Claims (1871), another triumph for arbitration. It seems very fitting that the two great English-speaking countries should adjust the most serious troubles without war.

The decision.

**407. The United States and the Hawaiian Revolution (1893-1894).**—In 1893 a revolution broke out in Hawaii.

The revolutionists at once appointed a committee of safety which organized a provisional government and sent commissioners to Washington to secure a treaty of annexation. The treaty was arranged and sent by President Harrison<sup>1</sup> to the Senate for confirmation. But before the Senate could act upon it President Harrison's term of office had expired (March 3). Five days after taking his seat, President Cleveland withdrew the treaty from the Senate and sent to Hawaii a minister who recommended that the queen be restored to her throne. Congress however refused to take any action.

BENJAMIN HARRISON.

<sup>1</sup> Benjamin Harrison, twenty-third President of the United States (1889-1893), was born in North Bend, Ohio, in 1833. After graduating from Miami University, he studied law in Cincinnati, removed two years later to Indianapolis, and soon won much success in his chosen profession. In 1862 he entered the Union army as a lieutenant, and a little later, having organized a company of an Indiana regiment, received the commission of colonel of the regiment. He remained in the army

**408. The World's Columbian Exposition (1893).—**Our history opened with the discovery of America by Columbus in 1492. We have now to chronicle the celebration of that event by the holding in Chicago of the great Columbian Exposition, four hundred years later. This exhibition surpassed all previous international exhibitions, being regarded as one of the marvels of the world. The location on the lake front was most fortunate and the buildings were wonderful in their grandeur and beauty. The dedication exercises were held October 21, 1892, and the fair was formally opened in May, 1893. From the date of opening until the close of the exposition in October there were over twenty-seven million admissions. Foreigners were greatly impressed by the evidence of the growth of our people in higher than industrial lines; and Americans were made to feel proud of the intellectual and artistic advance of their country. As an exhibition of superb architecture, science, archæology, etc., the Columbian Exposition was a training-school for the people.

**409. Financial Panic of 1893.—**While the country was still celebrating the great achievement of Columbus, there came, almost without warning to ordinary observers, one of the worst financial panics the United States has ever passed through. It was called the panic of 1893. There were business failures and financial distress everywhere. As great manufacturing establishments could not sell their goods, many of them shut down their factories altogether or ran them on shorter hours. Soon there were hundreds of thousands of workingmen out of work, with suffering and want in their families. President Cleveland, believing that silver legislation was one of the principal causes of the panic, summoned Congress to repeal the Sherman Act, which it did (November, 1893) after a long and bitter struggle.

**410. Silver Legislation (1873-1893).—**By 1873 the silver dollar, having become worth more than the gold dollar, had

throughout the war and rose to the rank of brigadier-general. He became a United States Senator in 1881, and ably represented the State of Indiana. He was elected President in 1888.

practically passed out of circulation. Very little silver had been coined in the United States since 1834, and for more than twenty years the yield from newly discovered gold mines had been so abundant that it was generally supposed, both here and abroad, that the supply of gold would be sufficient to provide all the specie the world needed. Congress therefore passed a coinage act (1873) which demonetized silver by declaring that it should no longer be a legal tender for debts.

**Silver demonetized in 1873.**

But many people desired to have more gold and silver money in circulation. Accordingly, in 1878, the Bland Silver Bill was passed, which not only made silver a legal tender for debts, but also directed that the mints should coin not less than two, nor more than four, million silver dollars a month. In spite of this extensive purchase of silver by the government, however, there was a demand for a still larger purchase.

**The Bland Silver Bill.**

Congress, therefore, passed the Sherman Act (1890), which modified the Bland Bill by providing that the Secretary of the Treasury should purchase not less than \$4,000,000 worth of silver bullion each month and pay for it by issuing Treasury notes which were a legal tender for all debts, and redeemable in gold or silver coin at the discretion of the Secretary of the Treasury. The purchase of silver was therefore increased, but its coinage was no longer compulsory.

**The Sherman Act.**

**411. The Tariff Question.**—During the Civil War duties on foreign goods were raised repeatedly for increased revenue to meet the enormous expenses of maintaining the army and navy. After the war no change worthy of mention was made for about twenty-five years. During Mr. Cleveland's first administration (1885–1889) it was found that the internal revenue on tobacco and spirituous liquors, and the duties on foreign goods, piled up in the national treasury \$100,000,000 every year, after all the expenses of the government were paid. President Cleveland therefore recommended such a reduction in the tariff as would make

**\$100,000,000 piled up in the Treasury every year.**



the revenue and the expenses more nearly equal. The Mills Bill, representing the policy of the President, was passed in the House but failed in the Senate.

In the election of a President and a Congress in 1888 the tariff had been the main issue between the two great parties, the Democrats and the Republicans. The Democrats demanded a tariff for revenue only, and the Republicans a high tariff for the protection of American manufactures. The Republicans were successful, not only in electing the President, Benjamin Harrison, but in getting control of both Houses of Congress. The outcome was the passage of the McKinley Bill in the interests of a high tariff to protect and stimulate American manufactures.

In the Presidential election of 1892 the tariff plank was the principal difference between the platforms of the Republicans and the Democrats. As in 1888, the Republican policy was a high protective tariff, while the Democratic policy was a tariff for revenue only. The campaign was free from bitterness and personalities, as the people believed in the honesty and ability of the two candidates—Mr. Harrison and Mr. Cleveland—each of whom had already served the country well in the office of chief executive. This time the Democrats were successful, electing the President and an overwhelming majority in the House of Representatives. As soon, therefore, as they came into

office they set about a revision of the tariff by passing the Wilson Bill, which, as it came from the House, provided for a large reduction of duties and placed upon the free list many of the raw materials used by manufacturers. In the interests of various regions of the country the Senate insisted upon making such marked changes in the bill that it was practically a new measure. Becoming a law (1894) in this revised form it differed from the McKinley Bill mainly in the degree of protection it called for.<sup>1</sup> In other words, the Wilson Bill stood for a

<sup>1</sup> As an amendment to the Wilson Bill an Income Tax of two per cent. on all incomes of more than \$4,000 a year was proposed, but the Supreme Court decided by a vote of five to four that such a national tax was unconstitutional.

moderately low protective tariff; the McKinley Bill for a high protective tariff.

**412. The Pullman Boycott and the Great Railroad Strike (1894).**—The financial depression of 1893 caused such a decrease in travel that there was little demand for the sleeping-cars furnished to numerous railroads by the Pullman Car Company, located at Pullman, Illinois, near Chicago. Its income being greatly lessened the Pullman Company decided upon a reduction of wages. When, on receiving notice of this reduction, 3,000 of the workmen went out on a strike, the company shut down its works.

The outcome was a strike which soon spread to twenty-two railroads running out of Chicago. Business in Chicago was prostrate, and travel became dangerous. The usual large supplies of meat and provisions going out to various parts of the country from that city were cut off and a meat famine

RICHARD OLNEY.

was threatened. Various kinds of trade and industry throughout the land were thrown into confusion. To aid the local authorities in putting an end to the disorder in Chicago, 2,000 United States troops and 4,000 state militia were sent there. During the strike, the worst of which was over at the end of three weeks, the money losses to workingmen, railroads, and the United States Government were not less than \$7,000,000.

**413. The Anglo-Venezuelan Difficulty and the Monroe Doctrine (1895-1897).**—For a long time there had been a dispute between Venezuela and England about the boundary line separating Venezuela from British Guiana. By 1895, the dispute had become serious, and our government tried—as it had for years been trying—to induce England

to submit the whole question to arbitration. The English Government declared, however, that England and Venezuela could settle their own disputes, without aid or interference from the United States. Our government answered that if, in this controversy, England insisted upon enforcing her claims to territory not shown to be rightfully her own, she was violating the Monroe Doctrine. In the high-spirited diplomatic correspondence between the two governments, our Secretary of State, Richard Olney, argued the American side with great vigor and ability. There was, for a short time, talk of war; but this war feeling quickly subsided, and England and Venezuela agreed to settle their boundary dispute by arbitration. A most fortunate outcome of the Anglo-Venezuelan dispute, was a growing feeling on the part of a large number of people in both the United States and England in favor of the settlement of difficulties between the two countries by arbitration.

**414. The Presidential Campaign of 1896.**—Scarcely had the excitement over the

WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

Anglo-Venezuelan difficulty passed when the United States entered upon an experience which can never be forgotten. This was the Presidential campaign of 1896. The two leading political questions to be answered by the people were as follows: (1) "Shall we have free and unlimited coinage of silver, or shall we maintain a gold standard?" (2) "Shall we have a protective tariff, or a tariff for revenue only?"

When the Republicans met in their National Convention to make nominations for President and for Vice-President they declared in their platform that they were in favor of a protective tariff, and that they were "opposed to the free

coinage of silver, except by international agreement with the leading commercial nations of the world." The convention nominated William McKinley, of Ohio, for President, and Garrett A. Hobart, of New Jersey, for Vice-President. The Democratic Nominating Convention "demanded," in its platform, "the free and unlimited coinage of both silver and gold at the present legal rate of 16 to 1, without waiting for the aid or consent of any other nation." This Convention also declared itself in favor of a tariff for revenue only. This Convention nominated William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, for President.

**The Republicans  
nominate McKin-  
ley and the Dem-  
ocrats Bryan.**

Some Democrats, believing in a gold standard, would not join the silver movement, and nominated their own candidates for President and Vice-President; while many voters, who were called Populists, believing that the government should own and manage all railroads and telegraph lines, just as it owns and manages the post-office, nominated still other candidates.

After an intensely earnest and serious campaign McKinley was elected, and was inaugurated President, March 4, 1897.<sup>1</sup> He at once set about the revision of the tariff by calling a special session of Congress. The result was the passage of the "Dingley Tariff" (July 24, 1897), which raised the duties on foreign goods in accordance with the promises made by the Republicans in the Presidential campaign of 1896.

<sup>1</sup> William McKinley, twenty-fifth President of the United States (1897), was born at Niles, Trumbull County, Ohio, in 1844. When the Civil War began he was a teacher in a country school. Although only seventeen years old he enlisted as a private in the 23d Ohio Regiment, which was commanded later by Rutherford B. Hayes. Young McKinley fought so gallantly in the battles of Antietam, Opequan, Fisher's Hill, and Cedar Creek, that he was advanced to the grade of major. After the war was over he studied law and began the successful practice of it in Canton, Ohio. In 1877 he entered Congress as a Republican representative from Ohio, and served almost continuously until 1891. During his last term, as Chairman of the Committee of Ways and Means, he became the author of the McKinley Bill. In 1891, and again in 1893, the Republicans elected him Governor of Ohio, and he gave evidence of rare tact and executive ability. President McKinley is a very effective public speaker.

## THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

**415. The Cubans Rise against Spain (February, 1895).**—Tariff revision and the financial policy of the government were serious questions, but there soon arose an international complication of overshadowing interest, which absorbed much of the thought and energy of the nation. From the beginning of her control in Cuba, the rule of Spain was cruel and unjust. The Cubans tried several times to throw off the galling yoke, but in vain. In February, 1895, however, they organized in Eastern Cuba an insurrection that within a year spread to the western end of the island.

In alarm the Spanish Government decided upon severe measures and appointed General Weyler as governor-general. He drove the country people into towns and cities, burned their dwellings, and destroyed everything that might furnish support to the fighting Cubans. Such was the brutal policy of concentration. By this policy General Weyler hoped to starve the people into submission, but he failed. Blanco succeeded him as governor-general and tried by a milder policy to win the Cubans back to Spain. The Cubans' cry, however, was, "Independence or death!" At the end of three years, with an army of more than 200,000, Spain had made little headway in putting down the insurrection.

**416. Blowing up the Maine.**—As the war went on American indignation grew bitter. In the midst of a period of deep feeling aroused by the inhuman methods of conducting the war, the people of the United States were shocked by an awful event. On the night of February 15, 1898, the American battle-ship *Maine*, lying in the harbor of Havana, was blown up, two hundred and sixty-six of her sailors being killed by the explosion. Great excitement swept over the country. The President at once appointed a naval court of inquiry, which, after four weeks of investigation, reported that the *Maine* was blown up by the explosion of a submarine mine. The American people, holding Spanish officials responsible for

The brutal policy of concentration.

The *Maine* and the submarine mine.

the destruction of the *Maine*, were more than ever inclined to insist that Spain should end the war. President McKinley did all in his power to bring about a settlement of the trouble, but without success.

**417. War Declared (April, 1898).—**In the meantime affairs in Cuba were becoming worse every day. The President, urged by an impatient Congress to decisive action, declared, in a message sent to that body: "In the name of humanity, in the name of civilization, in behalf of endangered American interests which give us the right and the duty to speak and to act, the war in Cuba must stop."

Congress responded by passing a joint resolution to the following effect: (1) The Cubans are free and independent; (2) Spain must give up all authority in Cuba and withdraw her troops; (3) The Spain must give up Cuba.

United States will exercise control over Cuba long enough to restore peace and good order, and will then leave the island under the control of the Cubans. A little later Congress declared that war had existed since April 21st, and in due time the President called for 200,000 volunteers from the various States and Territories. Congress voted that the regular army also should be increased to 62,000.

**418. Dewey's Brilliant Victory at Manila.—**Commodore Dewey, the commander of the American fleet in Asiatic waters, was ordered to sail at once for the Philippine Islands and

GEORGE DEWEY.

capture or destroy the Spanish fleet. He hastened to Manila, where he found (May 1st) the Spanish fleet lying under the protection of strong shore batteries. With a daring unsurpassed he headed his ships for the enemy. While his flag-ship was steaming boldly into action, two

submarine mines exploded just in front of her, but Commodore Dewey did not falter. The skilful seamanship of the Americans and the rapid and accurate handling of their guns made the battle short and decisive. The **The Spanish fleet destroyed.** entire Spanish fleet of ten war-vessels was destroyed, and 1,200 Spaniards were killed or wounded. Not one American was killed, and only eight were wounded, and not one American vessel received serious injury. It was one of the most brilliant naval victories in history.

Admiral Dewey<sup>1</sup> could have captured Manila, but not having men enough to hold it he had to wait for reinforcements. As soon as possible, over 15,000 soldiers were sent under General Merritt to co-operate with the American fleet. After a combined attack was made upon Manila by the army and the fleet, the city surrendered (August 13th).

**419. The Coming of Cervera's Fleet.**—Until the Spanish fleet at Manila had been destroyed, there was fear of an attack upon our Pacific coast. And there was still grave fear that an attack might be made upon the great Atlantic seaports by the Spanish fleet under the command of Admiral Cervera. At the outbreak of the war this fleet was at the Cape Verde Islands, whence it soon steamed away toward Cuban waters.

What were Cervera's plans? Would he try to reach Havana by attacking the American fleet which, under the command of Admiral Sampson, was blockading the northern coast of Cuba? Would he **Cervera's plans.** steer directly for some great city on the Atlantic coast? Or would he try to intercept the *Oregon*<sup>2</sup> on her way up the eastern coast of South America? Events soon answered these questions.

Cervera arrived at Martinique and then sailed for the Dutch island Curaçao, off the coast of Venezuela, where he got much-needed coal. He was then ordered to Santiago,

<sup>1</sup> On the news of the victory the President appointed Dewey as acting admiral.

<sup>2</sup> This great battle-ship had, on March 19th, begun her remarkable journey of some 15,000 miles from San Francisco around Cape Horn. On May 24th the *Oregon* arrived safely, and soon joined the blockading squadron.

which, on account of the high-lands and the narrow mouth of its protected harbor, was thought to be a good hiding-place while taking on coal and other supplies. Cervera "bottled up" at Santiago. Soon after his arrival the fleet under Commo-  
dore Schley discovered and blockaded the harbor. The Spanish fleet was now "bottled up."

Still there was fear that Cervera might on some dark, stormy night succeed in getting away. To prevent this, a daring plan was laid to sink the collier *Merrimac* directly across the very narrow entrance to the harbor. Lieutenant Hobson and seven other heroic men tried Lieutenant Hobson's daring exploit. to carry out this plan; but a Spanish shot having carried away the rudder of the *Merrimac* before she could be blown up, Hobson did not succeed in sinking her directly across but only along the channel, and thus but partly obstructed it.

W. T. SAMPSON.

**420. On to Santiago.** — A plan of campaign in Cuba was quickly organized, and an army of 15,000 men was soon on its way to unite with Admiral Sampson's squadron for the capture of Santiago and Cervera's fleet. A little later the troops were on Cuban soil, pressing on toward Santiago. The advance had hardly begun when a battle took place at Las Guasimas<sup>1</sup> between about 1,000 Americans, among whom were the famous Roosevelt Rough Riders, and a force of Spaniards considerable larger. This battle was fought in a tropical forest, where the dense undergrowth often made it impossible to see the enemy a few yards away. The Americans advanced in a series of short,

Roosevelt Rough Riders at Las Guasimas.

<sup>1</sup> The first engagement was at Guantanamo, where 600 American marines gallantly held their ground against an attack of greatly superior numbers.



desperate rushes, by which they steadily drove the Spaniards before them and won a signal victory.

**421. The Battle of Santiago.**—Yet in spite of this victory it was evident that the Spaniards would make a stout resistance. Moreover, the Americans had to face unusual difficulties. The so-called roads were rough paths frequently crossed by rushing torrents without bridges. Under such conditions heavy siege-guns could not be moved forward promptly. But delay meant something worse than Spanish bullets. The intense heat and the extreme dampness threatened the American ranks with deadly disease. General Shafter therefore decided to move

W. R. SHAFTER.

on without delay, and on July 1st made a vigorous attack upon the outworks of Santiago at El Caney on the Spanish left and the strong position of San Juan, commanding the city. Both these places were stoutly defended. The battle was hotly contested, but ended in glorious victory for the Americans, who by brilliant charges swept the enemy before them and captured the two strongholds.

**422. Cervera's Fleet Destroyed.**—On the morning of July 3d the Spanish fleet dashed boldly out of the harbor in a desperate attempt to escape. When (about half-past nine) it was seen coming out every American sailor eagerly leaped to his post of duty. The battle was on. As at Manila, the Americans showed themselves superior to the Spaniards in gunnery, and won a victory as brilliant as that of Admiral Dewey. The entire Spanish fleet of six war-vessels was destroyed, 600 Spaniards were killed, and 1,300 captured. Only one American was killed and one severely wounded, and not one of our ships was seriously harmed.

About two weeks afterward Santiago and the eastern end of Cuba, with 22,000 Spanish soldiers, surrendered.

#### 423. Results of the War.—

A large American force under General Miles was then sent to Porto Rico and was rapidly getting control of the island when Spain expressed a desire for peace. The principal results of the war as set forth in the treaty, which, after much opposition, was ratified by the United States Senate, February 6, 1899, were as follows: (1) Spain gave up Cuba and ceded to the United States Porto Rico. (2) She also ceded to the United States the Phil-

ippines, the United States agreeing to pay her \$20,000,000.

Before this treaty could be ratified, however, some of

the Filipinos, Aguinaldo's rebellion. led by Aguinaldo, rebelled against the authority of the United States. After hard fighting Aguinaldo's forces were driven from their position near Manila and then out of Malolos, the rebel leader's capital.

There were two other striking results of the struggle. Some of Two other striking results of the war. the great powers of Europe

NELSON A. MILES.

intervene in behalf of Spain. But England refused to join them and indicated her warm sympathy for us. As a fortu-

nate outcome of England's attitude, the most friendly relations now exist between her and this country. The war also helped to bring all parts of the United States into closer and deeper sympathy. The various sections of our country are united as they have never been before.

### TO THE PUPIL

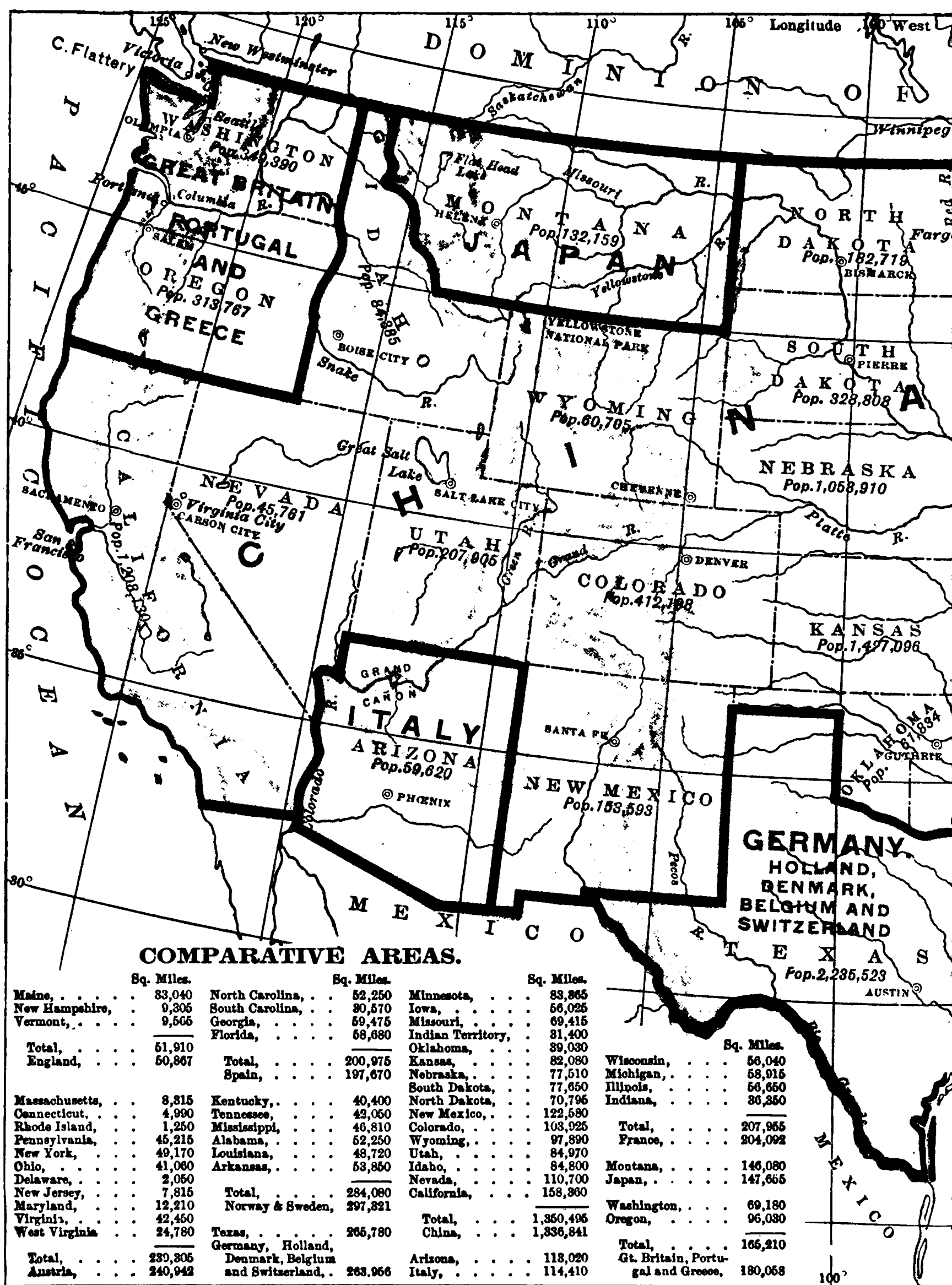
1. Although the events discussed under "The New Union" are important, their connection is not always easily traced. They require all the more careful study.
2. Discuss the difficulties and results of the Atlantic Cable. Of what value is Alaska to the United States? How many States like your own does its area equal?
3. What grievances had the Indians even after the adoption of Grant's peace policy? What is the reservation system and why has it failed? What was the Dawes Act?
4. Subject for debate: Resolved that the Indian has been unjustly treated by the whites.
5. Name the causes of the financial panic of 1873 and show the connection between it and Western settlement. What did the Centennial Exhibition teach the people?
6. What difficulty was there about the Presidential election of 1876 and how was it settled? Observe that Rutherford B. Hayes was President in 1877-1881. Name all the Presidents in order up to this time.
7. Why was so much paper currency issued during the Civil War? Upon what did the value of the greenbacks depend? What is meant by resumption of specie payment?
8. Review Jackson's introduction of the spoils system and rotation in office. What are the demoralizing influences of this system? What is civil service reform?
9. Observe that James A. Garfield was inaugurated as a Republican President in 1881 and that, after his death, Chester A. Arthur became President, continuing in office in 1881-1885. Grover Cleveland, elected by the Democrats, was President in 1885-1889; Benjamin Harrison, elected by the Republicans, was President in 1889-1893. For the next four years, 1893-1897, Cleveland was again President and gave place to William McKinley, who was inaugurated March 4, 1897. What was the Presidential Act of 1886?
10. Prepare to write from three to five minutes on any of the following topics: Strikes and the Chicago anarchists, Oklahoma, the Pan-American Congress, the trouble with Italy, the Pension Bill, and the trouble with Chili.

11. Why do we need a strong navy?
12. What is the Australian ballot system, and why has it been introduced into most of our States?
13. What was the Bering Sea trouble? What was the decision reached in regard to it by the tribunal of arbitration? What is arbitration?
14. Write an outline of the silver legislation, 1873-1893.
15. Before taking up the tariff question here review the difficulties about the tariff which resulted in nullification in South Carolina in Jackson's administration. What were the Mills Bill, the Wilson Bill, and the McKinley Bill?
16. Review the Monroe Doctrine and Maximilian in Mexico. What was the trouble between Venezuela and England? What attitude did our government take toward this trouble?
17. What were the leading political questions before the people in the Presidential campaign of 1896? What answers did the Republicans propose? the Democrats?
18. What was the policy of Concentration?
19. Do you think the United States was justified in going to war with Spain at this time? Give reasons for your answer.
20. Be sure that you are perfectly clear as to the location of Manila, Havana, and Santiago. Why did Dewey go to Manila? Impersonating him give an account of your experiences.
21. Give a brief account of the fighting near Santiago.
22. Imagine yourself on an American ship as Cervera's fleet came out of the harbor of Santiago, and describe the battle.
23. What were the striking results of the war?
24. What was the cause of Aguinaldo's rebellion?
25. Name in order the Presidents of the United States.

**RAISING THE FLAG OVER SANTIAGO.**

Drawn by F. C. Yohn from photographs and sketches made during the ceremony by Mr. Archibald. Showing the squadron of Second United States Cavalry and Ninth United States Infantry and the group of general officers and their staffs.











## CHAPTER XXIII

### SOME SOCIAL, ECONOMIC, AND POLITICAL CONDITIONS AND PROBLEMS OF THE PRESENT

REFERENCES: **Scribner's** Popular History of the United States, V. ; **Andrews's** Last Quarter Century, II.

OUTSIDE READINGS: **Boone's** Education in the United States; **Tyler's** History of American Literature; **Richardson's** American Literature; **Stedman's** Poets of America; **Hudson's** History of Journalism in America; various magazine articles.

**424. The Natural Advantages of the United States.**  
—As the United States in its vast extent has many varieties of soil and climate, its productions also are varied. Our coasts offer valuable fisheries, and the prairies furnish excellent pasturage for sheep and cattle. Extensive areas of forest lands supply the best timber, and rich mineral deposits of gold, silver, iron, and coal lie imbedded in the mountain regions. Our coal supply is many times greater than that of all Europe, including England. From all these sources we get abundant raw material with which to supply our factories, and still have some things to spare for trade in foreign markets.

**425. City Population and Municipal Reform.**—But the growth of wealth and the massing of population in great centres have brought new problems to the front. When the Constitution went into effect, in 1789, only about three per cent. of the people of the United States lived in cities; in 1890 nearly thirty per cent. were in cities of 8,000 inhabitants and upward. The immense growth of manufactures and commerce has largely caused this change,

which is therefore most noticeable in the North and East. In the South and West, mainly devoted to agriculture, the city populations are comparatively small. This **Difficult problem furnished by large city populations.** massing of large numbers of people in commercial and manufacturing centres furnishes a difficult political problem. Many of the most ignorant foreign-born voters are found in such centres, and, being without intelligent ideas about republican institutions, they can the more readily be induced to sell their votes. As the strength of republican institutions depends upon the morality and intelligence of the people, the practice of buying and selling votes must have the effect of weakening our municipal institutions.

But a widespread movement in the interests of better city government is making itself felt more and more every **Wide-spread movement in the interest of better city government.** year. To insure the greater success of the movement, the National Municipal League has been formed, which now (1897) includes over seventy municipal reform associations. It is hoped that by united and persistent effort good citizens will, in time, secure the adoption of good laws only and the election of those men only whose ability and honesty is unquestioned.

**426. Street Railways and the Cities.**—The crowding of population in cities is not accidental nor a condition that is peculiar to this country. It results from the building up of multiplied industries which are best carried on by great bodies of workmen. But while these many industries require masses of men, the city, which has become a great trade and manufacturing centre, cannot supply comfortable homes in the vicinity of its business.

It is here that the electric railway comes in to unite the city and the country. These railways make it possible for **The street railway a necessity and a means of recreation.** the wage-earner to return at night, after his day's labor, to the fresh air and wholesome surroundings of the country, where his family can live much more comfortably and at much less expense than in the crowded city. The railway, then, is not so

much a luxury as a necessity; but even as a means of recreation in affording inexpensive open-air trips to the country, it adds much to the health and comfort of the community in which it exists. In the development of the street railway the United States surpasses all the rest of the world, having over 15,000 miles (1897).

**427. Education.**—All our material advantages would be worth little without a moral and intelligent people to make a proper use of them. For this reason the United States has been among the foremost countries of the world in edu-

PROPOSED FORM OF ELECTRIC RAILWAY.

(A speed of one hundred and twenty miles an hour has been attained by this system.)

cating its citizens. From the earliest colonial times Americans have shown a great interest in the education of their children. The famous Ordinance of 1787 set aside one section of every township for the support of public schools, and all the newer States use the proceeds of two sections in every township as a public-school fund. Every State and organized territory in the Union now has its system of public schools. The number of pupils enrolled last year (1896) was nearly 14,000,000, the cost of maintaining the schools being more than \$170,000,000. As a natural result of such a system the progress of education in the United States has been wonderful.

Liberal provision  
made for public  
schools.

The people have shown much interest in higher educa-

tion also. Among the older colleges and universities are Harvard, Yale, Princeton, and Columbia; among the newer ones, Johns Hopkins University, Chicago University, University of Michigan, and Leland Stanford University. For the higher education of women exclusively, Vassar, Wellesley, Smith, Bryn Mawr, and Radcliffe are well-equipped colleges. The number of colleges and universities in the United States is now nearly

Interest in  
higher education.

WASHINGTON IRVING.

JAMES FENIMORE COOPER.

five hundred,<sup>1</sup> and their grounds, buildings, and productive funds are valued at not less than \$200,000,000. Besides colleges and universities there are many professional and scientific schools, such as the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Boston, and Drexel Institute, Philadelphia.

Many of these higher institutions of learning have been established by gifts and bequests of rich men and women, who have given of their abundance not only for the development of good and strong minds, but also for the training and support of the weak and helpless classes of society. There are in the United States over one hundred and forty institutions

Education of the  
weak and help-  
less.

<sup>1</sup> Many of these, however, are colleges only in name.

for those classes of the community that require help. No other people has done so much to educate the masses and to make better the condition of the weak and the suffering.

**428. Newspapers and Periodicals.** —The high average of intelligence in the United States has created a great demand for newspapers and magazines. There are now nearly twenty thousand of them, sending out more than three thousand million copies a year. They have become an immense educational force, giving the people a keener, more intelligent interest in public affairs.

**429. Literature.** —For a long time after the settlement of the English colonies the people were too busy with the work of clearing the land and building homes for themselves to produce any literature. Washington Irving, born the same year that the Revolution was brought to a close, first attracted public attention by his *Knickerbocker History of New York*. He has rightly been called the "Father of

WILLIAM COLLEN BRYANT.

NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE.

American Literature." J. Fenimore Cooper, his contemporary, was the first American novelist. He wrote the first sea-story which attracted the attention of the world, and was author of the famous *Leatherstocking Tales*, describing the life of the American

Irving, Cooper,  
and Bryant.

Indian.. The stories were written with such freshness and originality that they were eagerly read in many countries. Our first poet to be recognized in England, William Cullen Bryant, belonged to the same period. He came into fame by his well-known poem *Thanatopsis*, written when he was nineteen.

Among the familiar names of later American literature are the following: poets, Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, John Greenleaf Whittier, Oliver Wendell Holmes, Edgar

RALPH WALDO EMERSON.

JOHN GREENLEAF WHITTIER.

Allan Poe, Ralph Waldo Emerson, and James Russell Lowell; essayists, Emerson and Lowell; novelists, Nathaniel Hawthorne, W. D. Howells, Henry James, Harriet Beecher Stowe; historians, George Bancroft, John Lothrop Motley, William H. Prescott, and Francis Parkman. Much excellent work has been done by living writers, especially in the department of American History, and this work is coming from all parts of the country.

**430. Problems of the Hour.**—The great educational influences, coming from the public schools, from higher institutions of learning, from the newspapers and periodicals and from the reading and study of good literature, are pre-

Other familiar  
names in Amer-  
ican literature.

paring the people rightly to solve the problems of the hour. These problems include the Indian question, the race problem in the South, temperance reform, ballot reform, immigration, the tariff, the money question, civil service reform, woman suffrage, and the strife between labor and capital. The right solution of these difficult problems demands intelligence, patience, and conscientious effort. We must take time to study them and we must try to look at them from more than one point of view. If we approach them with a broad and generous spirit, with an earnest desire to find out the truth, we shall be more likely to understand them and to take the proper steps to a satisfactory solution.

**431. Relation of the Individual Citizen to the State.**—The character of the State is determined by the character of its citizens. We should never for-

GEORGE BANCROFT.

get that a vast territory like ours, with all its wealth, is not necessarily great. The greatness of a country is not measured by what it has in land, productions, trades, and educational institutions, but by what its people are. If they are intelligent and patriotic, ready at all times to do their duty in the interest of the public good, their future is assured.

You, my young reader, owe much to your country for what it has done for you. It has been said that America means opportunity. It does. It means oppor- America means opportunity.  
tunity to get wealth, power, influence, and honor. It means opportunity to make the most of your powers of body and mind. But, more than all else, it means opportunity to make the institutions of your country better by honest, faithful service, and sincere efforts to know the truth.



Charles Sumner said of our national flag: "The stripes of alternate red and white proclaim the original union of thirteen States to maintain the Declaration of Independence. Its stars, white on a field of blue, proclaim the union of States constituting our national constellation, which receives a new star with every new State. These two signify union, past and present. The very colors have a language which was officially recognized by our fathers. White is for purity, red for valor, blue for justice."

**"I pledge allegiance to my flag and the republic for which it stands, one nation, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all."**

#### TO THE PUPIL

1. What is meant by municipal reform and why is it needed? What are the advantages of street railways in our cities?
2. What liberal provision has been made for public schools in this country?
3. What are some of the familiar names in American literature? Name some of the problems of the hour.
4. What advantages does our country enjoy by reason of its geographical isolation? What is the relation of an individual citizen to the state?
5. Before laying aside the study of this history learn the symbolism, as given by Charles Sumner, of the colors of the "Stars and Stripes," and memorize the "pledge."

## CHRONOLOGY

- 1867. *March 1*, NEBRASKA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
- 1868. *July 28*, FOURTEENTH AMENDMENT ADOPTED.
- 1869. *March 4*, ULYSSES S. GRANT INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*May 10*, FIRST PACIFIC RAILROAD COMPLETED.
- 1870. *March 30*, FIFTEENTH AMENDMENT RATIFIED.  
THE NINTH CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 38,558,371.
- 1871. *January*, ALL STATES AGAIN REPRESENTED IN CONGRESS.
- 1873. *February*, LAW PASSED DEMONETIZING SILVER.  
*March 4*, ULYSSES S. GRANT INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
FINANCIAL PANIC.
- 1876. CENTENNIAL EXPOSITION AT PHILADELPHIA.  
FIRST TELEPHONE PATENTED.  
*August 1*, COLORADO ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
- 1877. *March 4*, RUTHERFORD B. HAYES INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*July*, GREAT RAILROAD STRIKE IN PITTSBURG.
- 1878. *February*, BLAND-ALLISON SILVER BILL PASSED.  
ELECTRIC LIGHT INVENTED.
- 1879. *January 1*, RESUMPTION OF SPECIE PAYMENTS.
- 1880. THE TENTH CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 50,155,783.
- 1881. *March 4*, JAMES A. GARFIELD INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*September 22*, CHESTER A. ARTHUR FORMALLY INAUGURATED.
- 1883. LETTER POSTAGE REDUCED TO TWO CENTS.
- 1884. *December*, NEW ORLEANS EXPOSITION OPENED.
- 1885. *March 4*, GROVER CLEVELAND INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.
- 1889. *March 4*, BENJAMIN HARRISON INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*April 22*, OKLAHOMA OPENED TO SETTLERS.  
PAN-AMERICAN CONGRESS MET IN WASHINGTON.  
*November 2*, NORTH DAKOTA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*November 2*, SOUTH DAKOTA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*November 8*, MONTANA ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*November 11*, WASHINGTON ADMITTED TO THE UNION.
- 1890. DEPENDENT PENSIONS ACT BECAME A LAW.  
*July 3*, IDAHO ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
*July 10*, WYOMING ADMITTED TO THE UNION.  
McKINLEY TARIFF BILL BECAME A LAW.  
SHERMAN SILVER PURCHASE LAW PASSED.  
THE ELEVENTH CENSUS, SHOWING A POPULATION OF 62,622,250.
- 1893. *January 14*. REVOLUTION IN HAWAII.  
*March 4*, GROVER CLEVELAND INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*May 1*, COLUMBIAN WORLD'S FAIR OPENED AT CHICAGO.
- 1894. *June*, PULLMAN BOYCOTT.  
*August 27*, THE WILSON BILL BECAME A LAW.
- 1895. *December 17*, PRESIDENT CLEVELAND'S VENEZUELA MESSAGE.
- 1897. *March 4*, WILLIAM McKINLEY INAUGURATED PRESIDENT.  
*July 24*, DINGLEY TARIFF BILL BECAME A LAW.
- 1898. *April 25*, CONGRESS DECLARES WAR TO EXIST WITH SPAIN.  
*May 1*, DEWEY'S VICTORY AT MANILA.  
*July 1*, BATTLE OF SANTIAGO.  
*July 3*, CERVERA'S FLEET DESTROYED.
- 1899. *February 6*, TREATY OF PEACE WITH SPAIN RATIFIED.



AT THE WORLD'S FAIR.  
The Administration Building on Chicago Day.



# APPENDIX A

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776

THE following preamble and specifications, known as the Declaration of Independence, accompanied the resolution of Richard Henry Lee, which was adopted by Congress on the 2d day of July, 1776. This declaration was agreed to on the 4th, and the transaction is thus recorded in the Journal for that day:

*" Agreeably to the order of the day, the Congress resolved itself into a committee of the whole, to take into their further consideration the Declaration ; and, after some time, the president resumed the chair, and Mr. Harrison reported that the committee have agreed to a Declaration, which they desired him to report. The Declaration being read, was agreed to as follows : "*

### A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal ; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights ; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed ; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundations on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes ; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a

long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

1. He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

2. He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

3. He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

4. He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

5. He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

6. He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.

7. He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

8. He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

9. He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure on their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

10. He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers, to harass our people and eat out their substance.

11. He has kept among us in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our Legislatures.

12. He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

13. He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitutions, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation;

14. For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

15. For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

16. For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world ;
17. For imposing taxes on us without our consent ;
18. For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of a trial by jury ;
19. For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offenses ;
20. For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies ;
21. For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments ;
22. For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.
23. He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.
24. He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.
25. He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.
26. He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.
27. He has excited domestic insurrection among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms ; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in our attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war ; in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States ; that they are absolved



from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved, and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members :

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

JOSIAH BARTLETT,  
WILLIAM WHIPPLE,  
MATTHEW THORNTON.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

SAMUEL ADAMS,  
JOHN ADAMS,  
ROBERT TREAT PAINE,  
ELBRIDGE GERRY.

RHODE ISLAND.

STEPHEN HOPKINS,  
WILLIAM ELLERY.

CONNECTICUT.

ROGER SHERMAN,  
SAMUEL HUNTINGTON,  
WILLIAM WILLIAMS,  
OLIVER WOLCOTT.

NEW YORK.

WILLIAM FLOYD,  
PHILIP LIVINGSTON,  
FRANCIS LEWIS,  
LEWIS MORRIS.

NEW JERSEY.

RICHARD STOCKTON,  
JOHN WITHERSPOON,  
FRANCIS HOPKINSON,  
JOHN HART,  
ABRAHAM CLARK.

PENNSYLVANIA.

ROBERT MORRIS,  
BENJAMIN RUSH,  
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,  
JOHN MORTON,  
GEORGE CLYMER,  
JAMES SMITH,  
GEORGE TAYLOR,  
JAMES WILSON,  
GEORGE ROSS.

DELAWARE.

CÆSAR RODNEY,  
GEORGE READ,  
THOMAS M'KEAN.

MARYLAND.

SAMUEL CHASE,  
WILLIAM PACA,  
THOMAS STONE,  
CHARLES CARROLL, of  
Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.

GEORGE WYTHE,  
RICHARD HENRY LEE,  
THOMAS JEFFERSON,  
BENJAMIN HARRISON,  
THOMAS NELSON, JUN.,  
FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE,  
CARTER BRAXTON.

NORTH CAROLINA.

WILLIAM HOOPER,  
JOSEPH HEWES,  
JOHN PENN.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

EDWARD RUTLEDGE,  
THOMAS HEYWARD, JUN.,  
THOMAS LYNCH, JUN.,  
ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

GEORGIA.

BUTTON GWINNETT,  
LYMAN HALL,  
GEORGE WALTON.

APPENDIX B

A CHART ON THE CONSTITUTION

Some Steps toward the Constitution.		{ New England Confederation (1643). Franklin's Plan of Union (1754). Stamp Act Congress (1765). Committees of Correspondence (1772). First Meeting of the Continental Congress (1774). Declaration of Independence (1776). Adoption of Articles of Confederation (1781). Annapolis Convention (1786). Constitutional Convention (1787).	
Legislative Department.....	House of Representatives.....	{ Manner of election. Term of office. Qualifications. Represents the people. Census. Apportionment. Speaker the Presiding Officer.	
	Senate.....	{ Number. Manner of election. Term of office. Represents the States. Qualifications. Sole power to try impeachments. Vice-President the Presiding Officer.	
Executive Department.....	President.....	{ Term of office. Manner of election. Qualifications. Oath of office. Impeachment.	
	Cabinet .....	{ Manner of appointment. Number. Duties.	
Judicial Department.	Judges.....	{ Manner of appointment. Number. Term of office.	
	Courts .....	{ Supreme. Circuit. District.	

Congress .....	<div><div>Time of meeting. Quorum. Adjournment. Journal. How a Bill becomes a Law.</div></div>	<div>Congress has power— To lay taxes. To borrow money. To regulate commerce. To naturalize foreigners. To coin money. To fix standard of weights and measures To establish post-offices. To declare war. To raise and support armies. To provide and maintain a navy. To maintain light houses. To make new States.</div>
President's Powers..	<div><div>Commander-in-chief of the army and navy. With the advice and consent of the Sen- ate makes treaties and appoints. ....</div><div><div>Ambassadors. Ministers. Consuls. Judges.</div></div></div>	<div>President's Duties..</div> <div><div>Messages to Con- gress. Special sessions of Con- gress. Receives Ambassadors. Attends to ex- ecution of laws.</div></div>

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES

WE, the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.—Legislative Department.

SECTION I. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION II.—CLAUSE 1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

CLAUSE 2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

CLAUSE 3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective

numbers,<sup>1</sup> which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual-enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

CLAUSE 4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

CLAUSE 5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III.—CLAUSE 1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

CLAUSE 2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

CLAUSE 3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

CLAUSE 4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

CLAUSE 5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

CLAUSE 6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

CLAUSE 7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be

<sup>1</sup> Under the census of 1890 one representative is apportioned to every 173,901 people.

liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV.—CLAUSE 1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

CLAUSE 2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V.—CLAUSE 1. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

CLAUSE 2. Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

CLAUSE 3. Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either House on any question shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

CLAUSE 4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI.—CLAUSE 1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

CLAUSE 2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII.—CLAUSE 1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

CLAUSE 2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with

his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

CLAUSE 3. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII.—CLAUSE 1. The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

CLAUSE 2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

CLAUSE 3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

CLAUSE 4. To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

CLAUSE 5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

CLAUSE 6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

CLAUSE 7. To establish post-offices and post-roads;

CLAUSE 8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

CLAUSE 9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

CLAUSE 10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

CLAUSE 11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

CLAUSE 12. To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

CLAUSE 13. To provide and maintain a navy;

CLAUSE 14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

CLAUSE 15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions ;

CLAUSE 16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

CLAUSE 17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings ;—And

CLAUSE 18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX.—CLAUSE 1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

CLAUSE 2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

CLAUSE 3. No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

CLAUSE 4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

CLAUSE 5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

CLAUSE 6. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another ; nor shall vessels bound to or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

CLAUSE 7. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law ; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

CLAUSE 8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States : And no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State.

SECTION X.—CLAUSE 1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

CLAUSE 2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and impost, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

CLAUSE 3. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.—Executive Department.

SECTION I.—CLAUSE 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during a term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

CLAUSE 2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

CLAUSE 3.<sup>1</sup>

CLAUSE 4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

CLAUSE 5. No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.

CLAUSE 6. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

CLAUSE 7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

CLAUSE 8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the fol-

<sup>1</sup> This clause is no longer in force. Amendment XII. has superseded it.



lowing oath or affirmation :—“ I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

**SECTION II.—CLAUSE 1.** The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States ; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices ; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

**CLAUSE 2.** He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law ; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of department.

**CLAUSE 3.** The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

**SECTION III.—**He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers ; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

**SECTION IV.—**The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### **ARTICLE III.—Judicial Department.**

**SECTION I.—**The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

**SECTION II.—CLAUSE 1.**<sup>1</sup> The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls ;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ;—to controversies between two or more States ;—between a State and citizens of another State ;—between citizens of different States ;—between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

**CLAUSE 2.** In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

**CLAUSE 3.** The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

**SECTION III.—CLAUSE 1.** Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

**CLAUSE 2.** The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason ; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.—General Provisions.

**SECTION I.**—Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State ; and the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

**SECTION II.—CLAUSE 1.** The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

**CLAUSE 2.** A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

**CLAUSE 3.** No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

<sup>1</sup> This clause has been modified by Amendment XI.

**SECTION III.—CLAUSE 1.** New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

**CLAUSE 2.** The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

**SECTION IV.—**The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of Government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the Legislature, or of the executive (when the Legislature can not be convened), against domestic violence.

### **ARTICLE V.—Power of Amendment.**

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

### **ARTICLE VI.—Miscellaneous Provisions.**

**CLAUSE 1.** All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

**CLAUSE 2.** This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any thing in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

**CLAUSE 3.** The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

**ARTICLE VII.—Ratification of the Constitution.**

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,  
*President, and Deputy from Virginia.*

**CONSENT OF THE STATES PRESENT.<sup>1</sup>**

**NEW HAMPSHIRE.**

JOHN LANGDON,  
NICHOLAS GILMAN.

**MASSACHUSETTS.**

NATHANIEL GORHAM,  
RUFUS KING.

**CONNECTICUT.**

WILLIAM SAMUEL JOHNSON,  
ROGER SHERMAN.

**NEW YORK.**

ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

**NEW JERSEY.**

WILLIAM LIVINGSTON,  
DAVID BREARLEY,  
WILLIAM PATERSON,  
JONATHAN DAYTON.

**PENNSYLVANIA.**

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,  
THOMAS MIFFLIN,  
ROBERT MORRIS,  
GEORGE CLYMER,  
THOMAS FITZSIMONS,  
JARED INGERSOLL,  
JAMES WILSON,  
GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.

**DELAWARE.**

GEORGE READ,  
GUNNING BEDFORD, JR.,  
JOHN DICKINSON,  
RICHARD BASSETT,  
JACOB BROOM.

**MARYLAND.**

JAMES MCHENRY,  
DANIEL OF ST. THOMAS JENIFER,  
DANIEL CARROLL.

**VIRGINIA.**

JOHN BLAIR,  
JAMES MADISON, JR.

**NORTH CAROLINA.**

WILLIAM BLOUNT,  
RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT,  
HUGH WILLIAMSON.

**SOUTH CAROLINA.**

JOHN RUTLEDGE,  
CHARLES C. PINCKNEY,  
CHARLES PINCKNEY,  
PIERCE BUTLER.

**GEORGIA.**

WILLIAM FEW,  
ABRAHAM BALDWIN.

*Attest:* WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

<sup>1</sup> Rhode Island was not represented in the Federal Convention.

## AMENDMENTS<sup>1</sup>

### To the Constitution of the United States, Ratified according to the Provisions of the Fifth Article of the Foregoing Constitution.

ARTICLE I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress and grievances.

ARTICLE II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war and public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII.—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of common law.

ARTICLE VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

<sup>1</sup> Amendments I. to X. were declared in force December 15, 1791.

ARTICLE IX.—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.<sup>1</sup>—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.<sup>2</sup>—The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate;—the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.<sup>3</sup>—SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the person shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

<sup>1</sup> Declared in force January 8, 1798.

<sup>2</sup> Declared in force September 25, 1804.

<sup>3</sup> Declared in force December 18, 1865.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.<sup>1</sup>—SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pension and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.<sup>2</sup>—SECTION 1. The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

<sup>1</sup> Declared in force July 28, 1868.

<sup>2</sup> Declared in force March 30, 1870.

TO THE PUPIL

1. What colonies united to form the New England Confederation and what were its purposes and results? What was Franklin's plan of Union and why was it not adopted? What did the Stamp Act Congress do? What was the leading object of the Committees of Correspondence?
2. Under what circumstances was the first meeting of the Continental Congress held? What led the colonies to adopt the Declaration of Independence?
3. When did the States adopt the Articles of Confederation? Explain the weakness of the central governing power, Congress, under the Articles of Confederation. Tell what you can about the Annapolis Convention; the Constitutional Convention.
4. Under the Constitution, what are the three departments of our government? Which of them makes the laws? Which sees that they are carried out? Which interprets them and tries cases arising under them?
5. Of what does the legislative department consist? How are members of the House of Representatives elected? For how long? What are their qualifications?
6. How many people does each member of the House represent? What is the unit of representation? How can you find the number of representatives in any State? How many in your own? Why?
7. What do the Senators represent? How are they elected and for what term of office? What are their qualifications?
8. What exclusive functions has the House? the Senate?
9. What are the qualifications of the President? How is he elected? For what term of office is he elected? What is meant by the impeachment of the President?
10. What is the President's Cabinet? How many members had Washington's Cabinet? How many in the Cabinet now? What are the duties of the Cabinet officers?
11. Name the three kinds of national courts. How many judges are there in the Supreme Court? How are they appointed and what is their term of office? Why should we have national courts?
12. Explain the three courses which a bill must take in order to become a law. Name the powers of Congress enumerated in the chart.
13. What military power has the President? How are treaties and important appointments made? What duties of the President are named in the chart?



## APPENDIX C

TABLE' OF STATES AND TERRITORIES

No.	Name.	Date of Admission.	Area in Square Miles.	Representatives in Congress, 1897.	Electoral Votes, <sup>2</sup> 1897.
1	Delaware <sup>3</sup> .....	1787	2,050	1	3
2	Pennsylvania.....	1787	45,215	30	32
3	New Jersey.....	1787	7,815	8	10
4	Georgia.....	1788	59,475	11	13
5	Connecticut.....	1788	4,990	4	6
6	Massachusetts.....	1788	8,315	13	15
7	Maryland.....	1788	12,210	6	8
8	South Carolina.....	1788	30,570	7	9
9	New Hampshire.....	1788	9,305	2	4
10	Virginia.....	1788	42,450	10	12
11	New York.....	1788	49,170	34	36
12	North Carolina.....	1789	52,250	9	11
13	Rhode Island.....	1790	1,250	2	4
14	Vermont.....	1791	9,565	2	4
15	Kentucky.....	1792	40,400	11	13
16	Tennessee.....	1796	42,050	10	12
17	Ohio.....	1802	41,060	21	23
18	Louisiana.....	1812	48,720	6	8
19	Indiana.....	1816	36,350	13	15
20	Mississippi.....	1817	46,810	7	9
21	Illinois.....	1818	56,650	22	24
22	Alabama.....	1819	52,250	9	11
23	Maine.....	1820	33,040	4	6
24	Missouri.....	1821	69,415	15	17
25	Arkansas.....	1836	53,850	6	8
26	Michigan.....	1837	58,915	12	14
27	Florida.....	1845	58,680	2	4
28	Texas.....	1845	265,780	13	15

<sup>1</sup> The population, the capital, and the largest city of each State may be found on the map between pages 434 and 435.

<sup>2</sup> In 1897 the total number of representatives in Congress was 357. Add to this number 90, for the number of senators in the Senate, and the result is 447 Electoral votes.

<sup>3</sup> The dates opposite the first thirteen—the "Original Thirteen"—indicate the year when the States ratified the Constitution.

No.	Name.	Date of Admission.	Area in Square Miles.	Representatives in Congress, 1897.	Electoral Votes, <sup>1</sup> 1897.
29	Iowa .....	1846	56,025	11	13
30	Wisconsin.....	1848	56,040	10	12
31	California .....	1850	158,360	7	9
32	Minnesota .....	1858	83,365	7	9
33	Oregon.....	1859	96,030	2	4
34	Kansas.....	1861	82,080	8	10
35	West Virginia .....	1863	24,780	4	6
36	Nevada .....	1864	110,700	1	3
37	Nebraska.....	1867	77,510	6	8
38	Colorado .....	1876	103,925	2	4
39	North Dakota.....	1889	70,795	1	3
40	South Dakota.....	1889	77,650	2	4
41	Montana .....	1889	146,080	1	3
42	Washington .....	1889	69,180	2	4
43	Idaho.....	1890	84,800	1	3
44	Wyoming .....	1890	97,890	1	3
45	Utah.....	1896	84,970	1	3
	New Mexico.....	....	122,580	..	.
	Arizona .....	....	113,020	..	..
	Alaska.....	....	577,390	..	..
	Indian Territory .....	....	31,400	..	..
	Oklahoma.....	....	39,030	..	..
	District of Columbia.....	....	70	.	..

<sup>1</sup> See note 2 on opposite page.

# APPENDIX D

## PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES

President.	State.	By Whom Elected.	Term of Office.
George Washington.....	Virginia .....	Whole people.	Two terms ; 1789-1797.
John Adams.....	Massachusetts...	Federalists.	One term ; 1797-1801.
Thomas Jefferson.....	Virginia .....	Dem.-Rep..	Two terms ; 1801-1809.
James Madison.....	Virginia.....	Dem.-Rep..	Two terms ; 1809-1817.
James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	Dem.-Rep..	Two terms ; 1817-1825.
John Quincy Adams.....	Massachusetts...	Rep.....	One term ; 1825-1829.
Andrew Jackson.....	Tennessee.....	Dem.....	Two terms ; 1829-1837.
Martin Van Buren.....	New York.....	Dem.....	One term ; 1837-1841.
William Henry Harrison.....	Ohio.....	Whigs.....	One month ; 1841.
John Tyler.....	Virginia .....	Whigs.....	3 yrs. 11 mos. ; 1841-1845.
James Knox Polk.....	Tennessee .....	Dem.....	One term ; 1845-1849.
Zachary Taylor.....	Louisiana .....	Whigs.....	1 yr. 4 mos. ; 1849, 1850.
Millard Fillmore.....	New York.....	Whigs.....	2 yrs. 8 mos. ; 1850-1853.
Franklin Pierce.....	New Hampshire.	Dem.....	One term ; 1853-1857.
James Buchanan .....	Pennsylvania....	Dem.....	One term ; 1857-1861.
Abraham Lincoln.....	Illinois.....	Rep.....	One term and 6 wks. ; 1861-1865.
Andrew Johnson.....	Tennessee.....	Rep... ..	3 yrs. 10½ mos. ; 1865-1869.
Ulysses Simpson Grant.....	Illinois.....	Rep.....	Two terms ; 1869-1877.
Rutherford Burchard Hayes..	Ohio. ....	Rep.....	One term ; 1877-1881.
James Abraham Garfield.....	Ohio.....	Rep.....	6 mos. 15 days ; 1881.
Chester Alan Arthur.....	New York.....	Rep... ..	3 yrs. 5 mos., 15 days ; 1881-1885.
Grover Cleveland.....	New York.....	Dem.....	One term ; 1885-1889.
Benjamin Harrison.....	Indiana, ....	Rep .....	One term ; 1889-1893.
Grover Cleveland.....	New York.....	Dem.....	One term ; 1893-1897.
William McKinley.....	Ohio.....	Rep.....	1897.

## INDEX

- ABOLITIONISTS, 286-289  
 Acadians, removal of, 101  
 Adams, John, 154 ; presidency of, 220-223 ; sketch and portrait, 220  
 Adams, J. Q., sketch, 259 ; portrait, 260 ; presidency of, 259-263 ; defends the right of petition, 289  
 Adams, Samuel, 142-145 ; 148, 153 ; portrait, 154 ; 201  
 Aguinaldo's rebellion, 435  
 Alabama Claims, 363  
*Alabama*, Confederate cruiser, 362  
 Alabama secedes, 319 ; 373, 388, 389  
 Alaska, purchase of, 404  
 Albany (Fort Orange), 66  
 Alien and Sedition Laws, 221  
 Allen, Ethan, 150  
 Amsterdam, New, 66  
 Anarchists, Chicago, 417  
 Anderson, Major, 322  
 André (än'drā), John, 187  
 Andros, Sir Edmund, 60, 61, 70  
 Antietam, battle of, 342  
 Anti-Federalist Party, 200, 220  
 Appomattox Court House, Lee surrenders at, 366  
 Arbitration, 422, 427, 428  
 Arid region, 400  
 Arkansas, 372, 373  
 Armistead (är'mis-ted), General, 347  
 Army, Continental, 149, 152  
 Arnold, Benedict, 150, 164, 166, 171 ; his treason, 184-188  
 Arthur, Chester A., sketch, 414  
 Articles of Confederation, 194, 197  
 Ashburton Treaty, 372  
 Asia, European trade with, 1  
 Atlanta Exposition, 390  
 Atlantic Cable, 403  
 Australian Ballot System, 421  
 BACON's rebellion, 35  
 Balboa discovers the Pacific, 18  
 Baltimore, Lord, 37  
 Baltimore attacked by the British, 248  
 Bancroft, George, 445  
 Bank, United States, 271, 272  
 Barbary States, war with, 233  
 Barclay, Captain, defeated by Perry on Lake Erie, 247  
 Beauregard (bō're-gäard) General, 323

### KEY TO PRONUNCIATION.\*

a as in fat.	ē as in mete.	ō as in note.	ū as in mute.
ā " " fate.	è " " her.	ö " " move.	ü German ü, French u.
ä " " far.	i " " pin.	ô " " nor.	oi as in oil.
ä " " fare.	ī " " pine.	u " " tub.	ou " " pound.
e " " met.	o " " not.		

A double dot under any vowel indicates the short *u*-sound, as in but.

\* According to Century Dictionary.

- Bell, A. G., 410  
 Bennington, battle of, 166  
 Bering Sea trouble, 422  
 Berkeley, Sir William, 35  
 Blacklists, 417  
 Blaine, James G., 422  
 Blanco, Captain-General, 430  
 Bland Silver Bill, 425  
*Bon Homme Richard* (bo-nom' rē-shär'), 180  
 Boone, Daniel, 177  
 Border ruffians, 304  
 "Boston Massacre," 142  
 Boston settled, 47; evacuated by the British, 153  
 Boycott, 417  
 Braddock, General, his defeat, 100  
 Bradford, Governor, 46  
 Bragg, General, 352-354  
 Brandywine, battle of the, 168  
 Breckenridge, John C., 316  
 Brewster, Elder, 46  
 Brooklyn Bridge, 416  
 Brooks, Preston S., assaults Charles Sumner, 305  
 Brown, John, at Harper's Ferry, 312  
 Bryan, William J., 429  
 Bryant, William Cullen, 443  
 Buchanan (bu-kan' an), James, sketch, 310; portrait, 311; presidency of, 310-322  
 Buell, General, 335  
 Buena Vista, battle of, 372  
 Bull Run, first battle of, 324; second battle of, 341  
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 150-152  
 Burgoyne (bēr-goin'), General, his invasion, 164-170; his surrender, 171  
 Burnside, General, 342  
 Burr, Aaron, 225; his conspiracy, 235  
 Butler, General, 336, 349  
  
 CABINET, the President's, 211, 417  
 Cabot, John, seeks the northwest passage, 7  
 Cabot, Sebastian, explores the coast of North America, 7  
 Calhoun, John C., and nullification, 268; portrait, 269  
 California, seeks admission to the Union, 296; admitted to the Union, 372  
 Cambridge, 50  
 Camden, battle of, 182  
 Canada, 56, 89, 106, 150  
 Canonicus, 46, 55  
 Cape Cod, 45  
 Carpet-bag rule, 380  
 Carteret, 74, 128  
 Cartier (kär-tyā'), 89  
 Carver, John, 45  
 Catholics, 37  
 Cedar Creek, battle of, 357  
 Centennial Exhibition, 410  
 Cervera, Admiral, 432  
 Chambersburg, 356  
 Champlain (sham-plān'), 89-91, 128  
 Champlain, Lake, 91, 128  
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 343  
 Charles I., 41, 42, 58, 59  
 Charles II., 41, 42, 58, 71  
 Charleston, 322  
 Charter Oak, 61  
 Charters, 27, 37, 44, 47, 52, 59, 61, 65, 72  
 Chattanooga, 388  
 Chattanooga, battle of, 352-354  
*Chesapeake, Leopard* fires upon, 238  
 Chicago, 275  
 Chickamauga, battle of, 351, 352  
 Chili, trouble with, 421  
 Chinese immigration, 398  
 Chippewa (chip'e-wä), battle of, 247, 371  
 Christian Commission, 368  
 Church of England, 42  
 Civil service reform, 413  
 Civil War, causes of, 318; principal events of, 322-366; results of, 369  
 Clark, George Rogers, in the Northwest, 177, 178; 192

- Clay, Henry, portrait, 259 ; 271, 298  
*Clermont*, 234  
 Cleveland, Grover, sketch, 414 ; portrait, 415 ; 423 ; 425  
 Clinton, DeWitt, and Erie Canal, 259  
 Clinton, General, 170, 171, 174, 182, 184, 186, 191  
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 356  
 Coligny (ko-lēn'-yē), 14, 128  
 Colonies, life in the, at the close of the French and Indian Wars, 109-122 ; groups of, 109, 123, 124  
 Colorado, 447  
 Colored troops in the Civil War, 349-351  
 Columbia River, 284  
 Columbia University, 119  
 Columbus, Christopher, his plans, 2 ; portrait, (facing) 2 ; his difficulties, 3 ; first voyage of, 3 ; picture of fleet, 3 ; trials on his first voyage, 5 ; discovers America, 5 ; other voyages, 6 ; last days, 6  
 Commerce, American, after the Revolution, 195  
 Committees of Correspondence, 142  
 Compromise with Missouri, 258 ; with South Carolina, 271 ; of 1850, 297-299  
 Concentration, 430  
 Concord, battle of, 147-149  
 Confederate States of America, organization of, 319  
 Congress, Continental, first meeting of, 146 ; second meeting of, 149 ; has little power, 176, 194, 196  
 Connecticut, early history of, 50-52 ; and the Northwest Territory, 197  
 Conscription, in the North, 351 ; in the South, 351  
 Constitution of the United States, events leading to, 198-200 ; ratified, 200 ; slavery compromises in, 200 ; strict and liberal construction of, 211  
*Constitution* captures the *Guerrière*, 244  
 Continental currency, 176  
 Conway Cabal, 174  
 Cooper, James Fenimore, 442  
 Cornwallis, General, 161, 162, 182-184, 188, 191  
 Coronado, 128  
 Cortez conquers Mexico, 18  
 Cotton export, 328, 329, 388, 390  
 Cotton-gin, invention of, 215  
 Cowpens, battle of, 189  
 Creek Indians, war with, 249  
 Crève-Cœur (krev-kēr'), 92  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 42  
 Crown Point, Fort, 103 ; Americans capture, 150 ; Burgoyne captures, 164  
 Cuba, Island of, 301, 430  
 Cubans rise against Spain, 430  
*Cumberland* destroyed by the *Merri-mac*, 330  
 Cunard Steamship Line, 372  
 Cushing, Lieutenant, 346  
 DAKOTA, North, 396  
 Dakota, South, 396  
 Dale, Sir Thomas, 31  
 Daughters of Liberty, 135  
 Davenport, John, 52  
 Davis, Jefferson, sketch, 320 ; elected President of the Confederacy, 320 ; flight and capture of, 366  
 Dawes, William, 148  
 Dawes Act, 407  
 Declaration of Independence, 153-155  
 "Decrees," 239  
 De Kalb (de kalb), Baron, 173  
 Delaware, early history of, 75  
 Delaware, Lord, 31  
 Democratic Party, 220, 263, 316, 426, 429  
 Democratic-Republican Party, 220, 222, 224, 243  
 Deposits, removal of, 272  
 De Soto (sō'tō), lands in Florida, 13 ; discovers the Mississippi, 13 ; portrait, 13  
 Detroit, 246  
 Dewey, Admiral George, 431  
 Dingley Tariff, 433

- Dinwiddie, Governor, 98  
 Discovery, aids to, 1  
 District of Columbia, slavery in, 298  
 Dorchester Heights, 153  
 Dorr rebellion in Rhode Island, 372  
 Douglas, Stephen A., 303, 316  
 Draft riots, 351  
 Drake, Sir Francis, 20, 24  
 Dred Scott decision, 310  
 Du Quesne (dū-kān'), Fort, 99  
 Dutch, in New Netherland, 64-69;  
     reasons for their failure, 69  
  
 EADS, Captain, and the Mississippi jet-  
     ties, 386  
 Early, General, his raid in the Shenan-  
     doah, 356  
 Eaton, Theophilus, 52  
 Edison, Thomas A., 410  
 Education, 113, 116, 119, 441  
 Edward, Fort, 165  
 El Caney, 434  
 Electoral Commission, 411  
 Electoral Count Bill, 412  
 Elizabeth, Queen, 21, 25  
 Emancipation Proclamation, 348, 349  
 Embargo, 239, 240  
 Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 444  
 Endicott, John, 47  
 England, her need of America, 23 ; im-  
     presses American seamen, 237 ; in-  
     jures American commerce, 239 ; and  
     the Civil War, 326-329 and 361-363 ;  
     and Venezuela, 427 ; friendship of,  
     435  
 Era of good feeling, 263  
 Ericsson, John, and the *Monitor*, 330  
 Ericsson, Leif, 9  
 Erie Canal, 259-262  
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 202  
 Exports, leading, 388  
  
 FAIR OAKS (Seven Pines), battle of,  
     339  
 Faneuil Hall, 135  
  
 Farragut, Admiral David G., at New  
     Orleans, 336 ; sketch, 360 ; at Mobile  
     Bay, 360  
 Federalist Party, 200, 208, 220, 222, 243  
 Fifteenth Amendment, 380  
 Filibustering Expeditions, 301  
 Filipinos, rebellion of, 435  
 Fillmore, Millard, sketch and portrait, 297  
 Five Forks, battle of, 365  
 Five Nations (see Six Nations), 77  
 Flag, American, 171  
 Flatboat, 228  
 Florida, purchase of, 254 ; admitted to  
     the Union, 372 ; market gardening  
     in, 389  
 Foote, Commodore, 333  
 Forest reservations, 402  
 Fort Donelson, 333  
 Fort Henry, 333  
 Fort Orange (Albany), 66  
 Fort William Henry, massacre at, 129  
 Fourteenth Amendment, 380  
 France, her struggle with England for  
     control of America, 95 ; American  
     treaty with, 172 ; aids the Americans  
     with her fleets, 179 ; at war with Eng-  
     land, 217 ; regains Louisiana, 230 ;  
     injures American commerce, 239  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 100 ; his plan of  
     union, 125-127 ; sketch, 126 ; 155,  
     171 ; portrait, 172  
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 342  
 Freedmen, and Southern legislation,  
     376 ; and education, 390  
 French forts, 97  
 French Revolution, 218  
 French War, Last, 96-107 ; causes of,  
     96-98 ; principal events of, 100-106 ;  
     treaty of peace, 106 ; other results of,  
     107  
 Fugitive Slave Law, 299  
 Fulton, Robert, 234  
  
 GADSDEN PURCHASE, 293  
 Gage, General, 145, 147, 148

- Garfield, James A., sketch and portrait, 413  
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 287  
 Gates, General, 171, 182  
 Genet (zhe-nā') Citizen, defies Washington, 218  
 George III., 139-145, 192  
 Georgia, early history, 40; secedes, 319, 373  
 Germantown, battle of, 202  
 Gettysburg, battle of, 344-347  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 21  
 Gold, discovery of, in California, 294-296  
 Gorges, Sir Ferdinando, 63  
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, 24  
 Gourges (görg), Dominique de, in Florida, 15  
 Government, colonial, 123-126  
 Grant, Ulysses S., at Fort Donelson, 333; at Shiloh, 334; at Vicksburg, 347; at Chattanooga, 352; sketch, 353; in campaigns about Richmond, 355-366; captures Lee's army, 366; made President, 382; his Indian policy, 405  
 Gray, Captain, 232  
 Great Meadows, 99  
 Greeley, Horace, 367  
 Greenbacks, 412  
 Greene, General, 188-190  
 Grenville, Lord, 133  
*Griffin*, 92  
 Griffin's Wharf, 145  
 Guantanamo, 433  
*Guerrière* (gār-ryär), captured, 244  
 Guilford Court House, battle of, 189  
  
 "HAIL COLUMBIA," 221  
 Hale, Nathan, 159  
*Half Moon*, 64  
 Hamilton, Alexander, favors a strong Union, 211; financial policy of, 212; portrait, 212; killed by Burr, 235  
 Hamilton, Colonel, 177, 178  
 Hancock, John, 148, 149, 155  
 Harrison, Benjamin, 402, 418; sketch, 423; portrait, 423; elected President, 426  
 Harrison, William Henry, 241, 242; sketch, 282; portrait, 283  
 Hartford, 50, 52, 61  
*Hartford*, at Mobile Bay, 361  
 Hartford Convention, 251  
 Harvard College, 113  
 Havana, 430  
 Hawaii (hä-wī'ē), revolution in, 423  
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 443  
 Hayes, Rutherford B., sketch, 385; withdraws troops from the South, 386; portrait, 386; election of, 411  
 Hennepin, 129  
 Henry, Patrick, 136, 146, 201  
 Hessians, 154, 162  
 Hobson, Lieutenant, 433  
 Holland at war with England, 175  
 Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 444  
 Holy Alliance, 255  
 Hood, General, 359  
 Hooker, Joseph, 343, 354  
 Hooker, Thomas, 50-52  
 Howe, General, 150, 159, 167-170, 174  
 Hudson, Henry, discovers the Hudson River, 64  
 Hudson River, 64, 65, 68, 158, 164  
 Huguenots (hū'ge-nots) in France, 14; their settlements, 14; Spanish destroy settlements of, 15  
 Hull, Captain Isaac, 244  
 Hull, General William, 246  
 Hutchinson, Anne, 55  
  
 IBERVILLE (ē-ber-vēl'), 129  
 Idaho, 396  
 Illinois, 372  
 Immigration, foreign, table of, 274; 306, 307, 393-395  
 Impeachment, President Johnson's, 379  
 Impressment of American seamen, 219, 237



Income Tax, 426

Independence of the United States, 191

Independent Treasury, 278

Indiana, 371

Indians, division of, 76 ; character of, 77 ; occupations of, 78 ; their canoes and snow-shoes, 78 ; wampum, 79 ; religion, 80 ; clan and tribe, 81 ; communal living, 81 ; number of, 84 ; influence of, upon the whites, 85 ; early wars with, 86-88 ; aid Burgoyne, 165 ; use of, by the English, 176 ; reservation system, 407

Intercolonial Wars, 96

Internal improvements, 262, 263, 276

" Ironsides, Old," 244

Iroquois (ir-ō-kwoi') Indians (see Five Nations and Six Nations), 65, 67 ; and Champlain, 90 ; enemies of French, 91 ; and fur trade, 95 ; and St. Leger, 166

Irrigation, 400

Irving, Washington, 442

Italy, trouble with, 420

JACKSON, ANDREW, at battle of New Orleans, 249-251 ; in Florida, 254 ; presidency of, 265-277 ; sketch, 265 ; portrait, 266

Jackson, C. T., 284

Jackson, Thomas J. (" Stonewall "), in the Shenandoah, 341 ; sketch and portrait, 344

James I., 28, 41-43

James II., 41, 42, 60

Jamestown, settlement of, 27

Japan, treaty with, 301

Jay, his treaty with England, 219

Jefferson, Thomas, 136 ; writes Declaration of Independence, 155 ; opposes a strong union, 211 ; presidency of, 224-240 ; sketch, 224 ; portrait, 226

Jesuit missionaries, 91

Johnson, Andrew, presidency of, 374-383 ; sketch and portrait, 375 ; his

plan of reconstruction, 375 ; impeached, 379

Johnston, Albert Sydney, 333

Johnston, Joseph E., 325, 340, 347, 355, 358-59, 366

Joliet (zho-lyā'), 92

Jones, John Paul, 171, 179

KALB, Baron de, 173

Kansas, struggle for, 303-305 ; admitted to the Union, 373

Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 303

Kaskaskia, 177

*Kearsarge*, sinks the *Alabama*, 363

Kenesaw Mountain, battle of, 358

Kentucky, Resolutions presented by, 222 ; life in, 227, 371

King George's War, 96

King Philip's War, 87

King William's War, 96

King's Mountain, battle of, 182, 183

Knights of Labor, 417

Knox, Henry, 211

Kosciusko (kos-i-us'kō), 173

Ku-Klux Klan, 381

LA FAYETTE (lä-fā-yet'), sketch, 168 ; portrait, 170 ; in Virginia, 190

La Salle (lä sä'l'), explores the Mississippi, 92 ; his aims and work, 93

Lake Erie, Perry's victory on, 246

Lands, Public, 395

Las Guasimas, 433

*Lawrence*, Perry's flagship, 246

Lee, Charles, 160, 161, 167, 168, 174

Lee, Fort, 159, 160

Lee, Richard Henry, 154

Lee, Robert E., sketch, 340 ; in Peninsular campaign, 340 ; portrait, 342 ; at Antietam, 342 ; at Fredericksburg, 342 ; at Chancellorsville, 342 ; at Gettysburg, 345 ; in campaigns of 1864 and 1865, 355-366 ; his surrender, 366

Leisler (līs'lér), Jacob, leads an uprising against Andros, 70

- Lewis and Clarke's Expedition, 221-233  
 Lexington, battle of, 147-149  
*Liberator*, William Lloyd Garrison's, 287  
 Lincoln, Abraham, sketch, 316; portrait (facing), 318; presidency of, 322-367; assassinated, 367  
 Lincoln, General, 182  
 "Line of Demarcation," 77  
 Literature, 443  
 London Company, 26, 27  
 Long Island, battle of, 159  
 Longfellow, Henry W., 444  
 Lookout Mountain, battle of, 354  
 Louisburg, 96  
 Louisiana, 371  
 Louisiana Purchase, 230-232  
 Lovejoy, Elijah P., 288  
 Lowell, James Russell, 444  
 Lundy's Lane, battle of, 247, 371
- McCLELLAN, GEORGE B., in the Peninsula Campaign, 336-341  
 McCormick reaping-machine, 279  
 McCrea, Jane, 165  
 McDonough (mak-don'ō), Thomas, on Lake Champlain, 248  
 McDowell, General, 324, 339  
 McKinley, William, author of McKinley Bill, 426; sketch and portrait, 428, 429; conduct of Spanish War, 430  
 Madison, James, portrait, 240; sketch, 241; presidency of, 241-252  
 Magellan (ma-jel'an), wonderful voyage of, 8  
 Mails, 207  
 Maine, 372  
*Maine* (The), 430  
 Malolos, 435  
 Malvern Hill, battle of, 340  
 Manassas (ma-nas'as), battle of (see Bull Run)  
 Manhattan Island, 65, 66  
 Manila, 431  
 Manufactures, in New England, 61, 240; in the South, 388
- Marion, Francis, 184  
 Marquette (mär-ket'), Father, 92, 128  
 Marshall, Chief Justice, 223, 371  
 Maryland, early history of, 37-39; and the Northwest Territory, 197  
 Mason, John, 86  
 Mason and Dixon's Line, 38  
 Mason and Slidell seized on the *Trent*, 326  
 Massachusetts, early history of, 45-60  
 Massachusetts Bay Company, 46, 47  
 Massasoit (mas-a-soit'), 46  
 Maximilian, Archduke, in Mexico, 364  
 Meade, George G., portrait, 346; at Gettysburg, 344-347  
 Melendez in Florida, 15  
*Merrimac*, Confederate ironclad, 329  
*Merrimac*, United States collier, 433  
 Merritt, General, 432  
 Mexican War, 290-293  
 Mexico, City of, occupied by American troops, 372  
 Michigan, 372  
 Middle Colonies, 118-121; mixed population of, 118; occupations of people in, 118; education in, 119; crimes and punishments in, 119; life and manners of the Dutch in, 119  
 Miles, General, 435  
 Mills Bill, 426  
 Mimms, Fort, massacre at, 249  
 Minnesota, 373  
 Missionary Ridge, battle of, 354  
 Mississippi, 372  
 Mississippi River, importance of, in the Civil War, 331  
 Missouri, 372  
 Missouri Compromise, 258, 259  
 Mobile Bay, battle of, 359-361  
 Mohawk River, 91, 164  
*Monitor*, Union ironclad, 329  
 Monmouth, battle of, 174  
 Monroe, James, presidency of, 254-259; sketch, 254; portrait, 255  
 Monroe Doctrine, 254-256, 427

- Montana, 396  
 Montcalm, General, 102, 106  
 Montgomery, 150  
 Montreal, 150  
 Moore's Creek Bridge, battle of, 202  
 Morgan, Daniel, at battle of Cowpens, 189  
 Mormons, 397  
 Morris, Robert, 162, 163  
 Morristown, 162, 168  
 Morse, Samuel F. B., and the telegraph, 282 ; portrait, 284  
 Morton, W. T. G., 284  
 Moultrie (mol'tri), Fort, 158  
 Mound Builders, 82-84  
 Mount Vernon, home of Washington, 204, 205  
 Municipal reform, 439  
  
 NAPOLEON I., 229-231, 242  
 Napoleon III., and the Confederate navy, 363 ; and Mexico, 364  
 Narragansett Indians, 46, 55  
 Narvaez (när-vä-äth'), explores Florida, 18  
 Nashville, battle of, 373  
 National Republican Party, 263  
 National road, 256, 257  
 Navigation Laws, 35, 59, 131  
 Navy, United States, in the Revolution, 178, 179 ; in War of 1812, 244 ; our new, 421  
 Nebraska, 447  
 Negro suffrage, 380, 383  
 Nevada, 373  
 New Amsterdam, 66  
 New England, industries and trade of, 61 ; occupations of the people in, 110 ; religion and church worship in, 110 ; education in, 113 ; crimes and punishments in, 113 ; life and manners in, 114 ; and Protection, 269  
 New England Confederacy, 56  
 New Hampshire, early history of, 63  
 New Haven, 52  
 New Jersey, early history of, 74  
 New Netherland, early history of, 65-68 ; becomes New York, 68  
 New Orleans, battle of, 249-251 ; capture of, 336 ; Cotton Centennial, 390  
 New York, under English governors, 69 ; and the Northwest Territory, 197  
 New York City, 262  
 Newspapers, 122, 279, 443  
 Non-Importation agreements, 138, 143  
 Norfolk, 329  
 North, economic conditions in, 309 ; advantages of, 320  
 North Carolina, early history of, 40 ; secedes, 324, 373  
 North Dakota, 396  
 Northern point of view, 318  
 Northmen, 9  
 Northwest Boundary, 284  
 Northwest Passage, 7  
 Northwest Territory, conflicting claims to, 197  
 Nullification, 222, 268, 270, 271  
  
 OCEAN STEAMSHIPS, 279  
 Oglethorpe (ō'gl-thôrp), James, 40  
 Ohio, 371  
 Ohio Company, 98  
 Oklahoma (ok-lă-hō'mă), territory opened to settlement, 418  
 Old North Church, 148  
 Old South Church, 135, 145  
 Olney, Richard, 427, 428  
 "Orders in Council," 239  
 Ordinance of 1787, 198  
 Oregon, 373  
*Oregon* (The), 432  
 Oregon Country, 232, 284-286  
 Ostend (os-tend') Manifesto, 301  
 Oswego, 166  
 Otis, James, 132  
  
 PACIFIC OCEAN, discovery of, 18  
 Pacific Railroads, 399

- Pack-horse, 226  
 Paine, Thomas, writes *Common Sense*, 154  
 Pakenham (pak'en-am), Sir Edward, 250  
 Palo Alto (pä'lō ä'l'tō), battle of, 372  
 Pan-American Congress, 420  
 Panic, Financial, of '37, 277 ; of '57, 310 ; of '73, 407 ; of '93, 424  
 Paper money, 176, 197, 412  
 Parkman, Francis, 444  
 Partisan warfare in the South, 184  
 Patroons in New Netherland, 66  
 Pemberton, General, 347, 348  
 Penn, William, proprietor of Pennsylvania, 71-73 ; portrait, 71  
 Pennsylvania, early history of, 71-73  
 Pennsylvania, University of, 119  
 Pension Bill, 419  
 Pepperrell, Colonel, 96  
 Pequot Indians, 86  
 Perry, Commodore, in Japan, 301  
 Perry, Oliver H., his victory on Lake Erie, 246  
 Personal Liberty Bills, 300  
 "Pet banks," 272  
 Petersburg, explosion of mine at, 356  
 Petition, right of, 289  
 Philadelphia, 72  
 Philippine Islands, 435  
 Phonograph, 410  
 Pickett, General, 346  
 Pierce, Franklin, portrait, 301 ; sketch, 302 ; presidency of, 303-310  
 Pilgrims, go to Holland, 43 ; aims and character of, 44 ; voyage to America, 44 ; settle at Plymouth, 45 ; covenant and democracy, 45, 46 ; relations with the Indians, 46  
 Pinckney, Charles C., 221  
 Pitt, William, 103, 138  
 Pittsburg Landing, battle of, 333  
 Pizarro (pi-zä'rō), conquers Peru, 18  
 Plymouth Company, 26  
 Pocahontas, 29  
 Polk, James K., sketch and portrait, 291 ; presidency of, 291-296  
 Polygamy among the Mormons, 398  
 Ponce de Leon (pōn'-tha dā lā-ōn'), discovers Florida, 12  
 Pontiac, his conspiracy, 108, 126, 127  
 Pope, General, 341  
 Port Bill, Boston, 145  
 Port Hudson, surrender of, 348  
 Porto Rico, 435  
 Portugal leads in discovering an eastern route, 2  
 Potomac, Army of, 336  
 Powhatan (pow-ha-tan'), 29  
 Prescott, Colonel, 150  
 Prescott, William H., 444  
 Presidential succession, 416  
 Princeton, battle of, 162  
 Princeton College, 119  
 Prisoners, difficulties about exchange of, in Civil War, 349-351  
 Privateering, in Revolution, 179 ; in War of 1812, 246  
 Problems of the hour, 444  
 Protective Tariff, 214, 267-269, 425-427, 429  
 Providence, R. I., 55, 128  
 Provincial Congress, 147  
 Public Schools, 278  
 Pullman boycott, 427  
 Puritans, 42-59 ; obtain a charter, 47 ; settlements, 48 ; government, 49 ; religious intolerance, 52-55 ; persecute the Quakers, 57 ; have trouble with England, 58  
 Putnam, Israel, 107, 150, 159  
  
 QUAKERS, 57, 58, 71  
 Quebec, 90 ; capture of, by Wolfe, 103  
 Queen Anne's War, 96  
  
 RAILROADS, 272-274, 399  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, sketch, 20 ; portrait, 21 ; colonies, 21-23

- Reconstruction, Johnson's plan of, 375 ;  
     congressional plan of, 376 ; work of,  
     complete, 378 ; difficulties and results  
     of, 382  
 Religious intolerance among the Massa-  
     chusetts Puritans, 52-58  
 Republican Party, 306, 316, 426, 428  
 Reservations, Indian, 407  
 Resumption of specie payments, 412  
 Revere, Paul, 148  
 Review of the army at Washington, 373  
 Revolution, American, causes of, 130-  
     147 ; principal events of, 147-191 ;  
     results of, 192  
 Rhode Island, settled, 52 ; religious  
     toleration in, 55  
 Richmond, Virginia, Confederate capi-  
     tal, 320 ; evacuated by Lee, 365  
 Right of Search claimed by England,  
     237  
 Rivers, twofold use of, 228  
 Rochambeau, 190  
 Rolfe, John, marries Pocahontas, 29  
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 433  
 Rosecrans (rôze-cranz), General, 352  
 Ross, General, 248  
 "Rotten boroughs," 139  
 Rough Riders, 433  
 Roxbury, settled, 47  
  
 SAMPSON, Admiral, 433  
 St. Augustine, 15, 128  
 St. Lawrence River, 89-91  
 St. Leger (sânt lej'er) in Western New  
     York, 166  
 St. Mary's, settlement at 37  
 Salem Witchcraft, 112  
 San Francisco, 296  
 San Salvador, 6  
 Sanitary Commission, 368  
 Santiago, 434  
 Savannah, Sherman captures, 359  
     *Savannah*, 279  
 Say-and-Sele, Lord, 52  
 Saybrook, 52  
  
 "Scalawags," 380  
 Schuyler, General, 164, 171  
 Scrooby, England, 43  
 Seal fisheries, 422  
 Secession, 270, 319 ; of the remaining  
     Cotton States, 319 ; of Virginia, North  
     Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas,  
     324  
 Seminole Indians, 254  
 Semmes (semz), Captain, 362  
*Serapis*, 180  
 Seven Days' Battles, 340  
 Seven Pines, battle of (see Fair Oaks)  
 Schley, 435  
 Shafter, 434  
 Shays's Rebellion, 196, 197  
 Shenandoah Valley, Jackson in, 340 ;  
     Early in, 356 ; Sheridan in, 356  
 Sheridan, Philip H., in the Shenandoah,  
     356 ; portrait, 356 ; at Cedar Creek,  
     357 ; sketch, 357 ; at Five Forks, 365  
 Sherman, Roger, 155  
 Sherman, William T., sketch, 357 ; por-  
     trait, 357 ; captures Atlanta, 358 ;  
     his "March to the Sea," 359 ; capt-  
     ures Johnston's army, 366  
 Sherman Act, 425  
 Shiloh, battle of, 333  
 Silver, legislation, 424 ; free, 428  
 Six Nations, 72 (see Iroquois)  
 Slavery, in Virginia, 34 ; cotton-gin and,  
     215 ; in the North and the South,  
     257 ; real cause of the Civil War, 318  
 Slidell, seized on the *Trent*, 326  
 Smith, Captain John, his services to the  
     Virginia colonists, 28 ; sketch, 29 ;  
     portrait, 29 ; returns to England, 31  
 Smith, Joseph, 397  
 Solid South, 385  
 Sons of Liberty, 135  
 South, economic conditions in, 307-309 ;  
     advantages of, 321 ; seizes national  
     property, 321 ; condition at the close  
     of the Civil War, 374 ; the new, 385-  
     392 ; troops withdrawn from, 385

- South Carolina, 40 ; objects to Protection, 267, 268 ; and State Rights, 270, 271 ; secedes, 318  
 South Dakota, 396  
 Southern Colonies, 116-118 ; occupations of the people of, 116 ; education in, 116 ; life and manners in, 117  
 Southern point of view, 318  
 Spain claims Florida, 14 ; advantages of, in the New World, 16 ; reasons for failure, 17 ; relations with England, 19 ; rise of Cubans against, 430  
 Spaniards, precious metals main object of, 12 ; and the Indians, 13 ; destroy Huguenot settlements, 15  
 Spanish fleet destroyed, 432  
 Specie Circular, 276  
*Speedwell*, 44  
 Spoils system, 266  
 Spottsylvania Court House, battle of, 356  
 Stamp Act, 133-135 ; Stamp Act Congress, 137 ; repeal of, 138  
 Standish, Myles, portrait, 46  
 Stanwix, Fort, 166  
*Star of the West*, 322  
 Star-Spangled Banner, 248  
 Stark, John, 166  
 State Rights, 270, 271, 318  
 Statue of Liberty, 418  
 Steamboat, Fulton's first, 234 ; launched on the Ohio River, 235  
 Stephens, Alexander H., sketch and portrait, 320  
 Steuben, Baron, 173  
 "Stonewall" Jackson (see Jackson, Thomas J.)  
 Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 300  
 Street railways, 440  
 Strike, railroad, 408, 427  
 Stuyvesant (stī've-sant), Governor, 69  
 Sugar and Molasses Act, 131  
 Sullivan, General, 159  
 Sumner, Charles, assault on, 305  
 Sumter, Fort, Confederates capture, 324  
 Surplus, 425  
 Sutter, Captain, 294  
 Swedes, settlement made by, 75  
 TARIFF, 214, 267-269, 425-427, 428, 429  
 Taxation, 38, 42, 134 ; without representation in America, 138 ; without representation in England, 139  
 Taylor, Zachary, 291 ; portrait, 292 ; sketch, 296  
 Tea, tax on, 142-145  
 Tecumseh (te-kum'se), 241  
 Telegraph, 282, 400  
 Telephone, 410  
 Temperance movement, 279, 280  
 Tennessee, life in, 227 ; 371  
*Tennessee*, Confederate ironclad, 360  
 Territories, slavery in, 303, 310, 316  
 Texas, annexation of, 290 ; admitted to the Union, 372  
 Thames River, battle of, 371  
 Thirteenth Amendment, 376, 380  
 Thomas, General, 352, 354  
 Ticonderoga, Fort, 103, 129 ; Americans capture, 150 ; Burgoyne captures, 164  
 Tilden, Samuel J., 411  
 Tippecanoe, battle of, 242  
 Tobacco, 33, 35, 39  
 Tories, 138, 158  
 Township, New England, 48  
 Trade, Colonial, 131, 132  
 Travel, modes of, 121, 207, 226  
 Treaty at close of last French War, 106 ; at close of Revolution, 191 ; Jay's, 219 ; at close of War of 1812, 252 ; with Mexico, 293 ; between Venezuela and England, 427, 428  
 Trent Affair, 326  
 Trenton, battle of, 161, 162  
 Tuscaroras (tus-ka-rō'räs), 77  
 Tyler, John, sketch, 282 ; portrait, 283  
 "UNCLE TOM'S CABIN," 300  
 Underground Railroad, 300

- United States, natural advantages of, 439  
 United States Bank, 271, 272  
 Utah, 396  
  
 VALLEY FORGE, suffering at, 172, 175  
 Van Buren, Martin, sketch and portrait, 277 ; presidency of, 277, 278  
 Venezuela (ven-e-zwē-lā) and England, 427, 428  
 Vera Cruz (ve'-rā kröz), surrender of, 372  
 Vermont, 371  
 Verrazano (ver'rät-sä'nō), 89  
 Vespuccius, Americus, 7  
 Vicksburg, capture of, 347  
 Vincennes, 178  
 Virginia, early history of, 27-36 ; and the Northwest territory, 197  
 Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 222  
*Vulture*, 187  
  
 WALLACE, LEW, 356  
 War of 1812, causes of, 242 ; principal events of, 244-251 ; results of, 252  
 Warren, Joseph, 148, 150, 151  
 Washington, D. C., made the national capital, 213 ; captured by the British, 248  
 Washington, Fort, 159  
 Washington, George, his journey to the French forts, 98 ; at Great Meadows, 99 ; with Braddock, 101 ; takes command of the American army, 152 ; in the Revolution, 152-191 ; Presidency of, 203-219 ; sketch, 204 ; inaugurated, 205 ; formality of, 208-210 ; his cabinet, 211  
 Washington, Lawrence, 98  
 Washington Elm, 151  
  
 Webster, Daniel, and the Union, 269 ; portrait, 270  
 Wells, Horace, 284  
 West, rapid growth of, 274 ; influence of, in favor of nationality, 309 ; expansion of, 396  
 West Virginia, 373  
 Western lands, speculation in, 275  
 Wethersfield settled, 50  
 Weyler, General, 430  
 Whig Party, 305, 306  
 Whiskey Rebellion, 214  
 White Plains, battle of, 202  
 Whitney, Eli, invents cotton-gin, 215  
 Whittier, John Greenleaf, 444  
 Wild-cat banking, 275  
 Wilderness, battles of, 355  
 Williams, Roger, 54, 55  
 Williamsburg, 136  
 Williamsburg, battle of, 340  
 Wilmot, David, 293  
 Wilmot Proviso, 293  
 Wilson Bill, 426  
 Windsor settled, 50  
 Winthrop, John, 50, 51  
 Wisconsin, 372  
 Witchcraft, Salem, 112  
 Wolfe, General, captures Quebec, 103-106  
 World's Columbian Exposition, 424  
 Writs of Assistance, 132  
 Wyoming, attack on, 202  
 Wyoming, 396  
  
 X. Y. Z. Papers, 220  
  
 YALE COLLEGE, 113  
 Yorktown, McClellan at, 338  
 Young, Brigham, 398









To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

10M—6-40

--	--	--

00172



